

---

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



A 474308

DUPL



m/yh



Basil I. S. Haies

Given me by R. R. de C. Goubet -

2<sup>d</sup> Colonel commanding  
The 3<sup>rd</sup> The King's own Hussars  
Tidworth -

March 6<sup>th</sup> 1936.

---





**THE 3RD (KING'S OWN) HUSSARS  
IN THE GREAT WAR  
(1914-1919)**

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED**



m/yh



Basil. I. S. Haeries

Given me by R. R. de L. Goubet -

2<sup>d</sup>. Colonel commanding

The 3<sup>rd</sup> The King's own Hussars

Tedworth -

March 6<sup>th</sup> 1936.

---





**THE 3RD (KING'S OWN) HUSSARS  
IN THE GREAT WAR  
(1914-1919)**

**ALL RIGHTS RESERVED**





THE TAKING OF RIFLE WOOD, 1ST APRIL 1918.

*Frontispiece*]

**THE  
3RD (KING'S OWN) HUSSARS  
IN THE GREAT WAR (1914-1919)**

**BY LIEUT.-COLONEL  
WALTER TEMPLE WILLCOX, C.M.G.  
COMMANDED THE REGIMENT 1915-1921**

**LONDON  
JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET, W.  
1925**

D  
546.54  
.3d  
W6p

“And he hadde been sometyme in chyvachie.<sup>1</sup>  
In Flaundres, in Artoys and Pycardie.  
And born hym weel.”

CHAUCER, *Canterbury Tales*.

<sup>1</sup> Chyvachie—expeditions.

822 177-190

**BATTLE HONOURS PRIOR TO THE  
GREAT WAR**

**DETTINGEN  
SALAMANCA  
VITTORIA  
TOULOUSE  
PENINSULA  
CABOOL, 1842  
MOODKEE  
FEROZESHAN  
SOBRAON  
CHILLIANWALLAH  
GOOJERAT  
PUNJAUB  
SOUTH AFRICA, 1902**





## BATTLE HONOURS OF THE GREAT WAR

MONS

LE CATEAU

RETREAT FROM MONS

MARNE, 1914

AISNE, 1914

MESSINES, 1914

ARMENTIÈRES, 1914

YPRES, 1914, 1915

GHELUVELT

ST. JULIEN

BELLEWAARDE

ARRAS, 1917

SCARPE, 1917

CAMBRAI, 1917, 1918

SOMME, 1918

ST. QUENTIN

LYS

HAZEBROUCK

AMIENS

BAPAUME, 1918

HINDENBURG LINE

CANAL DU NORD

SELLE

SAMBRE

FRANCE AND FLANDERS, 1914-18

# **BATTLE HONOURS SELECTED TO BE BORNE ON THE APPOINTMENTS**

**RETREAT FROM MONS**

**MARNE, 1914**

**AIISNE, 1914**

**MESSINES, 1914**

**YPRES, 1914, 1915**

**ARRAS, 1917**

**CAMBRAI, 1917, 1918**

**SOMME, 1918**

**AMIENS**

**FRANCE AND FLANDERS, 1914-18**

## INTRODUCTION

TO THE 3RD HUSSARS :

Gentlemen, I dedicate this record to you.

In its pages I have endeavoured to tell of the fortunes of the 3RD Hussars in the stirring times of the Great War.

In the writing of the tale it has been my aim to produce a straightforward narrative of the war, as seen by our Regiment, with just enough reference to the various tactical situations to make the part played by it fit in.

The history is published under the title the Regiment bore at the time told of, its present designation of the 3RD The King's Own Hussars having been given it after the war.

### I

This story of the Regiment does not attempt to recount the war services of those of its officers, past or present, who served elsewhere. In like manner, the services of the non-commissioned officers and men who were promoted to commissions in other places from the ranks of the 3RD are not followed. Many of them met a soldier's death, and all of them, by their knowledge and experience, were greatly instrumental in bringing the battalions of the New Army to their high standard of excellence.

I have pieced my story together from the *Official War Diary*, and from a few private diaries, and where I have quoted from the War Despatches or from other sources the fact is noted in the text.

I am indebted to those officers who have lent me their diaries, to Major-General T. T. Pitman, C.B., C.M.G., for

kindly giving me the opportunity of seeing various orders and papers of the 2nd Cavalry Division, and to Captain Adrian Jones, M.V.O., for his drawing of a private of the regiment, while I have to thank Lieutenant-Colonel John Murray, D.S.O., for his advice and help. Colonel Murray and his great publishing firm have kept a lone hand secure on the giddy heights of authorship.

My thanks are due to His Excellency, General Lord Byng of Vimy, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., M.V.O., Governor-General of Canada, the Colonel of the 3rd Hussars during the war, and to his successor, Major-General A. A. Kennedy, C.B., C.M.G., for their sympathy in this undertaking.

To Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O., we all owe a debt of gratitude for his work connected with the collection of subscriptions and orders for the book.

## II

The story of the 3rd Hussars is, in its lesser degree, that of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Cavalry Divisions in France and Belgium, and a short résumé of their work cannot but be an interesting prelude to the tale of the Regiment.

In the area in which Napoleon assembled his army for the Waterloo campaign, and close upon a hundred years later, the assembly of the British Expeditionary Force took place. Barely had the concentration been effected before the little Army of two corps, covered by its five cavalry brigades, was marching across the Belgian frontier, by way of Marlborough's field of Malplaquet to Wellington's town of Mons.

On the 22nd August 1914 the opposing cavalries were in conflict from Mons to Binche. Although greatly outnumbered, the British squadrons had no difficulty in holding the Germans, and, by skilful dismounted tactics combined with mounted action, defeated all their attempts to get through in search of information. It was not until our cavalry were withdrawn, and the British line had taken shape, that the Germans had any knowledge of the British

movements. Thus early in the war—in fact, on the very first day—did the British horseman discover his superiority over the vaunted Uhlan and Hussar of Prussia.

A night march to the west followed, and the cavalry, supported later in the day by the 19th Infantry Brigade, beat off the enemy's attempts to cross the Condé Canal on the extreme left of the British line. On the right, the French Fifth Army was already in retreat, and the British Force stood isolated, and was engaged with vastly superior numbers.

The German effort to envelop the British left during the retirement from Mons was frustrated by the gallantry and devotion of the cavalry and the 5th Division, while later the German masses in the west were held off in the running fight that followed, and never got through the cavalry to the flank of the retiring II Corps.

In the Great Retreat the cavalry checked and checked again the German pursuit on rear and flank, and after the battle of Le Cateau it kept the enemy well at bay, with the result that, in the words of the Commander-in-Chief, "The efficient conduct of the retreat began to take effect." So to the neighbourhood of Paris, when the desperately tired but undefeated little British Army turned and hurled itself against von Kluck's flank as he changed the direction of his march to the south-east against the French Fifth Army on the left of the main French line.

As the vanguard, the cavalry rode across the Marne to the Aisne, pressing over both rivers on the heels of the retreating Germans. Then, on the northern heights of the Aisne, the dismounted horsemen fought in the trenches beside their comrades of the infantry, and, moreover, on the British right they went to the succour of the infantry of France.

The battle of the Aisne ending in a state of stalemate; there ensued the race between the Allies and the Germans to Belgium for the Channel ports. The cavalry, withdrawn first from the British trenches, marched north, repeatedly going to the help of the French line as they passed behind

it until, in Flanders, driving back the hostile cavalry, they covered the detrainment of the British corps.

And now we see them riding on by the heights of Mont des Cats, Scherpenberg, Mont Noir, and Kemmel; and, driving the German cavalry and their attendant regiments of jägers before them, they achieve as brilliant a stroke of cavalry enterprise as history can produce. Over the river Lys they drove the Germans, and, by valiant fighting in defence and in counter-attack—on horse and afoot—they held the ever-increasing enemy until, once again, the British line took shape.

In the battles of Ypres, 1914, the cavalry story stands out, even in the great epic of the saving of the Empire by the Old Regular Army, which sacrificed itself with a heroism that, as a military achievement, has never been surpassed. The German effort reached its climax on that last October day when two and a half army corps were hurled in a desperate effort against the portion of the line held by our cavalry. Looking for no supports—there were none to look for—the thin cavalry line and three or four attenuated battalions held the enemy hordes at bay for forty-eight hours, and the Germans were stayed.

“The cavalry has fought, whether mounted or in the trenches, to the admiration of the whole Army,”

so said the Press at home.

Ypres, 1915, told the same tale of determined enemy onslaughts and of unflinching defence; while any German hope of reaching the Strait of Dover was finally defeated. In its battles the cavalry were first called upon to give support to the French in the north of the salient, then followed the devoted struggles in the trenches east of Ypres, and, finally, the great and successful defence of Hooze and Sanctuary Wood in the battle of Bellewaarde.

The battles of Ypres, 1914 and 1915, gave the Germans such a wholesome idea of the fighting qualities of the British soldier that not until 1918 did they again attempt a sustained offensive against the British line.



With the advent of 1916 began a melancholy period for the cavalry. They took their turn in the trenches, and in working and digging parties. For the great battles they were concentrated, ready to exploit any success. "Gap schemes," we called them, i.e. breaches made in the enemy line by infantry battle, through which to pour cavalry on adventurous enterprise. There were many such, but they failed to mature. So on through the long, monotonous years of stationary warfare. In the latter stages of Cambrai, 1917, there came the great German counter-attack, which threw back our previously victorious infantry. Regiments and squadrons of cavalry were flung into lost points, and did magnificent work in the saving of a perilous situation.

The spring of 1918 brought the dark time of the German Offensive, a period which was fraught with the gravest danger to the Allies, and especially to Britain, for against the British line came the full blast of the storm. The British line, too, had been but lately extended to the south. Its total of fighting men for the trenches was, by a very large number, less than in the corresponding month of March of the previous year. The necessary reinforcements had not been forthcoming, and three battalions of every infantry division had been broken up, the men being placed in the remaining battalions. This change of organization necessitated new methods of tactical handling of the troops to which subordinate commanders were not accustomed. The reorganization was only completed during the month before the German attack was launched, and, moreover, there was neither time nor labour available for the completion of adequate defences in the new front line.

The United States were now in the war, but Russia was out of it, and the German Armies on that front were available. The American Army required time to become effective, and the Germans were not going to wait. From November of 1917 there had been a constant stream of their troops from the Russian to the western front.

The onset was delivered in the south against the British

right, and the Fifth Army was overwhelmed; but not without heroic fighting in its herculean task. At the first onslaught of the German masses the three cavalry divisions were thrown into the battle. For days the dismounted horsemen were at death-grips with the enemy, aiding our exhausted infantry and doggedly disputing, foot by foot, the right of the British line. Their skill and devotion were even greater than in their exploits of 1914, and under far more trying circumstances. It was a desperate situation. Marshal Foch's reserves were in motion, but the right of the British line was *in extremis*, and time was the all-important factor.

While yet the detachments of dismounted cavalry were everywhere contesting the advance of the Germans and going to the aid of infantry and artillery—British and French alike—mounted brigades were actually formed out of those who had been left with the led horses. Weak brigades, it is true, but not so weak that they could not answer the urgent call of the French at Noyon. There, fighting as desperately as they had ever fought before, to the north and west of that place they held the enemy at bay, until the leading divisions of the French reserves arrived upon the scene and relieved them; and once again a German advance had been stayed.

Even before the cavalry were withdrawn from the hard-pressed French there came another urgent call, now from the British in front of Amiens. Forced marches followed, during which detachments rejoined and help, too, was given to the French near Montdidier on the way. Again a desperate situation, the right of the British line being held by troops who could fight no longer. The weary horsemen were thrown in straight from the march, and, in mounted and dismounted attack, drove the Germans off the wooded heights of Moreuil. The enemy's counter-attacks were defeated and, on the following day, against great odds, the same division of cavalry captured by direct assault, on foot, the all-important position of Rifle Wood. "This very gallant action" (Off. Des.) saw the end of the vic-

torious advance of the Germans, and Amiens was saved. The enemy's effort to cut the British and French line at its junction had been made in vain.

Throughout the German offensive, from St. Quentin to Amiens, the cavalry had covered themselves with honour that was not surpassed by their achievements in the Retreat from Mons or their memorable stand on the Messines Ridge ; and we read in the Despatches that between the Somme and the Oise, but for the mounted action of the cavalry, " the enemy could scarcely have been prevented from breaking through."

The three cavalry divisions took a great part in the victory of Amiens, 1918, where their skill, their *élan*, and the rapidity of their movements more than justified the existence of cavalry in modern war.

In the great battles of the Advance to Victory the cavalry divisions were actively employed either as corps cavalry, with regiments attached to army corps, or concentrated in division and exploiting successes in the attacks of the armies.

Finally, everywhere in front of the British Armies, the cavalry were assembled in their divisions for the pursuit of the beaten hosts of Germany, but the signing of the Armistice robbed the squadrons of the expectation of turning the enemy's disorganized retreat into a rout.

### III

Time passes, and although the Great War is already an old story, this narrative has been written in the hope that it will add a page to the illustrious records of the 3RD Hussars. A page of the Regiment's history, which its soldiers of the future will do well to emulate, should the need arise, even as those who made it did add to the fame of their predecessors of far-off Dettingen and many another field.

In giving you this story of our Regiment I do so with the wish that its pages may bring to my comrades of the war many pleasant memories, as doubtless they will revive

some unpleasant ones. In the writing of the tale many a long-forgotten incident has come back—happenings tragic and pathetic, deeds of heroism, and episodes so humorous that their memory brings back the laughter we shared together.

These pages may revive pictures of the Great Retreat ; the evil-smelling caves of Paissy ; the thin khaki line which stood in front of Ypres and, with machine guns as scarce as woodcock in a day's covert shooting, barred the way to the Channel ; the sordid life in the trenches ; the stricken field in Picardy ; and many another memory grown dim in the fleeting tablets of the past.

A reverie of horses and horsemen, champing bits and the thud of bullets ; of outposts, bivouacs and billets ; of Flanders, Artois, and Picardy.

Memories of the little wooden Cross in the midst of desolation, so pathetic in its loneliness and in the simplicity of its legend—"Here lies a British Soldier." Memories of our own Gallant Dead.

W. T. W.

*4th August 1925.*

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	ix

## CHAPTER I

1914

*(Battle honours are shown by inverted commas)*

<b>PART I.</b> Shorncliffe to Mons—"Mons"—"Le Cateau"—"Retreat from Mons" . . . . .	1
Maps: Battle of Mons—Approximate Positions, Retreat from Mons.	
<b>PART II.</b> "Marne, 1914"—"Aisne, 1914" . . . . .	31
Map: Battles of the Marne and Aisne.	
<b>PART III.</b> The British advance to the north—"Messines, 1914": Warneton—"Armentières, 1914"—"Ypres, 1914"—"Gheluvelt": Klein Zillebeke . . . . .	52
Maps: General Map, Ypres, Action at Warneton.	

## CHAPTER II

1915

Trenches near Zillebeke—Neuve Chapelle—"Ypres, 1915": Boesinghe—"St. Julien": Wieltje—"Bellewaarde": Sanctuary Wood—Battle of Loos . . . . .	100
Maps: General Map, Ypres, Wieltje Trenches, Hooge.	

## CHAPTER III

1916

Vermelles Trenches—The Somme . . . . .	135
Maps: General Map, Vermelles Trenches.	
2	xvii

## CHAPTER IV

1917

"Arras, 1917"—"Scarpe, 1917"—Lempire Trenches—"Cambrai, 1917": Bourlon Wood, Gauche Wood—Villeret Trenches . . .	PAGE 166
Maps: Arras, 2nd Cavalry Division at the Battle of the Scarpe, 1917, The Lempire Trenches, Cambrai, 1917, Defence of Gauche Wood, General Map.	

## CHAPTER V

1918 AND 1919

PART I. Villeret Trenches—Vadencourt Trenches—The German Offensive—"Somme, 1918"—"St. Quentin"—With the French about Noyon—Called to Amiens—Rifle Wood—The march north—"Lys"—"Hazebrouck" . . . . .	220
Maps: Capture of Rifle Wood by the 2nd Cavalry Division, 1st April 1918, German Offensive.	
PART II. The turning of the tide—"Amiens" . . . . .	266
Map: Battle of Amiens.	
PART III. The Advance to Victory—"Bapaume, 1918"—"Hindenburg Line"—"Canal du Nord"—"Selle"—"Sambre"—The Armistice . . . . .	285
Maps: The Regiment in the last Battles, British Battles during the Advance to Victory, General Map.	
PART IV. March through Belgium—The Rhine—England . . . . .	325
Map: General Map.	
WAR MEMORIAL GONG . . . . .	342
APPENDIX A . . . . .	343
" B . . . . .	346
" C . . . . .	356
" D . . . . .	357
" E . . . . .	364
" F . . . . .	370
" G . . . . .	372
INDEX . . . . .	375

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

THE TAKING OF RIFLE WOOD, 1ST APRIL 1918 ( <i>Frontispiece</i> )	
	PAGE
MAJOR-GENERAL A. A. KENNEDY, C.B., C.M.G. . . . .	4
FLÈTRE, OCTOBER 1914 . . . . .	62
LIEUTENANT-COLONEL W. T. WILLCOX, C.M.G. . . . .	104
A PRIVATE OF THE REGIMENT IN THE GREAT WAR	168
TRENCHES KIT . . . . .	190
GENERAL LORD BYNG OF VIMY, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., M.V.O. . . . .	218
NEAR ROUVROY, BATTLE OF AMIENS, 10TH AUGUST 1918 . . . . .	278
WAR MEMORIAL GONG OF THE 3RD HUSSARS . . . . .	340
THE MEMORIAL GONG . . . . .	342

## LIST OF MAPS

BATTLE OF MONS. APPROXIMATE POSITIONS 5 A.M. 24TH AUGUST . . . . .	7
RETREAT FROM MONS . . . . .	12
BATTLES OF THE MARNE AND AISNE . . . . .	33
YPRES, 1914-1915 . . . . .	53



	PAGE
ACTION OF WARNETON . . . . .	69
SKETCH OF THE WIELTJE TRENCHES, 14TH-22ND MAY 1915 . . . . .	117
BATTLE OF BELLEWAARDE . . . . .	123
THE VERMELLES TRENCHES . . . . .	138
ARRAS. 2ND CAVALRY DIVISION AT THE BATTLE OF THE SCARPE, 1917 . . . . .	170
THE LEMPIRE TRENCHES . . . . .	179
CAMBRAI, 1917 . . . . .	195
DEFENCE OF GAUCHE WOOD . . . . .	214
GERMAN OFFENSIVE, 1918 . . . . .	242
CAPTURE OF RIFLE WOOD . . . . .	249
BATTLE OF AMIENS . . . . .	269
THE REGIMENT IN THE LAST BATTLES . . . . .	324
BRITISH BATTLES DURING THE ADVANCE TO VICTORY	323
GENERAL MAP . . . . .	<i>At end</i>

# THE 3RD (KING'S OWN) HUSSARS IN THE GREAT WAR

## CHAPTER I

1914

### PART I

"WHY doesn't the Government hurry up and declare war?" The question was asked across the mess table by the most junior of all the subalterns. "Surely we are not going to keep out of it," he added.

"Don't you worry that addled little pate of yours, Sonny. You'll get all the glory you want."

"Yes, and a bellyful of things he doesn't want too, I guess," adds another voice.

"If I were the Prime Minister," continues the unabashed most junior, "I should declare war directly I thought that Germany was going to make a muck of Europe."

"Good for you, Napoleon"—and Napoleon's senior by a couple of months looks down the table—"you're what they call a bally militarist."

"Nappy, old lad," chimes in another cornet, "I'm thinking that the Prime Minister is just waiting to ask you to take command of the British Army."

Napoleon need not have worried. It was War. Leave, that sure thermometer of the Army, was cancelled. There was a general tension everywhere. Crowds wore that look which comes to the individual before a steeplechase, a match or any trial of skill by brain or body. War! where folks foregathered no other subject for conversation was possible.

Already even, looking across the Strait of Dover, comes the picture of many a gallant young French soldier lad

lying in some insignificant ditch in fair Alsace, with staring eyes at sun and moon—many a lad who a few short hours before had marched away gaily to the strains of the “Marseillaise.”

War! It had come at last. The 3RD Hussars, in their quarters in Shorncliffe Barracks, received the order to mobilize at 7 p.m. on the 4th August 1914.

The mobilization of the Regiment was a masterpiece of efficiency, as it was, indeed, with the whole Expeditionary Force. The first day of mobilization was the 5th August. The mobilization of the Regiment was timed to take six days, but so smoothly did everything work that all the orders of the “Mobilization Tables” of 1913 were carried out exactly to time, and the mobilization was completed in four days, on the 8th August.

The detail of mobilization may be of interest to a few, but in the interests of the many we will skip it, and merely state the well-known fact that it means converting a regiment at peace into a regiment ready for war—by such methods as replacing all unfit men and horses by such as are fit, etc., etc. Where the “unfit” go, and where the “fit” come from is a detail of mobilization.

At all events, not to labour the point, the 3RD Hussars were ready to move on the 8th August, and so had a few precious days in hand for the training of reservists and horses called to the colours.

Regimental Headquarters left Shorncliffe by rail at 8.5 p.m. on the 14th, and were followed by “A” Squadron at 9.30 p.m., while “B” and “C” Squadrons entrained next day. Southampton was reached by the headquarter train at 1.10 a.m.

The Regiment embarked at the following strength: 26 officers, 523 other ranks, 528 riding horses, 74 draught horses, 6 pack horses, 18 vehicles, 2 Maxim guns, and 20 bicycles. Of these numbers 88 men were reservists, and 37 riding and 57 draught horses had joined on mobilization.

Our Regimental Headquarters transport not having arrived, a weary wait until 5 a.m. followed, when the good

ship *City of Lucknow*, 2,370 tons, berthed. This unfortunate vessel later on fell a victim to a German submarine. Our recollections of her are not of the best. There was no covered accommodation for the men, the holds were full of cargo, and on their hatches were placed the vehicles. The sanitary arrangements, we were to discover on the voyage, were totally inadequate, and nothing had been prepared for the conveyance of horses. The only method of getting the horses on board was by slinging—two or three gangways would have been so simple! A valuable charger of the Colonel's very nearly came to grief in the operation. On board the horses were tied about the main deck round the hatches. Owing to the delay caused by the necessary preparations, it was 8.15 a.m. before the first horse was slung on board. The last horse was aboard at 1.15 p.m., and we sailed in pouring rain at 1.50, the 26th Company R.E. accompanying us.

Nothing of note on the voyage, beyond hearty greetings from a French destroyer, who informed us of a great Allied naval victory (!), and a mercifully smooth sea which kept our horses on their legs.

We anchored abreast the Havre lightship at 2 a.m. on the 16th, and moved closer in at 5 o'clock when the pilot came aboard, and anchoring again we awaited the tide. Weighed at 2.30 p.m., and entered the Seine for our destination, which we now discovered to be Rouen. Ahead of us was "A" Squadron on board the *Karnak*—they had the laugh of us in the matter of ships; two other transports followed us. Another rumour had it that a transport had turned turtle, and we feared for "A" Squadron, for the *Karnak* had a terrible list to port. Passing Havre on the left the Seine gradually came to the limits of an ordinary river. Then followed a delightful trip, pretty and varied country, wooded and rocky hills alternating with rich pastureland, smiling châteaux and a picturesque cathedral ruin. Harvest not yet in. Enthusiasm on the banks was great. Inhabitants of villages and hamlets showed their appreciation of our arrival by waving Union Jacks and the

French tricolour to the accompaniment of "Vive l'Angleterre!" "Vive le Roi!" "Vive la France!" to say nothing of the continual strains of the "Marseillaise." At some places boats pulled out to our ship, and at one spot a venturesome and extra-enthusiastic Frenchman swam out to us, a Union Jack in his teeth and pathetically yelling "Vive l'Angleterre!" An occasional blue-coated, red-trousered Territorial sentry leaning on his long-bayoneted rifle told his own tale. Our men acknowledged with continuous British cheers, and now and again a trumpet would ring out the "Charge." The "phlegmatic Englishman" was very soon a term of the past in France—as a French officer once observed, what astonished him more than anything during the Great War was that he found the English soldier was as cheerful as the French poilu! Soon after ten we berthed at Rouen amidst much singing of the "Marseillaise" and "God Save the King"; but, not being called upon to disembark, all hands turned in as best they could.

Nothing being ready, it was nearly 2 p.m. next day before everything was off the ship. "A" Squadron had meanwhile disembarked, and "B" Squadron, arriving in the transport *Honourious*, was formed up on the jetty soon after Headquarters. The Regiment rode through cheering crowds in Rouen to the rest camp at Bruyères, where we found our 4th Cavalry Brigade Headquarters and a squadron of the Carabiniers. No news of "C" Squadron. Captain Claude and Lieutenant Prot of the French Army reported as interpreters, together with twelve non-commissioned officers and men.

The night of the 18th found the Regiment on the move, Headquarters and "A" Squadron entraining at 8.35 p.m., and "B" and the machine guns at 12.40 a.m. The first train left about midnight, and arrived at our destination, Hautmont, about 1 p.m. next day. Amiens and Busigny were passed *en route*. Usual greetings all the way, with an addition in the hand being drawn significantly across the throat and an arm pointing vaguely in the direction of Germany.



**MAJOR-GENERAL A. A. KENNEDY, C.B., C.M.G.**

Appointed Colonel of the 3RD Hussars, 22nd January 1924. Commanded 3RD Hussars, 2nd April 1913 to 13th April 1915. Commanded the 7th Cavalry Brigade, 4th Cavalry Division, 75th and 230th Infantry Brigades, and held commands in Army of the Rhine, and was Military Governor of Cologne, November 1919 to January 1920.



After detraining at Hautmont horses were watered and fed, and we marched to Solre le Château, which had been given the Regiment as its billeting area. A twelve miles' march brought us there, but the place was already occupied by the XVIII French Corps. On the march back it was discovered the 3RD's billeting area had been changed to Wattignies, which was reached at 7 p.m. Most people tired and annoyed. However, the best-looking girl in the village had been selected to read an address of welcome to the Colonel, which made everyone happy again. A monument surmounted by a French cock and bearing date 1783 telling of victory to French arms stood outside the village. A happy omen, one of our French officers thought. One remembers that first billet in France. We Headquarters officers slept in the village schoolroom, and had our meals in the inn. The inhabitants did all possible for our comfort, and this while the women were in tears for their men called away to their regiments. We expected to remain a few days in Wattignies, while the army concentration was going on; but at 10.30 p.m. on the 20th orders arrived for a move forward early next morning. "C" Squadron had not yet joined.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade was composed of :  
Commanding, Brigadier-General the Hon. C. E. Bingham.  
Household Cavalry (Composite Regiment).  
6th Dragoon Guards (Carabiniers).  
3RD King's Own Hussars.

At 6.5 a.m. on the 21st the brigade concentrated at Wattignies. A troop of "A" Squadron marched as advance guard until touch with the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, whom we were following, was obtained. A most hopeless state of discomfort, which every soldier, and especially every cavalry soldier who fought in France, will appreciate, existed at the Aibes cross roads—polite language calls it congestion of traffic, but here we called it by a different term to suit the local conditions; two columns of cavalry moving in opposite directions on a narrow road, with all

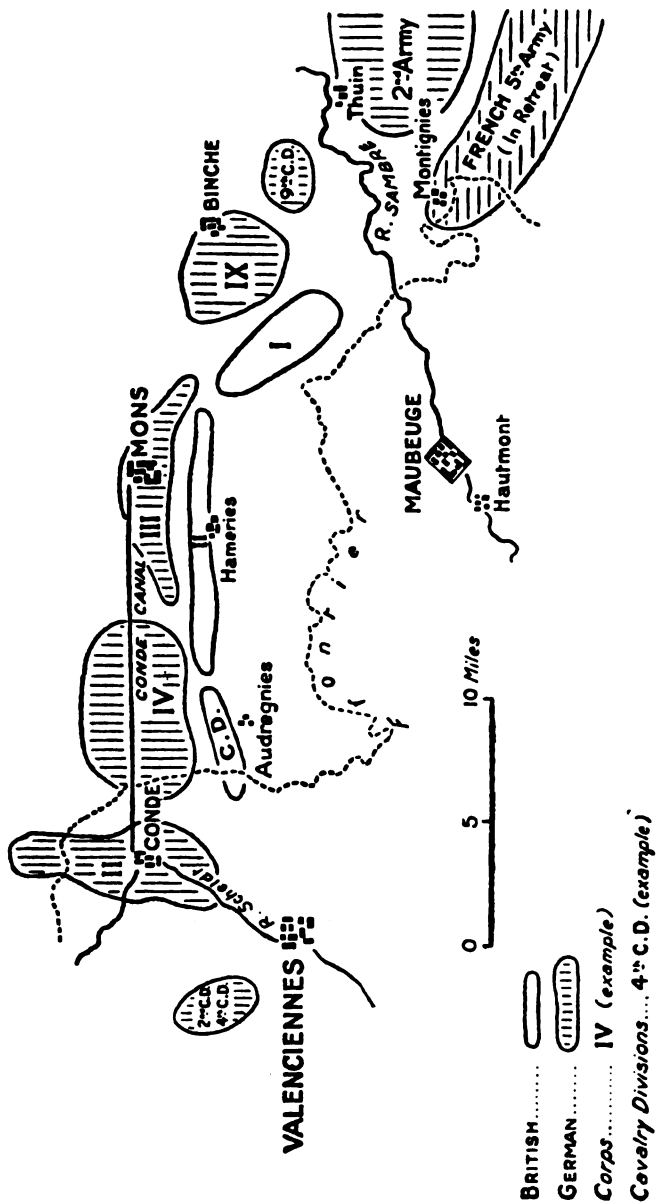


the attendant bump and squash in the thick dust. The people on the Belgian frontier, which was crossed at the village of Jeumont, were most enthusiastic at the advent of "les Anglais," and all ranks were the recipients of picture post cards, flowers and other "seasonable" gifts as we rode along. Soon after, turning north-west, the brigade rode along the Mons road to Rouveroy, which was reached at noon, and where we watered and fed in the grounds of a delightful château while billets were being allotted. Our stay was but short, however, for barely had the horses finished their feeds, when "saddle up" was the order, and at 1 p.m. the brigade was on the move.

"While a whisper's caught up through the ranks as they form,  
A whisper that fain would break out in a cheer,  
How the foe is in force, how the work will be warm" —

to quote from Whyte-Melville.

The whisper in the present instance said a large force of German cavalry was reported to be in the neighbourhood; a calculating second-lieutenant estimated the force at a brigade, while the still more calculating farrier-major bet it was a division of "Ooluns." Some of us may remember coming out of those château gardens in a hurry, and a small door in the garden wall, a big English horse, and a saddle packed in marching order. The brigade moved to Harmignies in support of the 1st, 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades, covering the march of our infantry. Hostile cavalry had been reported advancing in force on Mons from the direction of Nivelles. A monotonous wait of some hours followed, concealed under trees. One remembers a cheerful and optimistic commander of a leading cavalry brigade passing, and giving us the news, the gist of it being "the Germans are walking into a nice trap!" Curious how small things remain fixed in one's brain—the picture of a gallant and popular officer of Life Guards wearing a novel soft cap of the kind which came into fashion later, remains after all these years. At dark the 3rd moved into billets some three miles west in the château at Harveng, while the other two



BATTLE OF MONS, APPROXIMATE POSITIONS, 5 A.M., 24TH AUGUST.

regiments went into the village. The château had been prepared as a hospital, and one revelled in the luxury of clean sheets, while a hospitable owner supplied us with eggs. About 8 p.m. the missing "C" Squadron reported from Hautmont; apparently they had been delayed in Southampton for four days awaiting a transport which could take their horses. Rations arrived soon after midnight. A hot, trying day, especially for the horses, which were thirteen hours under saddle.

The Regiment was saddled up and ready at 4 a.m. on the 22nd, but it was not until 11.20 a.m. that the squadrons moved to the brigade starting-point. The 3rd, as leading regiment, had sent out "B" Squadron as advanced guard, when Cavalry Division orders arrived cancelling the march west to Quievrain, and ordering the brigade to move in support of the other brigades who were in contact with the enemy. The brigade rode in the direction of Binche and Bray, and took up its position at the "Halte," where a dullish day was spent while the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades were in touch with German cavalry.

At 4 p.m. the infantry of the II Corps relieved the cavalry, who, covered by the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, withdrew and started upon its delayed march to the west. The Regiment withdrew from "Halte" at 7 p.m. Then followed a long, weary march of some twenty miles over *pavé* roads—an extraordinary march through a thickly populated manufacturing district. Despite the lateness of the hour the whole route was lined with crowds of men, women, and children, in places three and four deep. For hours we rode through a continuous roar of "Vive les Anglais!"; they gave us a rousing reception, while as we rode cigars, cigarettes, sweets, flowers, and even bottles of wine were thrust into our hands. Poor people! Even the vaunted protection of "les Anglais" was not to save them from the terror of German rule. To them it must have been an inspiring sight, this endless column of horsemen—the vanguard of Britain's Army. For us a beastly march. Clatter! Clatter! Clatter! On the hard high road. A dark night, thick dust at times, and

an almost continuous jog-trot. One felt sorry for rider and shoeing-smith when a horse was pulled aside with a cast shoe ; would they ever catch up !

It was nearly 1 in the morning of the 23rd when the Regiment reached its billeting area at Baisieux. Another very trying day for the horses ; some of them had not had the saddles off their backs for twenty hours, water had been scarce, and they must have covered some thirty miles ; many would neither eat nor drink on reaching billets. At the time one knew nothing but that our brigade was on the Condé canal with some of the Carabiniers on its farther side. As a matter of fact, the 2nd and 4th Cavalry Brigades were holding the line of that canal, the 2nd in touch with the 5th Infantry Division on the right, with the 1st and 3rd Cavalry Brigades in support. "A filthy, dirty billet I went into," wrote an officer, "and a blanket on a stone kitchen floor, but a kindly woman gave me bread and fried eggs, and this at 2 in the morning and bitterly weeping ; I don't think she knew if I was English, French, or German." The farriers had a busy time tacking on horses' shoes after last night's ordeal, and were sadly interrupted by the order to saddle up. The fog of war was upon us pawns in the game, exciting rumours were rife—one would not be prepared to swear, at this length of time, that the German Emperor was not said to be sailing down the Condé canal. This is what was actually happening : the cavalry who were in touch with the Germans were being relieved by infantry, and a German attack on the canal bridge north of Thulin had been repulsed. At about 8 p.m. the 5th Infantry Division fell back from the canal to the line Wasmes-Hainin, and the Cavalry Division continued the line to Quievrain with the left thrown back west of that place. Meanwhile, at about 5 p.m. the 3RD found themselves again crossing the frontier, and reached the French village of Saultain a couple of hours later. Here the Regiment billeted, with its usual protection of out-posts. The officers not on duty were most hospitably entertained by the kindly lady of the château, Madame Gillard, whose husband was away with the French Army.

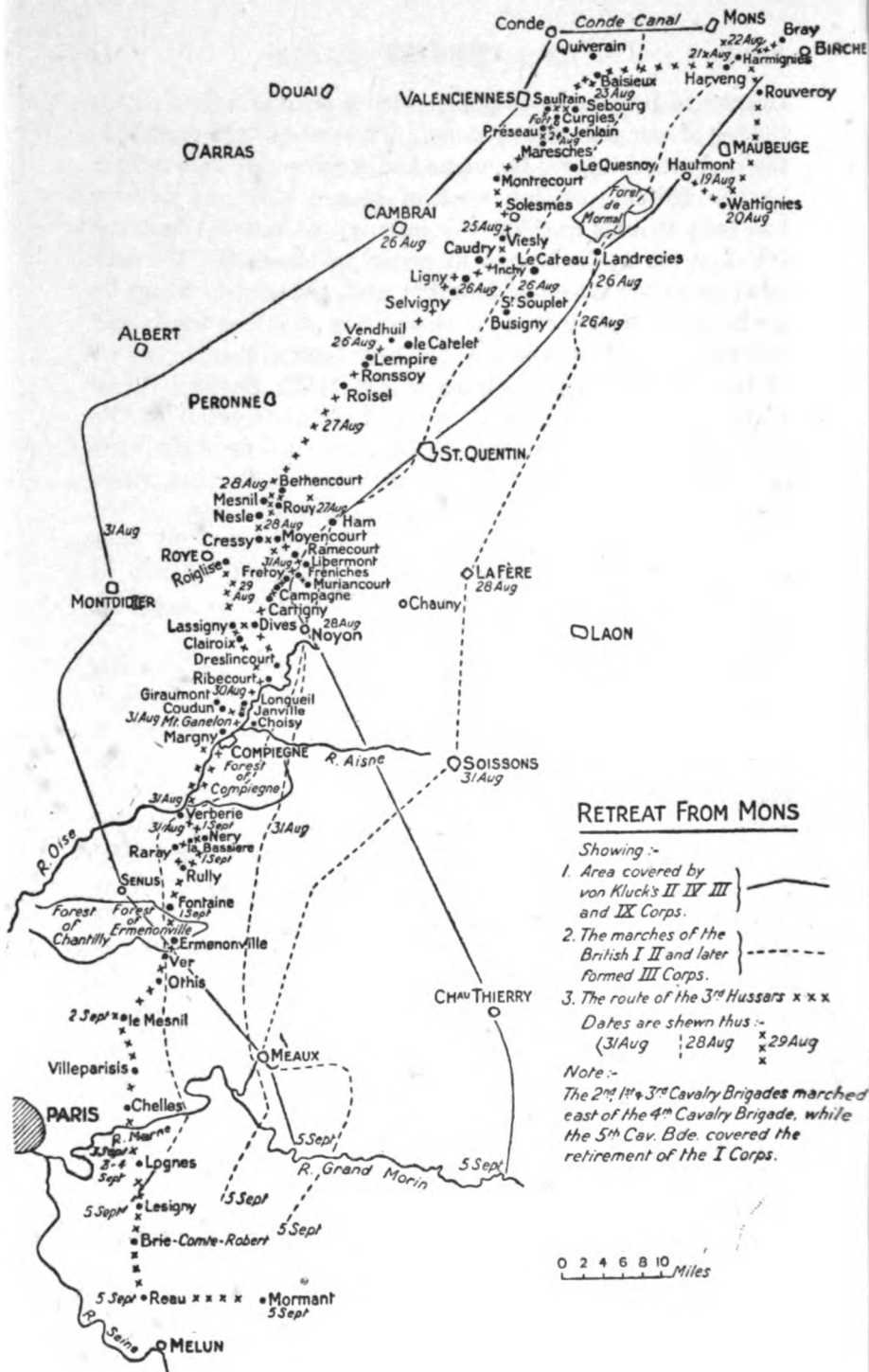
Mattresses were placed on the floor of the hall, while Madame herself, her daughters and maids cooked and served us with an excellent dinner. The younger daughter, a small girl, looked longingly at our cap badges ; but to part with them was forbidden. A large number of men having already become deficient of cap badges since we landed at Rouen, the " loss " of a cap badge had become a punishable offence ; a philanthropic officer, however, gave the little damsel a cigarette stamped with his regimental crest, which it can be safely assumed mademoiselle kept from the prying eyes of the Hun. One wonders what happened to that kindly lady. A quiet night, only disturbed by the report and arrest of a reputed spy.

At 4 a.m. next day, the 24th, the Regiment marched eastwards, " C " Squadron being detached to Valenciennes on a special reconnaissance. The supply column was met near Sebourg, and 7 lb. of oats per horse were issued. It was not until 1 p.m. that the brigade left Sebourg and marched to Préseau, the 3RD finding an advanced guard squadron, and detaching the third squadron to protect the right flank of the 11th Infantry Brigade marching south to Jenlain. " C " Squadron reported a large force of Uhlans advancing on Valenciennes from the north-east, so back the brigade went to Saultain. At dusk the brigade was ordered to hold the line Saultain-Curgies-Jenlain. The Regiment was allotted the portion Curgies-Fort Curgies and connected with the Composite Regiment at Saultain. The position was put in a state of defence, posts facing north-east being established along the railway embankment and the main road being blocked at either end of the village. " A " and " B " Squadrons were in the front line, with " C " in support at the fort a quarter of a mile south of the village. The Regiment had been told to " hold on " in the event of an attack, and the squadrons remained on the alert throughout the night. Some supply lorries arrived during the night, and these were augmented by requisition on the village. A train-load of French infantry passed at dark ; Heaven knew where they were going ; they did not know themselves !

In spite of Brigade Headquarters being with us in the village the fog of war was still upon us. Time was to tell us that in the early morning the Germans had commenced their attack on the British position west of Mons; that the cavalry had held on and enabled the infantry to retire; that the 9th Lancers had charged in order to check the German advance on our harassed infantry, and, although held up by a wire fence, the effect of the charge was such that the enemy did not advance beyond it for four hours, another result of the charge being the guns of the 119th Battery Royal Field Artillery were saved, when Francis Grenfell of the 9th got his V.C.; that the 5th Division in their retirement had kept too much to the east, with the result that, when they reached their allotted position, a large gap existed between their left and the French territorials, and that this gap, some six miles in extent, from St. Waast to Saultain, the Cavalry Division was ordered to hold for the night.

The Regiment was ordered to retire at 4.30 a.m. on the 25th, just as German infantry were seen coming up through the corn-stooks to the attack. The squadrons collected at the fort, and then moved south-west to join the brigade concentration at Maresches. When leaving the fort, half a dozen unfortunate French territorials pathetically asked what they should do; they were in charge of the fort, they said. The fort, an old-time earthwork, required at least two battalions of infantry to defend it; its gallant and devoted garrison were advised to clear out with all due speed, which they proceeded to do upon hearing that there was no one between them and the Germans, who were a quarter of a mile away in Curgies. Months afterwards evidence to this effect was asked for by the French, as the men were accused of deserting their post.

Covered by its rear-guard of cavalry, the British Army continued its retirement. The 1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades formed the rear-guard under General de Lisle, and the 3rd and 4th Cavalry Brigades acted as a left flank guard under General Allenby. A succession of positions was



### RETREAT FROM MONS

Showing :-

1. Area covered by von Kluck's II IV III and IX Corps. —————
2. The marches of the British I II and later formed III Corps. - - - - -
3. The route of the 3<sup>rd</sup> Hussars x x x

Dates are shown thus :-

{ 31 Aug } 28 Aug x 29 Aug

Note :-

The 2<sup>nd</sup>, 1<sup>st</sup> & 3<sup>rd</sup> Cavalry Brigades marched east of the 4<sup>th</sup> Cavalry Brigade, while the 5<sup>th</sup> Cav. Bde. covered the retirement of the I Corps.

0 2 4 6 8 10 Miles

taken up, and held without becoming seriously engaged. Near Montrécourt in the early afternoon the 4th Cavalry Brigade came under shrapnel fire from the enveloping German cavalry on the left. About 5 o'clock a heavy storm thoroughly soaked everyone. The pursuit was now hotly pressed by German cavalry, large parties of whom were seen approaching Solesmes from the west, and Uhlan patrols were in the town. The 3RD, with two troops as advanced guard, were ordered to push through Solesmes on to Viesly, and get into touch with the 4th Infantry Division. Several Uhlan patrols were encountered in the town by the advanced guard troops of "B" Squadron, but all fled on being charged. One of our patrols swam the river in the face of fire from Uhlans at some thirty yards range; no one was hit, and the Germans bolted before our fellows reached the bank. The remainder of the brigade followed the 3RD, and as we trotted through the town came the order "Draw swords!" Going up the hill out of the town, "Line on the left!" "Gosh! we're in for a charge!" And, sure enough, there was infantry on top. The 3RD and Carabiniers in front line. A tightening of the knees and a fearsome joy at the prospect of running a German through his gizzard when, "Halt!" We are laughing with our old friends the Shorncliffe Brigade: the Warwicks, Seaforth Highlanders, and the Irish Fusiliers, who had just arrived in France with the 4th Division. Said Sam of the Carabiniers, "I have had no-no-no-thing to eat all day, and th-th-this has ex-exhausted me. Who wou-wou-would have thought it? Have a sma-sma-small piece of my crust o' bread, old man." From here the brigade went into Viesly to billet. Scarcely room to turn in the village, streets full of horses, guns, and transport. A long, tiring day with nothing to eat for man or horse, and the whole of Lieutenant Clarke's troop of "B" Squadron missing.

We were on the move again at 12.30 a.m. on the 26th, and with us went various details who had become detached from the 1st Cavalry Brigade. The brigade halted at Inchy at 1.30 a.m., and sat in the streets until 4.30, and then



rode on to Ligny, where a supply column was found, and haversacks and nosebags promptly filled.

Meanwhile the II Corps was digging in on the Le Cateau line, which from in front of Caudry on its left curved south-west to a mile and a half north-west of Ligny. The din and roar of battle soon vibrated through the air on that hot August day. The Germans were attacking the Le Cateau line, where General Smith-Dorrien and his II Corps had decided to stand and stem the German tide for a few hours. The rattle of British rifle-fire was grand, and, with the high musketry training of our infantry, one could imagine the toll they took of the attacking Germans in their more or less close formations. A German officer wrote in his memoirs<sup>1</sup> : " It was like being on manœuvres ; one could actually still see the troops taking part. In the later fighting all that disappeared, and, in the three days' battle on the Marne especially, we experienced the truth of the 'emptiness of the battle-field.' " The 4th Cavalry Brigade was on the left of the British line, and watching that flank. The 3RD were ordered to the left of the British position, and " A " Squadron pushed forward to the cover of a bank close under the left of the infantry line, with the remainder of the Regiment in close support. Later in the morning the brigade covering the left of the infantry fell back to Selvigny, and in the evening was ordered to cover the retirement of the 4th Division. The evening closed in with a blood-red sunset, to which one of our French officer interpreters called attention, remarking, " It's a sign of blood ! " It was ! The Regiment was not called in until 8 p.m., and we were then ordered to Lempire, where the brigade was to billet. What a ride it was ! Guns, limbers, wagons, horses all struggling along the same road, and, to make confusion worse confounded, trying unsuccessfully to pass each other. In trying by-roads which were equally congested with every form of gun and wagon in the British Army, and in nipping off and on the road and resorting to other devices to get

<sup>1</sup> Diary of Captain Alfred Wirth, Divisional Staff, German IV Reserve Corps.

along, the Regiment got strung out, and the only people who had reached Lempire by 1 a.m. on the 27th were a few individuals of Headquarters.

The II Corps had been in a most precarious position at Le Cateau. Smith-Dorrien was greatly outnumbered, his gallant Corps and the 4th Division, which had joined it, standing at bay to no less than four German corps, and two cavalry divisions ; while a gap of some eight miles existed between him and Haig away on the right, though in any case the situation in which the I Corps found itself denied any assistance coming from that quarter.

The British line of battle ran from the right at Le Cateau : the 5th Division with the 19th Brigade in support, the 3rd Division in the centre, and the 4th Division on the left. East of Le Cateau were the 1st and 3rd Cavalry Brigades, and on the extreme British left was the 4th Cavalry Brigade.

Against this devoted line two German corps, the IV Reserve and the IV, advanced in frontal attack. Against its left, in an attempt to turn that flank, the German II Corps and the 2nd Cavalry Division attacked, while a flank attack against the right of the line was attempted by the German III Corps and 9th Cavalry Division.

“ At length it became apparent that, if complete annihilation was to be avoided, a retirement must be attempted ; and the order was given to commence it about 3.30 p.m. The movement was covered with the most devoted intrepidity and determination by the artillery, which had itself suffered heavily, and the fine work done by the cavalry in the further retreat from the position assisted materially in the final completion of this most difficult and dangerous operation.” (Official Despatches.)

The infantry were magnificent on the Le Cateau ridge. The order for retirement never reached a number of points along the front in time. These parties, of varying numbers, fought steadily on to the last, and were captured by the Germans. There can be little doubt that, by holding on as

they did, these devoted men deceived the enemy as to what was taking place, and so very greatly helped to prevent any immediate pursuit.

To continue our story, 3.30 a.m. of the 27th found a much diminished Regiment, short of rations, forage, and sleep, assembled at the brigade rendezvous some mile and a half east of Lempire—as a matter of fact just below Gillemont Farm, which the 3rd were to know so well in 1917. The squadrons which had become detached during the night rejoined in the course of the day, and reported that they had been commandeered by different generals who had used them on protective and other duties.

The brigade throughout the day covered the retirement of the 4th Division, and gained touch with Sordet's French Cavalry Corps, which marching round the British rear had taken post on the left. About noon the rear-guard became engaged with the enemy's advanced troops and fell back to the northern edge of Lempire. The enemy developed a strong infantry attack, supported by guns at close range, and the brigade withdrew in the direction of Roisel.

At about 6 p.m. the brigade was ordered to move south to a billeting area which was repeatedly changed during the course of the march. Just before dark a derelict wagon belonging to a Highland regiment and loaded with officers' kits, which had evidently been purposely set on fire, was passed, and this more than anything brought home to us the strenuous nature of the retreat! Eventually the column headed for Rouy, the Regiment's ultimate billet, but which only a squadron of sadly tired men and horses and Headquarters reached about 1.30 in the morning, and settled down to what sleep they could in a field by the roadside. Of all marches this stands out as the most exhausting, following, as it did, the trying and fatiguing times of the past few days. Officers and men alike, quite unable to keep awake, even while their horses were walking, were frequently fast asleep. One remembers "Jack," an officer of the leading squadron, whose horse, walking away with his

sleeping rider, passed Headquarters. "Wake him up!" said someone, as he was catching up the Carabiniers in front of us. The machine-gun sergeant it was who got hold of him, and "Jack" woke up with the absurd remark, "Give me back my shaving-brush, when you have done with it, Sergeant!" With the smile of a cherub he pulled his horse back to his place. They were tired, those men. Our French captain interpreter regaled the partner of his half-section with funny stories, half in French and the other half presumably in English. Nothing to eat, and a chilly night, and as one dozed off into fitful slumber, "What men, they're grand!" laboured through the brain. Report had it that a German cavalry force had marched abreast of us, the greater part of the night; if report had it true, they must have been as exhausted as we were!

Being awake at the early streaks of dawn, the writer went foraging. A farm-house held out the possibility of eggs; there was discovered an anxious-looking officer of the Cavalry Division Staff, who said, "Tell your Colonel that we are probably going to disperse and rendezvous somewhere to the south-west, and that he will have to feed on the country." Cheerful news!

Field-Marshal French, writing in his "1914"<sup>1</sup> on the further course of the retreat after Le Cateau says: "The great essential was to recover order, restore confidence, and infuse fresh spirit with a clear aim in view. To enable all this to be brought about, we had first to look to the cavalry. Orders were at once sent to Allenby to make such dispositions as would effectually cover our rear and western flank." "On the 27th," he writes, "the orders issued for the efficient conduct of the retreat began to take effect, and the cavalry kept the enemy well at bay." He further mentions "the valuable rôle which was being so efficiently performed by the cavalry."

At 5 a.m.—this was the 28th—the Regiment moved to a

<sup>1</sup> "1914." By Field-Marshal Viscount French of Ypres, K.P., etc. (Constable & Co., 1919.)

farm near by, and parties were sent off reconnoitring for supplies. The missing squadrons shortly afterwards turned up, and the men were at last about to have a meal, when the Regiment was ordered to turn out at once to take up a defensive position to the west and north, and hold the villages of Mesnil and Bethencourt, and to join up with the 5th Dragoon Guards at the latter place, so succulent-looking fowls and spuds had to be left. At about 11.45 a.m. a strong force of French cavalry with guns passed through Mesnil moving north and presumably drove off the threatened attack. The 3RD remained in position until the rear-guard had all passed, when at 12.30 the Regiment fell back to Nesle, where supplies were found dumped in the street by a Calvary. Nosebags and haversacks were filled, and going on to the *place* the Regiment halted and fed, after which a short ride brought us to our billets in Cressy.

A few hours' sleep at last, which did the very tired men and horses a world of good. The Regiment was now only about 350 strong. At 9.15 a.m. (29th) the B echelon transport arrived. We had not seen it for a week. From an early hour in the morning the Regiment remained in a state of constant readiness, horses saddled up, patrols out, etc. We had not the foggiest idea of any neighbouring troops, and our billet seemed to be very much in the air.

French, in his "1914," says, "The cavalry, under Allenby's skilful direction, was effectively holding off the enemy's pursuit."

A pitiful sight was the constant stream of peasants flying south, carts loaded with what belongings they could carry away, an occasional cow or goat tied behind a cart, women weeping and carrying babies or wheeling them in perambulators, old men dragging by the hand small children who could scarcely walk—the seamy side of war. At 12.30 p.m. the transport left for Roiglise, and at 1 o'clock the Regiment marched east to Ramecourt. Here "C" Squadron was sent to Freniches, as a German force of all arms was reported at Eppeville marching south-west.

The following is the report of Major Clinch, the Squadron Leader :

"The orders given to the squadron were to proceed towards Freniches to get touch with the enemy's forces reported advancing in strength on the Ham-Noyan road. The squadron proceeded to the village of Libermont, contact patrols under Lieutenants Whiston and the Hon. Donald Howard being pushed into the Bois de Hôpital on either side of the Libermont-Freniches road. Both patrols were heavily fired on and reported the wood strongly held by the enemy. The squadron, therefore, withdrew to the west side of the canal, and proceeded due south in the direction of Campagne. Lieutenant Whiston's patrol again crossed the canal on the Fretoy road, and proceeded towards Fretoy. The squadron in the meantime occupied a position holding the crossing on the Fretoy-Beaulieu road. Lieutenant Whiston's patrol dislodged a strong patrol of the enemy's cavalry from the village of Fretoy by charging them with the sword. Lieutenant Whiston then proceeded towards Freniches, but was quickly brought to a halt by heavy and continued rifle-fire. Lieutenant Howard's patrol in the meantime proceeded in the direction of Murancourt, but was soon halted for the same reason. The enemy was occupying the high ground in considerable strength. In the meantime a force of German cavalry, estimated at 500 strong, having crossed the canal near Libermont, occupied the high ground west of Cachy, thus intercepting the retreat of the squadron towards Cressy. Patrols were now withdrawn to the west side of the canal, and the squadron proceeded towards the crossing at Campagne, which was found to be strongly held by the enemy. The squadron then rode to Catigny where orders were received to withdraw and rejoin the brigade at Dives."

The 3RD remained at Ramecourt until 5 p.m., when the customary German aeroplane flew over and observed our position ; but we were off before the customary shells arrived. They were a nuisance, those German aeroplanes, and worried us constantly. Our billet at Roiglise was our next objective, but, on arriving there on 6.30 p.m., we discovered that it had been changed for Dives, and for Dives after watering and

feeding we set forth. Someone remarked, "Never mind!" That the billets would be better, for did he not remember having read about a rich man called Dives? A bright moon and a good even pace brought us to Lassigny; but here trouble awaited us. The most hopeless chaos reigned—transport columns of all cavalry brigades completely blocked the road for a mile; in some cases wagons were three abreast, and had been there for hours. We were only two and a half miles from Dives, but it was midnight before we reached our billets; not much room, for we found we were sharing the village with Cavalry Division Headquarters, and they had got there first; so some troops got into gardens and others rested by the roadside.

The morning of the 30th came in with a thick fog. The Regiment was ordered to act as rear-guard to the brigade, and the Divisional Headquarters. The hour for starting was 6 a.m., but it was 8 o'clock before the 3RD began to retire. German cavalry were soon in touch with our rear parties, and Lieutenant Taylor's troop was at one time separated from its line of retreat; but he cunningly worked round and rejoined; one of his scouts, surrounded by German cyclists, putting his horse into a gallop, escaped with a few grazes in the ribs, and a bullet-hole through his horse's off-ear. It was a rear-guard fight through densely wooded and hilly country to Clairoux, which was reached about noon. Here one squadron was left out in observation while the Regiment rode on to billet in Margny just north of the river Oise at Compiègne. Luckily for them, six standing patrols which had been ordered out about eight miles in the direction we had come were, on the representations of the Colonel, cancelled.

At about 5 p.m. the 3RD were ordered out to reinforce the squadron which had been left out, for it was decided to retain a hold of the high ground on the right bank of the Oise. The line given to the Regiment was from Janville on the Oise on the right, westwards through Coudun to the cross-roads by the railway a mile west of Giraumont on the left. The Carabiniers were to watch the Route d'Amiens

south-west of this line with one troop. The squadrons went into the line as follows, " A " on the right of Janville, " C " in the centre, and " B " on the left with two troops in support at Coudun, while, touch not having been obtained with the Carabiniers, a post was placed on the Route d'Amiens at midnight. Headquarters was in Coudun, to which place a cable was laid from Cavalry Division Headquarters in Compiègne. The Regiment was in position by 7 p.m., roads were barricaded and villages held, while all preparations were made to ensure a warm reception for the on-coming Germans. The squadrons were deployed on a somewhat wide front, and communication was only possible along the actual front line. The wooded heights of Mont Ganelon were in our rear ; we heard that poor Victor Brooke, of the 9th Lancers, had been buried on its slopes the day before.

From about 4.30 a.m. on the 31st our advanced posts were in touch with hostile patrols. The Germans were trying all the approaches along the front, and the pickets killed the more venturesome. Our patrols reported the sound of wheels, while one, Lieutenant Eliot's, by a cunning ambush accounted for a German or two. Gradually the enemy began to attack all along the front, and soon our centre was pierced, which made it impossible to reinforce the squadron on the right. Our orders had been to retain our position until told to retire by Cavalry Division Headquarters. It was about noon that the order to do so reached us, and we began to fall back on the brigade, which had been sent up to assist in our withdrawal. The retirement was carried out in capital order, " B " Squadron following " C," the squadrons rejoining the brigade on the other side of the Route d'Amiens. Nothing was known of the fate of " A " Squadron, which being cut off had to retire by the eastern end of Mont Ganelon ; the squadron eventually rejoined at that night's billet in Verberie loaded with the spoils of war in the shape of a Ziethen Hussar's busby and some German lances. By the irony of fate, the Regiment had been engaged with the 3rd German Hussars (Ziethen's)



a Prussian regiment to which the writer had been attached in the German manœuvres of 1909, and with which the 3<sup>rd</sup> had exchanged Christmas-cards for some years. With them were the 1st Uhlans. Both the Prussian regiments had a good many casualties, while a major of Ziethen's Hussars was left mortally wounded by "C" Squadron. Keeping west of the Oise the brigade rode to le Meux, and, crossing the river, went on to Verberie to billet, arriving there about 7 o'clock and bivouacking in a field.

During the night the bridges over the river were blown up. The day had been a very hot and trying one. Our horses had been twenty-seven hours under saddle, and they had only had their saddles off for four hours in the previous twenty-four hours.

To chronicle all the doings of the squadrons would run into too bulky a volume. As an example, the following account of his squadron's work on August 30th and 31st, by the commander of "A" Squadron, Major Du Pre, will be of interest :

"When leaving Dives on the morning of the 30th 'A' Squadron was detailed as rear-guard to the Regiment. The squadron moved out at 4.30 a.m. and occupied the high ground north of the village ; Taylor's troop towards Lagny, Eliot's three quarters of a mile south of it at the château, and Cahusac's to the south-east of Eliot, Squadron Headquarters with Turner's troop was at a farm near Eliot on the road. Squadron Sergeant-Major Burns and one man were left in Dives to report when the Regiment, as rear-guard to the brigade, retired.

"Soon after Burns's personal report that Dives was clear, Taylor reported an enemy troop supporting a patrol which he had driven back. I sent him word by his messenger to withdraw to the left of the Eliot-Cahusac line. This messenger, Shoeing-smith Bailey, delivered his message, but on the way ran into some German cyclists, and was wounded by revolver-shots. Giving the Regiment time to get well clear of Dives, the squadron fell back by Dreslincourt on to the main Noyan-Compiègne road, and thence to Ribecourt, Turner's troop being sent farther up that road to cover my

withdrawal. On the way I found Bell, with last night's billeting party, just waking up, and I gathered him in. To the main road the squadron rode across country, and nearly missed its direction in a wood; after joining the main road Turner's troop followed as rear-guard. Finding the tail of the Regiment just leaving Ribecourt, the squadron took up a rear-guard position to cover it, and then fell slowly back. At Longueil I got orders that the squadron was to remain out on outposts, possibly until the following morning. I had a look at the lie of the land, and posted Cahusac's troop behind a small eminence about half a mile along the road to Coudun, with orders to patrol as far as Coudun. The remainder of the squadron was kept in Longueil. Observation posts were established, trenches dug across the street by civil labour, all approaches wired, and the horses with slackened girths placed in an orchard. The enemy reached Ribecourt during the afternoon. About 9 p.m. Eliot, who had missed the squadron at Ribecourt and found his way to the Regiment at Margny, arrived with his troop and the news that the whole Regiment was coming up to Coudun, and that the 1st Cavalry Brigade was on the other side of the Oise on my right. Keeping Eliot's troop with me, I sent Turner's back to Janville on the Compiègne road.

"About 5 a.m. on the 31st a German cavalry patrol of six men came down the road from Ribecourt, in half-sections at a walk. My post opened fire and killed a horse. The dismounted Boche climbed up behind a pal and they all bolted. At about 7 o'clock a couple of enemy cyclists came to the crest of the high ground about a thousand yards in front of us, and remained there watching the village. I sent Eliot dismounted with four men to deal with them. Meanwhile a cavalry patrol of ten men came along the Ribecourt road. For the protection of Eliot we opened fire and the Germans bolted like rabbits. Not long after Eliot and his four men turned up. They had shot nine of the ten of the German patrol, by lying up off the road when they heard them galloping back. I sent Taylor's troop out to get the identifications of the dead Germans. He came under fire before he reached them and lost a man, and, seeing the enemy in considerable force on the high ground, he withdrew. At the same time fifty Germans were reported in a hollow on my left front, with more coming on behind them. I sent Taylor's troop to a brick-field in that direction, and at

9.15 a.m. he became engaged. Two sections from Eliot's troop were sent to reinforce him. Meanwhile, heavy fire was heard from Cahusac's direction. Communication with him was now impossible, but I knew that he could get back by a track over Mont Ganelon (which he eventually did).

"By 9.45 a.m. the enemy came on in increasing numbers. Up till now our opponents had been cavalry, but in a very short time infantry (possibly jäger brought up in lorries) were to be seen advancing down the Ribecourt road. It was time to go, or run the risk of being cut off. Taylor's troop, followed by Eliot's, retired from the brick-field by sections at a trot, Squadron Sergeant-Major Burns remaining with the last section, which with rapid fire kept back the Germans. The leading attacking infantry were some 400 yards from the village as the squadron fell back, still covered by Burns and his section, who got away without any casualties. The squadron retired on Turner's troop in Janville, which was quickly barricaded and put into a state of defence, and Olive was sent off to select our next position to retire to. He returned with the news that the 1st Cavalry Brigade on my right had withdrawn, and that the bridge in my rear over the Oise near Choisy was open, which would enable the enemy, who were pushing up the valley on the other side of the river, to get between me and Compiègne. At 11.30 a.m. I retired and passed through Compiègne, and eventually found our Brigade Headquarters with detachments of Carabiniers and Composite Regiment in a field on its north-west, and with them marched to Verberie, where I reported to the Regiment about 6 p.m. My casualties during the two days were three men wounded, who fell into the hands of the enemy, and Sergeant Randall and one man missing."

A word as to the billeting parties. These devoted and much-abused officers and men deserve a meed of praise for their work during the retreat from Mons. Continually lost, as billeting areas were for tactical or other reasons frequently changed during a march, after the billeting party had set out for some prearranged locality, never knowing who might come and take the billets they had allotted for their units, possibly even Germans, while if British, but of another

regiment, or worse still a staff, an acrimonious debate was bound to take place ; after leaving their regiments, losing what little knowledge they possessed as to what was going on ; with bold hearts and of cheerful countenance riding off " into the blue," knowing but one thing—the name and direction of a village into which they were to put their regiment ; and finally, except in the earlier part of the retreat, mapless as well. It is a wonder that our billeting parties were not frequently scuppered by the Germans. All honour to them for a thankless and often a dangerous task.

The 1st of September came in with a thick fog, and it was while marching to the brigade rendezvous at 6 a.m. that the Brigadier-General commanding the artillery of the 4th Division ordered the 3rd to go to the assistance of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, which was being heavily attacked on bivouac at Néry.

The Regiment at once rode in that direction, and on arriving on the plateau above Néry " B " Squadron was detached to the south-west of the village, while " A " and " C " moved to the high ground on its northern side. In the thick fog it was difficult to discover what was going on. A German cavalry force, which was afterwards found to have consisted of a cavalry division with twelve guns, had succeeded in slipping round the infantry line south of the forest of Compiègne, and in the thick fog had attacked the 1st Cavalry Brigade in their billets in Néry. The casualties had been very heavy, especially in the Bays, 5th Dragoon Guards, and " L " Battery R.H.A. With such gallantry as is only possible in the best of troops, that brigade had at first held and eventually driven off the German attack with considerable losses in killed and prisoners, and the capture of eight of the German guns. The Middlesex Regiment and the 4th Cavalry Brigade coming on the scene in support of the hard-pressed 1st Cavalry Brigade helped the situation, but the German retirement had already commenced. The story of the defence of Néry is an epic in the annals of war, while the action of " L " Battery is Homeric in its story. An officer's patrol of the 11th Hussars

on that foggy dawn were the first to discover the advent of the Germans, and scarcely was the report made when shells at a range of 450 yards began to fall amongst "L" Battery and the Bays and 5th Dragoon Guards, who were bivouacked in the open, the 11th Hussars having the cover of the village. "L" Battery was knocked to pieces, but, with its officers killed, continued to fight its remaining gun until the last round in the battery limbers had been expended, and—amazing fact—the German guns silenced. The last officer to fall was Captain Bradbury, who, with both legs shattered, continued to direct the fire until he too lay dead, gallant soul. Of the little band of wounded men who continued the unequal contest the heroes who, sorely wounded, but sufficiently alive to fight their gun to the end, were but two, Sergeant-Major Dorrel and Gunner Nelson.

The Néry combat ended, the Regiment, less "B" Squadron, fell back to la Bossierre farm, where shrapnel began to burst about us, much to the annoyance of large coveys of partridges. About 12.30 p.m. the Regiment was ordered by the General Commanding the 4th Division to cover the left flank during the retirement of his division from Verberie to Rary and Rully. One remembers a troop of "C" Squadron being sent to a brigade of rearmost infantry ostensibly upon some mission, but in reality, "It will put heart in them to see a troop of cavalry with them," said their General; "poor devils, they're badly done." At Rully we found the 4th Cavalry Brigade and our "B" Squadron. We continued south at 7 o'clock, and the brigade eventually spent the night in Fontaine on the northern edge of the forest of Ermenonville, "A" Squadron, which had been covering the left of the 4th Division, arriving an hour and a half later. The transport joined us, and we had for once in a way the luxury of our flea-bags, or in plain language our valises and their blankets, to say nothing of being able to replenish a tobacco-pouch, and to the lucky ones their supply of matches. The vision of the 3RD's bivouac in an enormous walled garden with the inlying picket and sentries comes over one, and a mail from home, and of a very

drunken citizen of France who persisted in presenting the Brigadier with a box of matches, while rumour had it that a large force of German cavalry was between us and Paris.

Although saddled up and ready to move at 4 o'clock next morning, we did not march until 5. The 4th Cavalry Brigade, followed by the 2nd, marched through the forest. A lovely ride in the shade of the trees, with glimpses of deer in the parks and even a peacock, but a road badly congested with flying refugees. Our Divisional Commander, passing, was heard to remark that we would "soon get our own back," which put the heart in us. Near the village of Ermenonville were found the remains of British motor-lorries, the drivers killed and missing—the reported Germans of last night was more than a rumour. Also four German guns were found, which rather pointed to the fact that the hostile cavalry south of us were the division which had attacked Néry, and that they had some difficulty in clearing out of the way of the march of the British Army. A crowd collected round a smouldering haystack said that a dead British motor-cycle despatch-rider had been taken off the burning stack. Debouching from the forest, the retirement continued via Ver and Othis to le Mesnil; several blind ditches on the way caused some grief. At the last-named village the brigade went into billets at the delightfully early hour of 4.30 p.m.; and the transport came in an hour later, it left again under sudden orders at midnight.

The brigade marched at 4.30 p.m. on the 3rd, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade following us. The march was via Villeparisis to Chelles, one of the outer forts of Paris, and it was with much interest that we rode past the most excellently hidden French guns, then on through the night to Gournay, a village on the south bank of the Marne, a few miles east of Paris, which was reached at 9 a.m. on the 4th. Here we halted until 4.30 p.m., and then set out for Lognes, where about 6 p.m. the Regiment bivouacked alongside Menier's racing stables in a nice dry field with excellent water supply.

September 4th was a wonderful day—we halted! The transport arrived about 9 in the morning, and a delightfully hot sunny day was spent in our field cleaning up, and very necessary it was after the continual movement of the past fortnight. Dame Rumour was busy, too; the Germans were said to have changed their march from Paris to an easterly direction. Big events were evidently in the air, but what? We pawns in the game did not know. During the night orders came that the transport would march at 3 a.m., and the brigade at 4 a.m. In what direction, some of us wondered, as we curled up in our flea-bags again.

“Hell! We’re marching south!” Sure enough it was south we rode by Lesigny, Brie-Comte-Robert, to Réau, which was reached at noon. “Where we watered,” wrote an officer in his diary, “women gave us bread, pears, and flowers, and my servant Wheeler got a pig’s tail, which he thoroughly enjoyed; the fact that it was given him by a pretty girl, he said, made him enjoy it all the more.” Uhlan patrols were said to be about, but none came our way.

“The Great Retreat is over; orders just come to march east—it can’t mean anything else! This is the 5th of September; remember it, you fellows!”

At 4.30 in the afternoon the brigade saddled up again and commenced its march to Mormant. There was a different feeling in the air somehow. “What will they say at home?” The smallest trumpeter nearly burst with pride, and thought himself a hero. Where we were going, what we were going to do and why, none of us knew, and neither did we care. Had not the staunch little Army of Britain saved Paris, and, joy of joys, the future looked like “getting our own back”?

To break off our story for a moment, let us consider how the British Army had performed a herculean task in reaching its present position in such fighting form. Before even its concentration on the Belgian border could be completed, it hurried up to Mons to meet the German onslaught which, all unknown, was coming in great strength round the left

of the Allied armies. At Mons, on the British right, the 5th French Army, unknown to the British Commander, commenced its retreat twelve hours earlier than did the British, while the non-arrival of the French Territorials on the left placed the two British corps in an isolated salient facing a German advance in vastly superior numbers, a salient which the German plan was to outflank on both flanks. Outnumbered and out-gunned—the Germans had 500 to 600 guns against the British 250—the British Army, by stubbornly contesting every foot of ground, extricated itself from as perilous a situation as ever an army was in.

Then followed the retreat to le Cateau, during which the two British corps had by force of circumstances drifted apart, and a gap of some eight miles existed between them. At the battle of le Cateau the already much diminished little Army was placed in an even more perilous position. The Germans brought 600 guns into action against the British II Corps, which could only oppose them with one-fourth of that number. No assistance could be looked for from the I Corps eight miles away, which had been fighting hard at Landrecies and Maroilles. The situation was wellnigh desperate, but it was saved by the self-sacrificing spirit of the British cavalry and artillery. Fortunately the Germans had suffered too severely to engage in an energetic pursuit.

In pitch darkness and in almost hopeless confusion the retreat went on throughout the night, and it was not until two days later that the British horsemen repulsed the pursuing German cavalry with considerable loss.

The condition of our gallant but exhausted infantry, as one desperately hot day succeeded another, can be imagined. A large portion of the men were reservists just called to the colours, and these naturally were not as fit as they might be. "Ragged, footsore, bearded, dirty and unkempt, gaunt-eyed from lack of sleep, but upheld by that invincible spirit which is the glory of the British race."<sup>1</sup> For a

<sup>1</sup> Rev. O. Watkins, C.F., *With French in France and Flanders*.



fortnight they were marching, turning at bay and inflicting heavy losses upon the pursuing Germans, and with these victories turning their backs to the enemy and retreating again. What *moral*! Only the best of troops, and the best disciplined, as we were to learn later, could do it.

Small wonder that the Germans thought the British Army was done for and out of the game. Small wonder! They forgot one thing, however—the nation from which it sprung, and, in forgetting, turned south-east across the front of the exhausted British. The British Army, unbeaten, sprang at the German Army, and took a noble part in driving it back across the Marne and the Aisne.

Its Great Retreat ended with the exhausted but unbeaten British Army turning about and advancing to the victory of the Marne, one of the few decisive battles of the war—a feat of arms unparalleled in the history of nations.

In his book "1914" the Commander-in-Chief writes this tribute to his Army: "I knew that it was alone due to the vast superiority of our cavalry over that of the enemy, and to the splendid tenacity and the superior marching and fighting powers of our troops, that we had been saved from overwhelming disaster."

Finally, let us add the German prologue to this glorious tragedy, to which the victory of the Marne was the fitting epilogue:

*Copy of an order issued by H.I.M. The Emperor of Germany to his Army on the 19th August 1914*

"It is my Royal and Imperial Command that you concentrate your energies for the immediate present upon one single purpose, and that is that you address all your skill and the valour of my Soldiers to exterminate first the treacherous English—walk over General French's contemptible little Army.

"HEADQUARTERS, AIX-LA-CHAPELLE,  
"August 19th."

"Blimy! Kaiser Bill," quoth Tommy Atkins, "'e ain't got no nerve!"

## PART II

The 5th September was indeed a momentous day. To the British, because it saw the end of the Retreat from Mons ; to them again, and to the French, because it was the eve of perhaps the most decisive battle of the war ; to the Allies, because on it was signed in London, by the British Foreign Secretary and the French and Russian Ambassadors, the following agreement :

“ The British, French, and Russian Governments mutually engage not to conclude peace separately during the present war. The three Governments agree that when terms of peace come to be discussed, no one of the Allies will consider the conditions of peace without the previous agreement of each of the other Allies.”

To turn to the Marne. Both the Allies and the Germans saw the importance of the approaching battle. It was to be what is termed a decisive battle—upon its result would depend the future course of the war, and, being so, the higher commands of the three armies engaged endeavoured, by “ Orders of the day,” to impress the fact upon the troops.

First let us take that of General Joffre to the French Army :

“ At the moment when a battle, on which depends the welfare of the country, is about to begin, I have to remind all ranks that the time for looking back is past. Every effort must be made to attack the enemy and hurl him back. Troops which find advance impossible must stand their ground at all costs and die rather than give way. This is a moment when no faltering will be tolerated.”

The British Commander-in-Chief told his troops something of the situation. He wrote :

“ After a most trying series of operations, mostly in retirement, which have been rendered necessary by the general

strategic plan of the Allied Armies, the British forces stand to-day formed in line with their French comrades, ready to attack the enemy. Foiled in their attempt to invest Paris, the Germans have been driven to move in an easterly and south-easterly direction, with the apparent intention of falling in strength on the French 5th Army. In this operation they are exposing their right flank and their line of communications to an attack by the combined French 6th Army and the British forces. I call upon the British Army in France to show now to the enemy its power, and to push on vigorously to the attack beside the French 6th Army. I am sure I shall not call upon it in vain; but that, on the contrary, by another manifestation of the magnificent spirit they have shown in the past fortnight, they will fall on the enemy's flank with all their strength, and in unison with their Allies drive them back."

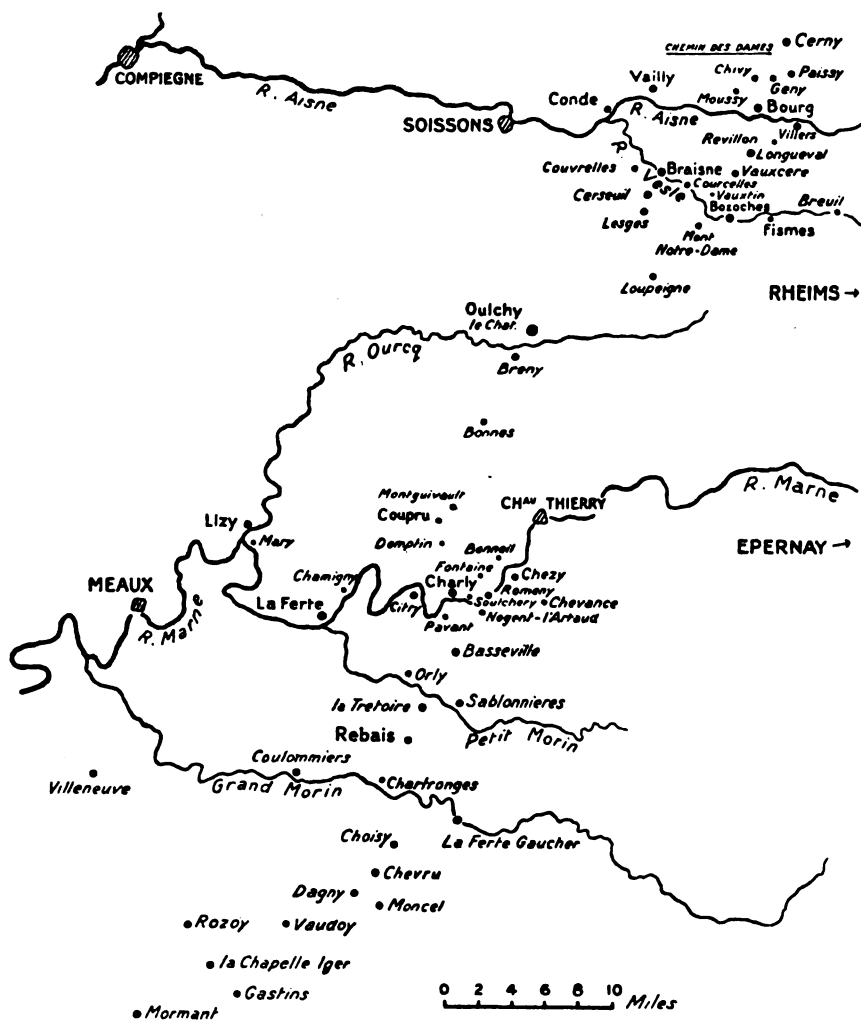
The German order was as follows :

"The object of our long and arduous marches has been achieved. The main French forces, after a protracted retreat, have been forced to accept battle. The great decision is unquestionably at hand. To-morrow, therefore, the whole German Army, as well as our own corps, will be engaged everywhere on the line Paris-Verdun. To save the welfare and honour of Germany I expect every officer and man, notwithstanding the hard and heroic fighting of these last days, to do his duty unswervingly and to the last breath. Everything depends on the result of to-morrow."

This order was found amongst the papers of the Commander of the VIII Corps.

Comparing these three orders, that of the British seems the most cheerful. In the German order nothing is said of the British Army !

In his Operation Orders, issued on the evening of the 5th, Sir John French stated that the enemy was moving south-east; that the British Army would advance east with a  
ing covered by the 6th French  
and its right would be linked  
marching north. The Army



BATTLE OF THE MARNE AND AISNE.

was to be in position by 10 a.m. next day, with its right on la Chapelle-Iger, and its left about Villeneuve, and facing east.

The cavalry from now was to be formed into two divisions ; General Allenby's 1st Cavalry Division to consist of the

1st, 2nd, and 4th Cavalry Brigades, while General Gough's 2nd Cavalry Division was to be formed by the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades. Allenby's division was to guard the front and flank of the I Corps on the right and connect with the 5th French Army, and Gough's division was to cover the II Corps, and connect with Allenby on the right and with the French 6th Army on the left.

On the German side von Kluck could not have known much about the French 6th Army, and, with the British Army supposedly beaten and out of action on his right, he was well placed to roll up the left of the French line.

To hark back to our story. We left the Regiment on the march to Mormant, where they arrived at 9 p.m., and found the transport already there. At midnight orders arrived for the next day's march, and with them for the first time information as to what was going on.

At 6.30 a.m. on the 6th the division marched eastwards, the 2nd Cavalry Brigade in the advanced guard and followed by the 1st and 4th Cavalry Brigades. Gastins was reached at 8.45 a.m., where "C" Squadron was ordered in the direction of la Chapelle-Iger to obtain touch with the right of the I Corps. Beyond patrols the brigade was not employed. The 3rd spent an uncomfortable night in beastly billets in le Corbier, with "C" Squadron on outpost duty linking up the right of the I Corps near Vaudoy and the left of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade. The strength of the Regiment had dwindled by this date to 265 all ranks.

During the day the 4th Guards Brigade had attacked and thrown back hostile infantry in the neighbourhood of Rozoy, and the cavalry from Gastins had driven the enemy back on Dagny without much fighting.

On the 7th September the Germans commenced to retreat. In the neighbourhood of Lizy and Mary on the Ourcq they were engaged in a bitter struggle with the 6th French Army; the roar of battle was easily heard where we were. The 5th French Army was driving the Germans north to the Petit Morin, while farther to the east Foch's Army was holding its own in a desperate defensive battle. The British

Army, conforming with the northward march of the French 5th Army, was wheeling to the north; this, and the fact that von Kluck, in order to hurry off reinforcements to the battle raging on the Ourcq, had left a comparatively small force, consisting mainly of von der Marwitz's cavalry, made the 7th a cavalry day with the British. Von der Marwitz was in effect fighting a delaying action, and such infantry as he had were falling back all day covered by his cavalry. Everywhere, and especially on the right, the British cavalry acted with great vigour.

To turn to the Regiment: 4 o'clock in the morning found us up and getting a warm by a welcome fire, over which our scanty breakfast was cooking. Six o'clock saw the brigade marching to Dagny, then on to Chevru, driving back Uhlan patrols as we went. Here the brigade was ordered to Moncel to the support of the 2nd Cavalry Brigade, which was in action with the Germans. A fast, dusty ride, and we turned into a meadow. A battery came into action firing over the wood in front of us, while German shrapnel began bursting overhead. The 3RD were ordered to mount, and trotted through the village and the dust to its far side, where, with a squadron in front, it covered the village. One remembers a dead German officer lying in the street so thickly covered with dust that he might have been a bundle of rags, and where Regimental Headquarters was established were German bivouac-fires still smouldering. One also remembers an American in a motor-car coming up to Headquarters, and being somewhat annoyed at not being allowed to go on. He explained that he was attached to the staff and was seeking the 2nd Cavalry Brigade; being told its direction, and that the Regiment was in action just in front, he departed on his quest. The 9th Lancers and the 18th Hussars of that brigade had had some excitement with the enemy a short while before our arrival. A troop of the 9th had been driven out of the village by two squadrons of German Dragoons, then a troop and a half of the same regiment, led by their Colonel, charged a supporting German squadron, riding clean through them, and the discomfiture of the

Germans was completed by another squadron charging a dismounted squadron of the 18th, who practically annihilated it with rifle-fire at close range. Returning to Chevru, at about 1.30 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade pushed on to Choisy, where we were shelled heavily, and from there it was ordered to reconnoitre the Grand Morin, where columns of German transport could be seen moving north from the river. We eventually got to billets at Chartronges, north of the river, at 7.15 p.m., and the transport came in an hour later. The enemy had looted the village; in fact, all the villages had been left by the retiring Germans in a filthy and pitiable condition—no food for the wretched inhabitants, evidence of indiscriminate looting everywhere, chests of drawers broken open and their contents and clothes thrown about, while the filth in the rooms was unnatural. The day's ride had been through very intricate country, deep valleys, thick orchards, and numerous villages. The German cavalymen were not the excellent rifle-shots that the British were; but they carried a large quantity of machine guns, in which they were well trained. To each cavalry brigade was attached a regiment of jäger (riflemen). This combination made them a serious proposition in the defence of river lines. By evening the Germans had fallen back to the Petit Morin, and the British were on the Grand Morin, with the cavalry on the north of the river, but south of Rebais.

During the 8th the German rear-guards made strenuous attempts to delay the British at the Petit Morin, and there was heavy fighting all along the line of the river. The Regiment left its billets at 4.45 a.m., and, marching through Rebais, joined the brigade and batteries in action against Germans retiring north-east from the Petit Morin. About this time the 2nd Division of the I Corps was stoutly opposed for some considerable time at la Trétoire, and heavy fighting was in progress; it was about 1 o'clock that the brigade, with some infantry of the 1st Division, crossed the river higher up at Sablonnières, and by threatening the flank of the German rear-guard helped to dislodge them.

About 5 in the evening a portion of the enemy's rear-guard was discovered retiring from the direction of Orly towards Citry, and the 4th Cavalry Brigade rode round south of Pavant to intercept them. With our infantry following on the tail of the Germans, a goodly number were rounded up; had the batteries of our 1st Division known of our move and refrained from shelling us as well as the Germans, none would have got away, and those that did reach the Marne were much assisted by a heavy thunderstorm. A quick ride back with some jumping over watercourses to very indifferent billets just south of Basseville, with no transport in.

"Riding through a village in the dark of the early hours," wrote an officer in his diary, "I saw a group of women looking fearfully out from behind a gate apparently in doubt whether we were friend or foe; so I rode close up to them and said 'Vive la France,' and with evident relief they quietly replied 'Vive l'Angleterre.' Most places we pass through seem deserted, though cellars hold a few, anyway, a lonely cat or dog is all that is in evidence."

By evening the British had made good the Petit Morin. The Germans had now lost both the Morins, and the danger of finding the British Army pouring behind his left flank must have worried von Kluck.

Wednesday, the 9th September, was a day of mist and rain, with muddy, sodden roads. It saw the critical moment in the battle on the Ourcq. That the task of driving back the Germans was beyond the powers of the 6th French Army had become clear. Reinforcements were wanted, and there was no general reserve to supply them. The Military Governor of Paris rose to the occasion and hurried out troops by rail and in motors and taxis. The Germans fought desperately, but in the face of the reinforced 6th French Army, and the strong British advance, there was nothing for it but retreat.

On the British front there was severe fighting in places all day, but by nightfall the passage of the Marne was won,



and the line ran from the west of Château Thierry on the right to Chamigny on the left. The Germans had lost heavily in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

The left of the 5th French Army had crossed the Marne on the right, and had joined hands with the British I Corps.

On the German side, in the evening the Emperor found himself compelled to sign an order for the general retreat of his five armies between Paris and Verdun. The Marne was won.

Allenby's cavalry had seized the bridges at Chézy Charly-sur-Marne, and Saulchéry, then, rapidly advancing to the high ground about Fontaine Fuavel, they covered the passage of the I Corps over these bridges. Making many captures, the I Corps reached Dompnin, and the cavalry rode some miles farther north to the heights about Montgivrault. During the day the cavalry, and the I and II Corps, had fought numerous engagements with the enemy's rear-guard, and had made large captures.

To turn to the Regiment's doings on this day: We paraded at 4.15 a.m. and joined the brigade just south of Basseville. From there the brigade marched to near Nogent-l'Artaud and thence east to Chevance. At about 8.30 "A" Squadron was sent across the Marne at Chézy-sur-Marne to Bonneil, to get touch with the 1st Cavalry Brigade, which crossed the river at Saulchéry. Later the brigade followed our squadron across at Chézy, and a beautiful view it was going down to the river—vineyards and orchards, lovely old churches and picturesque châteaux, and between its green hill-sides the quiet-flowing Marne, entirely ignorant of the history it was making in the civilized world, quite unconscious of the fact that with its name went the utter defeat of German ambitions, and the dawn of hope for England and France. Chézy, however, took the romance out of its beauty. The Germans had left what had been a quaint, clean little town, dirty and foul in their passing. The contents of shops littered the streets, doors and windows were smashed, and the churchyard littered. From Chézy the brigade rode towards Coupru, and at about 5 p.m.

billets were allotted to the Regiment at Malassine farm ; but, as this turned out to be merely a ruin, with no water anywhere near, we went in search of the latter and eventually billeted at la Mazure farm. Between Malassine and la Mazure the Regiment rode across the head of a column of French Cuirassiers of Conneau's Cavalry Corps, which halted while the 3RD broke into a gallop to clear the front. Oh, for the brush of an artist ! This is the picture. Out of the thick wood, black in the evening light, wound the French horsemen, their steel helmets and cuirasses, and their red breeches showing up against the dark of the trees. Close in front of them cantered the khaki-clad English Hussars in a column of troops, each troop as it reached the road jumping the ditches on either side. The pomp of war.

Lord French, writing of this day in his " 1914," tells of some of the troops he met. He wrote :

" I was tremendously struck by their general appearance and attitude. They were full of spirit and fired with enthusiasm. They had upon them that war-worn look which we all know so well ; but one felt, as one rode beside them, that here were troops whom nothing could stop, who asked only to be led forward, and who were enveloped in an atmosphere of confidence and victory. They were very tired, however ; " etc.

The 10th September saw the 6th French Army on our left across the Ourcq, while by evening Conneau's cavalry on the left of the 5th French Army came up in line with the British right.

On the British front it was a day of desultory fighting. At daybreak, and in pouring rain, the pursuit of strong enemy rear-guards was continued. The I Corps on the right was the most advanced, with the II and III echeloned in rear of each other on the left, the whole being covered by the cavalry. The Cavalry Division soon after daybreak advanced to the neighbourhood of Bonnes, with the first brigade on the left and the fourth on the right, the second

brigade being in reserve. We found ourselves in a difficult cavalry country, thickly wooded, and the features steep. Our guns came into action against German cavalry retiring northwards, and the enemy retaliated ; and so on throughout the day, until nightfall found us bivouacked in the grounds of the château of Hontigny.

The battle of the Marne was over. The German attempt to strike a decisive blow at the Allied line had been defeated by the magnificent resistance of the French armies of the centre, aided in no small measure by the strenuous pressure of the Allied left wing, consisting of the 6th French Army, the British Army, and the 5th French Army. Von Kluck was in headlong flight to the Aisne, and the British and 5th French Armies were avenged for their long retreat.

At dawn on the 11th the British broke up from their billets and bivouacs and continued the pursuit. The Army crossed the Ourcq practically unopposed, and during the day the cavalry reached the line of the Aisne. The 1st, 2nd, and 4th Cavalry Brigades passed the night on the high ground about Couvrelles and Cerseuil, while the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades bivouacked south of Soissons. Next day the cavalry reported that strong hostile detachments, supported by artillery and machine guns, were holding the town and bridge of Braisne on the Vesle and the heights beyond. The place was captured after a sharp fight by the 1st Cavalry Brigade. The Army then crossed the Vesle and approached the Aisne, and took up a position for the night. Very heavy rain closed the day.

To turn to the Regiment, the strength of which was now only 220 in the ranks. At 4.30 a.m. on the 11th we marched to join the Cavalry Division concentration at Brény. Here there was great confusion. Three British cavalry brigades and a French cavalry division all on the same road for Oulchy le Château, with the attendant bump and squash, and bad language usual on such occasions. From Oulchy the division continued north, the direction of our brigade on the right being north-east. Nearing Mont Notre-Dame a French battery on our right came into action against that

very picturesque hill. At dusk the Regiment retired to its allotted billets, but here confusion reigned supreme—the 3RD and a battery of horse artillery had been given the same billet. Marching and counter-marching ensued, followed by a lengthy wait in a stubble-field in which the two solitary haystacks gave what shelter they could from the driving rain, until the Regiment at last bedded down in a field in Loupeigne. During the day we had come across a regiment of Spahis, a wild-looking lot of fellows. One remembers their scouts—biggish men in white flowing robes, and mounted on small, wiry Arab horses whose saddles were of embroidered cloth. They had the sinister reputation of counting their prisoners at the end of the day by the number of human ears in their nosebags ; but this, of course, was a gross libel !

At 4.45 next morning the 3RD moved off to cover the concentration of the brigade. “ B ” Squadron was ordered to reconnoitre the crossings of the Vesle from Bazoches to Courcelles, and also the high ground three miles north of Bazoches. The reports had to be in to the brigade by 6.30, which did not give much time. The squadron, however, managed it and reported that the bridge at Bazoches was intact, but held by the enemy, and that the Courcelles bridge was destroyed, and therefore the reconnaissance to the north could not progress. At Courcelles the squadron was in action with German cavalry, and had a few casualties. At about 7 a.m. the French cavalry on our right retired two and a half miles, having suffered considerable loss through tumbling into a trap. The brigade then moved west to Lesges, where Lieutenant Clarke and his troop, who had been missing since the 24th August, rejoined ; they had joined the 3rd Cavalry Brigade on that night and had been with the 5th Lancers ever since. Orders were received at 5.15 p.m. to cross at Braisne and move to Vauxtin. The order was timed 2.15, but the unfortunate motorcyclist, who had but a mile to go, could not get his machine through the mud and transport crowded on the road. In Braisne the brigade ran into the 2nd Division marching on the same, and only available, road to Courcelles. This

involved both columns marching in the dark side by side, and halting every few yards. Vauxtin was reached at 9.15 p.m. in pouring rain. A vile night followed, a few of the men got into caves and barns, while others had to hold the horses on the roadside all night, and supply lorries ran over saddles and swords. A bleak hill-side and a bitterly cold wind—it was unpleasant.

The morning of the 13th saw the opening of the battle of the Aisne. The British Army was in position south of that river, between Soissons on the west and Bourg on the east, with outposts on the river, a stretch of about fifteen miles. On the right was the I Army Corps with the 1st Cavalry Division. Continuing the line to the left stood the II and III Army Corps, and Gough's two cavalry brigades. The British Army, with the 6th French Army on its left, formed the left wing of the Allied line, which stretched away with many a bend to the Swiss frontier. On the British right stood the 5th French Army.

Consider the task before the British. The Army stood facing a deep, broad, unfordable river with its bridges destroyed. The river itself, and its southern approaches, were under the fire of the enemy's guns, either by direct or high-angle fire. A formidable enemy, armed with powerful artillery released from the investment of Maubeuge by the fall of that fortress, stood on the defensive on the northern heights of the river—a position which had been prepared in the thorough German manner to fall back upon if necessity arose. By nightfall all the passages of the Aisne except that at Condé were secured and held. The Royal Engineers had during the day, under fire, built or restored fourteen bridges! A splendid example of self-sacrifice and efficiency.

With the bridges destroyed it did not look like being a cavalry day, and instructions were issued that the opportunity was to be taken to rest the horses and dry the men. About noon, however, the brigade was following the 2nd Cavalry Brigade across the river, but at Bourg the movement was stopped and eventually we went into billets at Revillon. The 1st and 2nd Cavalry Brigades had some

fighting in being called upon to fill a gap in the infantry line. They stopped a German advance, and the danger passed.

The British story of the battle of the Aisne tells of strenuous and ceaseless German efforts to break the line. It tells also of the heroic and determined stand made by the Army, until eventually, by the 18th September, our three corps had established and strongly entrenched themselves north of the Aisne, with a loss of 10,000 officers and men. To quote from Sir Arthur Conan Doyle <sup>1</sup>:

“ One can well sympathize with the feelings of the German Commanders who, looking down from their heights, saw the British line in a most dangerous strategical position, over-matched by their artillery, with a deep river in their rear, and yet unable to take advantage of it because of their failure to carry the one shallow line of extemporised trenches. Naturally, they came again and again, by night and by day, with admirable perseverance and daring, to the attack; but were always forced to admit that nothing can be done against the magazine rifle in hands which know how to use it. They tried here and they tried there, these constant, sudden outpourings of cheering, hurrying, grey-clad men. They were natural tactics, but expensive ones, for every new attack left a fresh fringe of stricken men in front of the British lines.”

From the 18th until the British left the Aisne the operation became a mutual siege accompanied by a gigantic artillery duel. The cavalry throughout the battle, and until the army moved north, was used as a mobile reserve, brigades and regiments being put into the line dismounted, wherever the varying fortunes of battle necessitated support for the hard-pressed infantry.

To follow the fortunes of the 3RD during this period. Daybreak on the 14th September—a wet and misty morning, and difficult to see anything—found our brigade crossing the canal at Villers by a barge bridge alongside the destroyed girder bridge. Then across the Aisne by another R.E.

<sup>1</sup> *The British Campaign in France and Flanders, 1914.* (Hodder & Stoughton.)

bridge, and up a steep winding road to the Tour de Paissy, a farm upon a wide plateau. Here we found ourselves on the right of our 1st Division, and on the left of the 5th French Army, with the 1st Cavalry Brigade in rear of us. Both the 1st Division and the French were heavily engaged, and the fighting continued throughout the day, chiefly in the form of an artillery duel. The position of the brigade was peculiar, being in the midst of the 1st Division artillery and the French batteries ; but fortunately for us the Germans did not appear to have located them. The Regiment spent the night in bivouac at Geny, a small and deserted village on the battle-field, with no water for the horses ; a pouring wet night, and everyone soaked.

The Regiment left its bivouac at 3.45 next morning, picking up supplies in the dark by the roadside, *en route*, and rode to a point just north-east of Paissy. At 7.30 a.m. we were ordered to fill a gap in the firing-line between the left of the Queen's Regiment and the right of the Northamptonshire Regiment, just east of the factory south of Cerny. This factory—a sugar factory, if one remembers aright—had already a sinister reputation. It stood on the equally sinister Chemin des Dames. Severe fighting had been and was still taking place for its possession. British and Germans had held it in turn, and German dead were piled wall high in front of it. When the 3rd arrived the Germans were in possession. "A" Squadron went up into the firing-line, with "C" Squadron in support, on the ridge between Cerny and Paissy, while "B" Squadron remained with the led horses in the hollow behind. The advanced French troops along the Chemin des Dames were on our right. The Regiment remained in these positions throughout the day, and was heavily shelled. In addition to shrapnel, a German howitzer battery gave us our first experience of "Jack Johnsons," or "Coal-boxes," or "Black Marias," Thomas Atkins's names for a high explosive shell fired from 8-in. howitzers which had been brought down from Maubeuge to the help of the Germans on the Aisne. The noise of the explosions was terrific, the column

of dirt thrown up tremendous ; but the damage on soft ground, except for a direct hit, was practically nil, and we soon got used to them ; but the led horses had to be shifted once or twice. At dusk, when all seemed quiet, the squadrons were withdrawn, and the Regiment returned to Geny for the night, all the men and some of the horses being got under cover in caves and barns. Daybreak next day found the brigade again on Paissy plateau, where we spent the day, being shelled at intervals, and not required in the firing-line. Before leaving for Geny at night French troops were arriving on our right—a welcome sight, as the right of the British Army was far advanced and very much in the air.

In heavy rain Paissy plateau saw the brigade again at break of day on the 17th. Here we remained until noon, while the ridge north of us was heavily shelled by a “ coal-box ” battery from the north-west. About noon the French reported that the enemy had recaptured Ailles and were advancing south. A Zouave regiment on our right had suffered considerably, and were showing signs of retiring. The 3RD and a squadron of the Carabiniers were ordered to occupy the trenches with the French. Riding to the wood south of la Vallée-Foulon, “ B ” and “ C ” Squadrons dismounted, while “ A ” Squadron remained with the led horses on the western edge of the wood. During their advance to the trenches both the squadrons were subjected to heavy enfilade shell fire from both east and west. There were also streams of “ ricochets ” coming from the front, and casualties soon began to occur amongst the led horses. It was difficult to believe that the enemy had not an observing station on the ridge to the east as, although our horses were entirely concealed from view, every movement across the high ground to the west at once drew shrapnel fire from the east. The French, however, claimed that this ridge was entirely in their possession. Whilst in the advanced trenches “ B ” and “ C ” Squadrons had no casualties, though shrapnel continued to burst over them, and the trenches themselves were full of dead tirailleurs. Our presence seemed to put new heart into the survivors,



who forthwith began to return. It was said that they were running short of ammunition, which was not to be wondered at, judging by the wild firing at nothing that they continually kept up. The German advance died down, and at 4 p.m. the Regiment was ordered to withdraw and move to Paissey in support of the Queen's. By 6.45 matters were quiet and we withdrew to Geny, with the loss of 1 man and 4 horses killed, and Lieutenant Petherick, 4 men, and 5 horses wounded.

We were back again at the farm by daybreak on the 18th, and at 5 the usual bombardment began. The enemy had brought up another "coal-box" battery, which opened a very accurate fire on the Tour de Paissy, and very soon the farm was in ruins. For the past few days it had been Cavalry Division Headquarters, and several men and horses, both English and French, were killed. The plateau was quickly vacated, and the position of the 4th Cavalry Brigade changed to Paissy. Spies were a pest during the Aisne. For the German officer who, taking his life in his hands, and creeping into the Allied lines with telephone and wire, one could have some respect; but for the Frenchman on his own soil bought with German gold none, and of these it was said there were not a few. The determined destruction of the farm on its being occupied by a headquarters looked like espionage; the weather was too thick for aeroplanes. The Tour de Paissy was of historical interest, as it was the scene of fighting in 1814, when the French were defending themselves against the English and Germans.

A lift of the mist on the plateau gave a fine view of the battle-ground towards Reims, twenty miles away. The course of the French and German lines could be followed by bursting shells. At noon the Regiment was again sent to the support of the Queen's, and at about 7 p.m. returned to Geny. Throughout the day the brigade had been well "coal-boxed," but the only casualties in the 3RD were 1 man wounded and 3 horses killed, while in Geny a couple of big shells killed 2 men and wounded 4, also killing 3 horses and wounding 2.

At 8.30 p.m. orders came to turn out and move up again to the support of the Queen's for the night. Rain was falling in torrents. "The night was extremely dark, and, as our route lay across a difficult bit of country, progress was slow. Eventually we arrived in the valley north of Paissy about 11 p.m., and 'A' and 'C' Squadrons were dismounted and sent up the hill-side, while 'B' Squadron remained to look after the horses. So greasy had the ground become that to climb this short distance took almost an hour (it had taken ten minutes or less two days previously). By this time also the sniping in front was gradually merging into a continuous rifle-fire. We awakened the tired supports of the Queen's and arranged co-operation. The crest in front was once again subjected to continuous shell bombardment. This and the rifle-fire continued for fully two hours, and then once again died down. Not so, however, the rain which poured down all night. At about 4 a.m. the Coldstream Guards came up to relieve the tired-out Queen's, and at 6.50 a.m. the Regiment received orders to return to Geny. A more thoroughly miserable, soaked lot of horses and men could not be seen. The ground where both had stood overnight was inches deep in mud and water; but the rain had now stopped." (War Diary, 1914.)

The Regiment remained in Geny until 6.30 in the evening, and was then ordered to Vauxéré, south of the river. A five-mile march, but we did not arrive at our destination until 10 o'clock, thanks to the congestion of traffic at the bridges. Here we stayed all the 20th, having been relieved by the 2nd Cavalry Brigade.

A Special Order of the Day was issued by Sir John French on the 17th; it ran:

"Once more I have to express my deep appreciation of the splendid behaviour of officers, non-commissioned officers, and men of the Army under my Command throughout the great battle of the Aisne, which has been in progress since the evening of the 12th instant. The battle of the Marne, which lasted from the morning of the 6th to the evening of the 10th, had hardly ended in the precipitate flight of the

enemy when we were brought face to face with a position of extraordinary strength, carefully entrenched and prepared for defence by an Army and Staff which are thorough adepts in such work. Throughout the 13th and 14th that position was most gallantly attacked by the British Forces, and the passage of the Aisne effected. This is the third day the troops have been gallantly holding the position they have gained against the most desperate counter-attacks and a hail of heavy artillery.

"I am unable to find adequate words in which to express the admiration I feel for their magnificent conduct.

"The French on our right and left are making good progress, and I feel sure that we have only to hold on with tenacity to the ground we have won for a very short time longer, when the Allies will be again in full pursuit of a beaten enemy.

"The self-sacrificing devotion and splendid spirit of the British Army in France will carry all before it!"

A couple of extracts from a letter found on a German officer of the 7th Reserve Corps to his parents were encouraging. The letter, dated the 17th September, said:

"The English are marvellously trained in making use of the ground. One never sees them, and one is constantly under fire. If we first beat the English, the French resistance will soon be broken."

Judging by some of the letters found on wounded Germans, the soldiers of the Kaiser were in sad state. They contained such expressions as "Our *moral* was absolutely broken." "In spite of unheard sacrifices we achieved nothing." "Our first battalion is reduced from 1,200 to 194 men." "With English troops we had great difficulties. They have a queer way of causing losses to the enemy. The English people really never wanted war."

During the remainder of the battle of the Aisne, the cavalry were mainly employed as mobile reserve. Our destination in the battle line was generally the village of Paissy, which unfortunate little hamlet was badly served by the German heavy guns. The Regiment used to time

its arrival in Paissy before daylight, and, if no great excitement was on, returned to Vauxéré after dark, the horses and men not actually on duty being hidden in caves during the day.

This form of fighting for horsemen led the Commanding Officer to write to brigade headquarters in the following terms :

“ This employment of cavalry in advanced trenches with infantry raises again the question of cavalry armament. A rifle alone is not sufficient, especially at night, and bayonets should be supplied. Apparently at the present time the cavalry is being used as a mobile reserve, and we may expect often to find ourselves in the trenches. We would be far more effective if we had bayonets.”

It will be remembered that later in the war bayonets were issued to cavalry regiments.

On the 23rd a patrol under Lieutenant Leechman was ordered to keep touch between the right of the 2nd Infantry Brigade and the left of the French infantry on the Chemin des Dames. On the retirement of the Regiment at dark this patrol was instructed to remain in position until relieved by the 2nd Cavalry Brigade. At 7.30 next morning the corporal and four men of the patrol, after relief by a patrol of the 4th Dragoon Guards, reported that the officer left the patrol at 1 a.m. to direct French infantry to some trenches, and that he had not returned, nor could any news of him be obtained. This patrol, in addition to Lieutenant Leechman missing, lost five horses.

It was not until 1915 when a report, dated the 30th March of that year, was received from Germany through the relatives of Lieutenant Leechman, to the following effect :

#### “ REPORT

“ The English Lieutenant Leechman was seen by Corporal Richter (8th Company Regiment 102) with a shot in his back on the 26th September 1914, near Ailles, about 50 metres north of the Chemin des Dames. Leechman was dead.

“ (Signed) VON ZEBHAU.”

Our horses were now beginning to show signs of the continuous hard work and exposure; back ribs were wearing through, and many were brushing, and thirty unfit horses had to be transferred to the Veterinary Section. They had had a hard time of it since landing in France.

Although some of us were inclined to scoff at the "Jack Johnsons," the power of them upon suitable ground was demonstrated when two shells caused forty-seven casualties in the 9th Lancers.

While on the Aisne notification of the first of the war honours to the Regiment was received. Saddler-Corporal W. Townsend and Lance-Corporal G. Davidson were awarded the French Médaille Militaire for gallantry in the field. The latter non-commissioned officer had at Longueuil, on the 31st August, when "A" Squadron was engaged with a superior number of Germans, assisted 2nd Lieutenant Eliot to bring in a wounded man under fire. Earlier the same morning he had done some smart work with a patrol under the same officer, the patrol killing six men and eight horses out of a hostile patrol of ten men.

German aeroplanes annoyed us at times, and were driven off to the tune of our Maxims, while that bugbear, the spy, was always with us. One's diary tells of a spy in the Longueval woods and of the Regiment being turned out at 2 in the afternoon to beat through them dismounted—blank! How the recollection of that plateau of Paissy comes back to one, its historic farm, which knew war in 1814, its vile mud up to our horses' hocks, the brigade in mass trusting to luck to dodge German shells coming from all directions, its glorious view of the French battle-line towards Reims, when fine—not often—and the amusing and tragic incidents enacted upon its surface. Then the village clinging to its western edge! What a spot! And the caves with their dead cattle and horses, an occasional wounded man, living men and horses, and the evil smells; and of a Sunday morning, away in the valley below, the church-bells of Moussy and Chivy ringing out a message of peace amidst the infernal

din of bursting shells, artillery bombardment, and the ceaseless crack of rifle-fire. Message of peace? Perhaps not, but calling the few in the country-side to pray against the German invader.

The following letter, written on the 23rd September by Sir Douglas Haig to our Divisional Commander, was circulated :

“ MY DEAR ALLENBY,

“ I write as G.O.C., 1st Army Corps, to express my very hearty thanks for the valuable help and support which your cavalry brigades have given to my corps since we crossed the Aisne.

“ On Monday, the 14th instant, the promptness with which you sent me two cavalry brigades to Chavonne prevented my left flank from being turned, and saved the situation. Then, for over a week in the same part of our position, a cavalry brigade took its turn in the trenches by night and day. The very ready and thorough manner in which cavalymen of all ranks carried out this most unusual duty for that arm is worthy of the highest praise.

“ The work performed by the cavalry under your personal command in covering my right flank, though generally of a more normal character, was of equal importance, and has been most efficiently carried out. Here, too, at times, squadrons took the place of infantry in the trenches, and by their steadiness under shell-fire showed what a high standard of discipline and self-control has been reached by our cavalry.

“ Want of time prevents me from going into more detail. I can only say what you and your gallant division have done for me and the 1st Army Corps during the past week I shall never forget, and I beg that you will take an early opportunity of expressing our heartfelt thanks to them for the service they rendered us.”

At 4.15 in the afternoon of Sunday the 4th October, orders arrived to march at 6.45 p.m., no destination or route being given.

## PART III

The British Army was on the move, and another phase of the war had begun.

The battle of the Aisne had fought itself to a standstill. The British forces were to resume their place on the left flank of the Allies with a view to outflanking the German line from the north.

With this decision of the Allied Commanders there ensued a race between the hostile armies to Belgium and the sea.

Put shortly, the Allies and the Germans were, firstly, equally contending to outflank each other as they marched north; and, secondly, the enemy had the seizing of the Channel Ports in view. Both armies failed in their attempts to outflank, while the German ambition to acquire the Channel Ports was defeated at the glorious first battle of Ypres.

Some French corps as well as the British moved northwards from the Aisne. The problem of secretly withdrawing the British from their trenches and replacing them with French troops was successfully solved. The first of the British troops to leave was the 2nd Cavalry Division on the 3rd October. Of the corps, the II followed Gough's cavalry, then the III Corps followed, and the I was the last to leave, being preceded by the 1st Cavalry Division. The cavalry went by road, while the corps marched and railed and many of their infantry did the last lap in motor-buses lent by General Foch, who was moving north with a French army. The II Corps was to detrain north of Abbeville, and march on the line Aire-Béthune; the III Corps at St. Omer, and to prolong the line to the north; the two cavalry divisions were to move in advance and clear the country.

To resume our story, the Regiment left Vauxéré at 6.45 on the evening of Sunday the 4th October, and marched via Bazoches-Mont Notre-Dame-Arcy-Rozoy to St. Remy, arriving there at 1.45 a.m. next morning, twenty-one miles. When passing under the picturesque slopes of Mont Notre-

Dame, one saw groups of highlanders in the dim light of the rising moon. "What regiment?" we asked of them. "London Scottish," came the reply. "Great Scott!" "Have they got Territorials out here!" A good road and a bright moon gave us a pleasant though a somewhat cold



YPRES, 1914-1915.

ride. It was only after being an hour or so on the road that we heard of our destination, and also that our marches were to be at night, because of German aeroplanes.

An enforced rest next day was much appreciated by men and horses, the latter being hidden in orchards from the



prying eyes of the German planes, while the men were confined to their billets. The Regiment started at 6 p.m., and a march of twenty-three miles via Villers-Cotterets along good roads, though somewhat congested, brought us to billets in a factory just east of Crepy-en-Valois at 11.30 p.m. *En route* the Composite Regiment was sent back to the I Corps. News arrived of the promotion to Second-Lieutenant in the Regiment of Regimental Sergeant-Major H. Turner, Sergeant Gath and Corporal Barton, all of the 3RD Hussars.

On the 6th sudden orders to march got the Regiment on the move at 12.25 p.m., with our half-cooked dinners, alas, left behind. Our route took us through Néry, a battleground of the Mons Retreat and the Regiment's billets of the night before in Verberie; very glad were the inhabitants to see the English returning. Crossing the Oise, Estreés St. Denis was reached at 5.30 p.m. We had marched fifty miles in twenty-three hours. We marched at 8.45 next morning with "C" Squadron in the advanced guard, and at a pretty hurried pace, for at starting, orders had reached us that the brigade was to be in Mesnil in two hours' time. Riding by way of Ravenal and Maignelay, the brigade stopped at Royaucourt, pending the arrival of information as to the progress of a German attack which was being delivered against the French about Goyencourt and Bouchoir. From this news it was obvious that we were marching behind the battle-line to some position on the Allied left. We also gathered that the French had repulsed an enemy attack last night, but the General in Command, being anxious, had called for assistance, with the result that both the British cavalry divisions had been checked on their march north, and were now assembled in positions of readiness, north-east and east of Montdidier. The 4th Cavalry Brigade moved to a hollow just south of Montdidier and "B" Squadron was sent to reconnoitre Becquigny and Lignières. Both these villages were reported clear, the heavy fire died down, and the brigade was ordered to withdraw at 4 o'clock; the Regiment marched to Ainal,

and comfortable billets were reached at 6.30 p.m. "A girls' school shouted 'Vive l'Angleterre!' to us with great gusto" (from a subaltern's diary).

It was 10 a.m. before the Regiment mounted on the 8th, and, striking the River Noye at Ailly-sur-Noye, a pretty ride along its banks by woodland roads, which some of us were to know well in the last year of the war, brought us by Boves to Amiens. The brigade rode through Amiens to the village of Bertangles, where the regiments billeted and chiefly bivouacked. Another twenty-five-mile march. The 2nd Cavalry Brigade was on our right, the 1st on our left, and the 2nd Cavalry Division a day's march ahead. Another twenty-five miles next day through Villers and Doullens brought us to Frévent, and the Regiment went into billets at Bouret. People in the villages we rode through carried on the old cry of "Vive les Anglais!" and pressed bread and butter and fruit upon us, while the commander of a French ambulance corps, in very broken English, announced that he would "God bless you"! Two French dragoons we also passed, one of them a boy of twelve years, who had joined his father's regiment on war being declared, and had served with it up to date. A short march of some twelve miles next morning, and we reached Magnicourt at 1.30 p.m. No sooner had we arrived than saddle up was the order and stand to; the French, it was understood, had been driven back about Béthune. Not being called upon, billets were occupied at 5.30, and there was found a reinforcement of forty-three men and forty-five horses under Lieutenant Hill of the 7th Hussars. A column of French cavalry with artillery had followed us on the road; their horses, and especially those in the gun teams, looked light.

Let us pause a moment on the threshold of the series of battles which culminated in the great clash of arms at Ypres.

In making clear the story of Ypres we will first give these battles, by their official names and dates:

Battle of La Bassée, began 10th October, ended 2nd November.

Battle of Messines, began 12th October, ended 2nd November.

Battle of Armentières, began 13th October, ended 2nd November.

They led up to the battles of Ypres (19th October to 22nd November) :

Battle of Langemark, began 21st October, ended 24th October.

Battle of Gheluvelt, began 29th October, ended 31st October.

Battle of Nonne Bosschen, 11th November.

The maximum fury of the Germans was spent between the 29th October and the 1st November.

The commencement of these operations was aggressive in its conception. The Allied high command had decided that the British Force should resume its place in the north on the left of the Allied line, whence with the northern group of the French armies under Foch the right of the German line might be turned. The successes of the Russians in the eastern theatre of war would, it was hoped, help the Allied attack. There came, however, the fall of Antwerp, with the consequent release of the investing German forces. Then, too, the weakness of the left of the Allied line was a great opportunity to drive it back and seize the Channel Ports, and enormous German reinforcements began to arrive with that object, with the result that, from being aggressive in its beginning, the story of Ypres became the epic of a defence the heroism of which has never been surpassed.

The II Corps from Abbeville, with the cavalry clearing the country ahead of it, was the first to arrive upon the scene. With its right east of Béthune, the corps wheeled up its left to carry the line north from the 10th French Army, whose left rested south of la Bassée. By the evening of the 11th the 2nd Cavalry Division had connected up the left of the II Corps with the right of the III, which, after detraining at St. Omer, was about Hazebrouck. The III Corps, marching east, seized Bailleul, and eventually prolonged the line

north from the II Corps. The 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions under Allenby had a rôle of their own to play, and the gap between the II and III Corps was now filled by Conneau's French cavalry corps.

Meanwhile the 7th Division and the 3rd Cavalry Division had been landed on the Belgian coast from England too late for the relief of Antwerp, and, after covering the retreat of the Belgians from that fortress, they now stood at bay east of Ypres upon the pursuing Germans. These two divisions came under the orders of Sir John French, and formed the nucleus of the IV Corps.

For the work of the cavalry we will quote the Commander-in-Chief in his "1914":

"By the night of the 11th the Cavalry Corps under Allenby had made good a great deal of ground to the north, and were halting between Wallon-Cappel and Merville. Moving thence on the morning of the 12th, they carried out invaluable work during the subsequent two or three days. Allenby liberally interpreted his orders and made a magnificent sweep to the north and north-east, driving the enemy back all the way.

"Of all the splendid work performed by the cavalry during the war, little can compare (in results achieved) with this advance. It was only surpassed by their immortal stand on the Wytschaete-Messines ridge on those ever-memorable days and nights of October 31st and November 1st.

"By the evening of the 13th Gough, with the 2nd Cavalry Division, had attacked and captured the Mont des Cats position, which was a strategic point of great importance lying six miles north-east of Hazebrouck. There was great opposition by the enemy cavalry, which was supported by jäger and strong infantry detachments; but Gough carried all before him in fine style. The 1st Cavalry Division under de Lisle halted before Merris, after severe fighting which drove the enemy back many miles.

"On the 14th the cavalry made a further great advance, driving the enemy before them, and on the evening reached the line Mont Noir-Boeschepe-Berthen. The position of Mont Noir was vigorously defended by the Germans, but

they were finally driven out by the 2nd Cavalry Division under Gough, who handled his troops with great skill and determination. On the 14th the 1st Cavalry Division reached the area Dranoûtre-Messines and pushed detachments to Warneton. The 2nd Cavalry Division moved to the Kemmel-Wytschaete area, sending detachments to Werwick."

The same day the 2nd Cavalry Division connected up with the 3rd Cavalry Division of the IV Corps in front of Kemmel, which position the two divisions captured and secured.

"The capture of the high ground about Kemmel proved to be of the utmost importance to us throughout the battle of Ypres" ("1914").

On the 16th the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions fought all day to gain the passage of the Lys from Warneton to Commines, but without success. The latter division did gain a footing in Warneton, but was counter-attacked and driven out.

By the 20th it was apparent, from the greater pressure by the enemy, that he was very strongly reinforced and that the aggressive had turned to the defensive. The centre of Allenby's cavalry fell back on Messines, which was heavily shelled. The 3rd Cavalry Division was driven back to the line Zonnebeke-St. Julien-Pilkem by infantry and guns.

On the 21st the I Corps from the Aisne came into line, and on that night the British line from La Bassée on the right to the Yser canal on the left ran as follows :

II Corps on a front of some . . . . .	6 miles
Conneau's Cavalry Corps on a front of some . . . . .	1 "
III Corps and 19th Brigade on a front of some . . . . .	12 "
1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions on a front of some . . . . .	4 "
IV Corps on a front of some . . . . .	6 "
I Corps on a front of some . . . . .	7 "

All the corps were much depleted in numbers—brigades resembled battalions and battalions companies. The II Corps, for instance, had lost some 25,000 men since its arrival

in France. It must be remembered, too, that the IV Corps consisted of but the 7th Division and the 3rd Cavalry Division. Against the British line on this date there were seven strong German corps attacking. The left of the I Corps joined up with French troops—a cavalry corps, territorials, and marines—and the remnants of the Belgian Army on a front of some twenty miles to Nieuport and the sea.

The 2nd Cavalry Division was hard pressed on the 21st. The Lahore Division of the Indian Corps was arriving at Bailleul, and two of its battalions were sent to Wulvergham in support of Allenby's cavalry. On the 22nd the Germans appeared to be massing troops against the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions, and both the II and III Corps were heavily attacked. Desperate fighting all along the line continued during the remaining days of October. On the 24th an Indian infantry brigade took the place of the French cavalry between the II and III Corps, and before the end of the month the II Corps was being gradually relieved by the Indian Corps as they arrived in the north.

Of the closing days of October and the 1st November the British Commander-in-Chief wrote that he regarded the operations carried out by the British troops during those days as more momentous and fateful than any other during his service in the field.

"October 31st and November 1st," he wrote, "will remain for ever memorable in the history of our country, for, during those two days, no more than one thin and straggling line of tired-out British soldiers stood between the Empire and its practical ruin. . . . Right, centre, and left, our men were tried and pressed as troops were never tried and pressed before." ("1914".)

"In the great onslaught made by the enemy on October 31st and November 1st, sufficient recognition has never yet been given to the glorious stand made by the Cavalry Corps under Allenby" ("1914").

The attack of the Germans with greatly superior forces

was waged with the utmost vigour all along the British front from the 29th October to 1st November, but the supreme trial was at its centre—the Wyttschaete-Messines ridge, which was held by the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions. This thin line of dismounted troopers held two and a half German army corps at bay for forty-eight hours with incessant and intense fighting. Hurried to the support of the hard-pressed cavalry were some four battalions, the only possible reinforcements, themselves shattered and worn by previous fighting. Each of these cavalry divisions lost 50 per cent. of its numbers between the thirtieth and first, but, in the words of Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, “Their heroism saved the Army.”<sup>1</sup>

“Had they given way, disaster would have resulted to the entire left wing of the Allied line” (“1914”).

About midday on the 1st November some battalions of French infantry attacked on the left of the 2nd Cavalry Division, checking the enemy's advance. The sorely tried regiments were drawn in to the south of Wyttschaete, and on its left the division was at last in touch with the long-looked-for reinforcements of the XVI French Army Corps.

The German Emperor, waiting in Courtrai for victory and the march of his legions through Ypres, must have pondered angrily on the Contemptible Little Army, in the intervals of dodging and evading the British aeroplane bombs attracted by his Headquarters.

To hark back to the Regiment, which had reached Magnicourt. With the 11th October the more or less peaceful march was drawing to a close. The 3RD was advanced regiment to the brigade that morning, and “B” Squadron had been sent forward at 7 a.m. to Busnes to hold the crossings over the canal d'Aire from Robecq to Guarbecque, communicating with the 2nd Cavalry Brigade at the latter place. The brigade marched by la Comté-Houdain-Divion-Marles to Haut-Rieux, where we were checked by columns of infantry until 2.30. First a French column crossed us, then two of the 5th Division, moving on parallel

<sup>1</sup> *The British Campaign in France and Flanders, 1914.*

roads, and finally two of the 3rd Division doing likewise. We then marched via Busnes to Guarbecque, where we found the 4th Hussars holding the line of the canal, "B" Squadron having been pushed on north to the Canal de la Lys. At 5.40 p.m. the Regiment was ordered to billet in St. Floris, and got in about 6.45. Meanwhile "B" Squadron had rejoined, and had been sent to St. Venant as escort to Cavalry Corps Headquarters. The transport arrived an hour later. A long, tiring day for horses—hilly country, stony roads, with much trotting up and down hills to avoid blocking other columns. About St. Floris there was also billeted a French cavalry brigade, and the language question produced an incident, for early in the night a corporal in charge of a French post came hurrying along to report that his sentry had nearly bayoneted an English soldier who had not answered the challenge. The difficulty was overcome by placing a Cossack post<sup>1</sup> with the French, and between them double sentries were posted who challenged in English and in French. The people in the billets were most hospitable, as they invariably are, and would take no payment for eggs and such-like luxuries beloved by the British soldier. An ancient farm-hand arrived generously drunk in the Headquarters billet, and was put away in the *grenier* by the farmer. He made night hideous, however, by shouting "Vive la France!" "Vive l'Angleterre!" until the early hours. A rumour reached us during the night to the effect that Antwerp had fallen, but that its garrison had escaped. We knew but little about Antwerp, and the news, which was so bitter a blow to the Allied arms, had far less effect upon our slumbers than had the gaiety of the intoxicated Frenchman in the loft.

The Regiment marched at 8 next morning, the 12th, in a thick fog, to join the concentration of the 1st Cavalry Division just north of Merville, where we found a considerable congestion, the 1st Cavalry Brigade and a French cavalry brigade being in front of us. Our rendezvous was reached at 9.40 a.m., but the remainder of the 4th Cavalry Brigade from Haverskerque did not join us until 11 o'clock.

<sup>1</sup> Cossack post—a small cavalry outpost.



The brigade remained in support at the les Lauries cross-roads until 2.30 p.m., while the 1st Cavalry Brigade was engaged with German cavalry just east of Vierhouck. On the way the head of the Regiment was accosted by an old woman, whose plaint was that a party of nineteen German Uhlans had passed her cottage yesterday morning, and demanded whether she had seen any English or French, and that, as they rode away, one of them, a big fair man, had shot at her with a revolver ; luckily he had missed her, but she begged that her description of the *assassin* might be remembered.

At 2.30 we moved to Vert Rue on the eastern edge of the Forêt de Nieppe, where the brigade remained until 6.15 p.m., ready to fill any gap which might occur between the French cavalry about Merville and our 1st Cavalry Brigade, which was now working north. French batteries were in action beside us, and Vieux Berquin, just in front of us, was being steadily shelled by Germans from the direction of Sailly. At 6.30 a ride through the forest brought us to billets at Morbecque.

To check a moment in our narrative. It will be remembered that the 2nd Cavalry Division was formed on the eve of the battle of the Marne. It was formed of the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades under the command of Brigadier-General Hubert Gough. The 4th Cavalry Brigade and "J" Battery, R.H.A., were now transferred to it from the 1st Cavalry Division, and ordered to join on the 13th October. The 1st Cavalry Division was placed under Brigadier-General de Lisle, and the two divisions formed the Cavalry Corps under Major-General Allenby.

To continue. The brigade marched at 6.30 a.m., and joined its new division at Borre at 8 o'clock, having been delayed for half an hour in Hazebrouck by French motor-lorries conveying troops of the British 4th Division. A long and uncomfortable halt ensued. The narrow road from Hazebrouck to Borre and Pradelles was in a state of congestion with halted cavalry and guns and the brigades of the 6th Division marching east. It was noon before we moved.



FLËTTE, OCTOBER 1914



Trotting through the village of Flêtre, the 10th Brigade, 4th Division, was found preparing to attack the Germans in position on the heights north of Meteren; old friends who with their brigadier, Haldane, had been our comrades of the Shorncliffe garrison. The 1st Battalion Royal Irish Fusiliers were drawn up in line in the village street as we trotted past them. No more stirring sight than that thin line of British infantrymen about to attack. Not their thousand bayonets, as we had known them, but sadly depleted, and many faces known in the Shorncliffe Drag missing from amongst their officers. Typical of the British soldier, they stood at ease, leaning upon bayoneted rifles, a line of determined men; but not so determined as to hinder a jest or a call of recognition as a friend was seen. The pomp of war! Also, the pity of it! A boy of eighteen, obviously a newly joined officer from Sandhurst, stands in front of his platoon in the evident charge of a veteran sergeant. The advance of the brigade was rapid and irresistible. To the cry of "Faugh-a-Ballagh!" as in days of old, the Irish Fusiliers swept the German trenches, and Bailleul was in the hands of the III Corps.

Meanwhile, in heavy rain, the 2nd Cavalry Division continued north, covering the left of the III Corps. Gough's brigades swept over the picturesque Mont des Cats, rising abruptly from its lower surroundings and crowned by its quaint monastery, amongst the cloisters of which the 4th Hussars had some fighting, among the German killed being Prince Max of Hesse. From le Coq de Pailles on the slopes of Mont des Cats the Regiment rode to Eecke to billet.

The early morning of the 14th found the Regiment and the brigade marching to Godewaersvelde, with the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades on our right, thence over the heights south of Boeschepe and once again across the Belgian frontier to the four cross-roads west of Reninghelst. How many times were some of us to cross and recross the Belgian frontier before the end! We were now in touch with the 3rd Cavalry Division, who with the 7th Division had lately landed in the north for the relief of Antwerp—forestalled in

that, by the tide of war, they had come under the orders of Sir John French. The brigade marched at 4 p.m. via Westoutre and Scherpenberg to the hamlet of la Clytte, where the night was spent, and where Lieutenant Turner joined with a reinforcement of fifty-three horses and men. Moving to Kemmel village next morning, a more easy day for the horses was spent, with patrols in touch with Germans ; the 3rd and 1st Cavalry Divisions on the left and right of the 2nd. At 5 in the evening we retired to our last night's billets in la Clytte.

A thick mist greeted the Regiment as it saddled up on the morning of the 16th, and 8 o'clock found us marching via Kemmel, Lindenhoeck, and Wulverghem to a point about half a mile east of that place on the road to Messines. The division was ordered to gain the passage of the river Lys, but the thick mist throughout the day proved too much for us. The 16th Lancers did get into Warneton, but had to retire. A touch of comedy in the shape of a warning that Germans dressed in women's skirts were approaching our posts masquerading as Highlanders enlivened an otherwise irritating day, which had, however, established the fact that the enemy was in force on the line of the Lys.

Although saddled up at 7.30, the Regiment did not leave Kemmel until 10 a.m. on the 17th, and, marching via Messines to Gapaard, relieved the 4th Hussars and some of the 12th Lancers holding this portion of the front of the 2nd Cavalry Division. Snipers were busy as we arrived, and two horses were hit. The front was divided between two squadrons, "B" on the right and "A" on the left, while the main road in the centre from Gapaard to Warneton was allotted to two troops of "C" Squadron and the machine-gun section. Headquarters were at Gapaard. The right squadron was at a farm almost immediately to the south, and the left squadron at Garde Dieu. "C" Squadron (less two troops) was in support and posted at a farm about a third of a mile north-west of Gapaard in the valley of the Wambeek. The line to be held by the Regiment extended over a front of just about two miles,

slightly south of the Messines-Garde Dieu road, and facing south-east. This road ran along the summit of a ridge, the ground on either side falling gradually. Warneton was held by the enemy, and its northern outskirts were distant just three-quarters of a mile from the Gapaard cross-roads. There were numerous high trees to the south of the road, also several farms of varying sizes, and many cottages. At both Gapaard and Garde Dieu also there were several small farms and houses on either side of the roads running north and south.

About noon, when the squadron on the right was just getting into position, an attack began to develop from the direction of Warneton towards Gapaard; "J" Battery, R.H.A., which had followed the Regiment out, quickly came into action in the valley just north-east of Gapaard, and the threatened attack soon died away. The machine-gun section also came into action near the cross-roads south of Gapaard. The advanced troop on the Warneton road, Lieutenant Bell's, got into position by creeping along the ditch on the side of the road, and settled themselves in a small shallow trench on one side of the road, and behind a bank on the other. Machine-gun fire was turned on the troop, and Maxims as they moved down to their position; but it was high, and no damage was done. There was a good field of fire towards Warneton, and, sending back for spades, the men dug themselves into the bank. A mill a couple of hundred yards in front of the line was occupied by a Cossack post during the day. At night the troop was withdrawn to the inn at the cross-roads.

Meanwhile, the left troop of the left squadron had been pushed out to reconnoitre and gain touch with the brigade on the left, supposed to be holding the canal and railway crossing about half a mile north-west of Commines station. The advanced point of the troop and the officer, Lieutenant Eliot, crossed the canal bridge to the cover of a farm, and signalled for the troop to close up. As soon as the troop was well on the bridge a German machine gun opened on it from a house near the station. Two horses were killed

on the bridge, and blocked it. Those on its western side managed to retire to cover, but the officer and the men with him had to cross back elsewhere as best they could. Touch with the 5th Cavalry Brigade was subsequently obtained farther north. The troop finally took up a position on the road just west of the Kortekeer Beek. All the advanced troops proceeded to entrench themselves with whatever implements they could find in their vicinity. The transport was sent out from Messines in the evening, and supply lorries came out from the same place during the night.

The following message from the left squadron at 2.22 p.m. gave the situation on the flank :

“ To 3RD Hussars. Gapaard.

“ D.P.I. Seventeenth.

“ German Maxims opened on Eliot's troop at farm on canal N.W. of station. He has rejoined at Garde Dieu, leaving two horses killed. AAA. Hill's troop is entrenching at fork-road N. of last E in Kortekeer. AAA. Cahusac is entrenching among buildings S. of K in Kortekeer. He reports that his patrols advancing beyond the cross-roads immediately S. of him were fired on. AAA. Taylor's troop is entrenched at first bend of road leading S. from here. He watches the ground to his right front, and is in communication with Bell's troop of “ C ” Squadron on Gapaard-Warneton road. AAA. Eliot reports a post of German 2nd Dragoons at bridge by L. of canal, S. of Houthem, and that the German machine gun is in a church tower near Commines station. AAA.

“ From ‘ A ’ Squadron. 3RD Hussars.

“ Garde Dieu.

“ 2.22 p.m.

“ (Signed) F. J. DU PRE, *Captain.*”

A quiet night followed, with the usual sniping on the outposts, and at 5.30 a.m. the 18th, “ J ” Battery, which had been withdrawn to the north of Messines for the night, sent a section of guns up, the remainder of the battery arriving about two hours later. Advanced posts drawn in for the night were out again by daylight. German snipers on the

look out for movement were busy, and they so annoyed the Warneton road troop, who could not place them, that the energetic troop commander climbed a tree for a better outlook, but he very soon slid down the trunk with the observation that he was not a ruddy rook !

At 8.30 a.m. the Regiment was ordered to advance on either side of Warneton, avoiding the outskirts of the town, and to establish itself along the main Warneton-Comines road and railway. To help this attack "J" Battery commenced shelling the houses in front which had been marked down as containing snipers and machine guns. In one such house close to the level crossing on the south-west edge of Warneton there was a machine gun which swept the ground to be crossed by the right squadron in its advance. Casualties occurred at once, and the wounded could not be reached. One or two managed to crawl back, but some had to remain where they fell till dark. The squadron on the left meanwhile reached its appointed position and reconnoitred the German trenches on the right bank of the Lys. About 4 p.m. a German howitzer battery, firing high explosive shell, which had been searching the ground north of Warneton for an hour or so previous, began to drop shells all about the farm just south-east of Gapaard cross-roads, where a lot of horses were concealed. These were quickly led back farther north without damage.

At 5 p.m. the Regiment was ordered to hold the advanced line now occupied for the night. At about the same hour the left squadron had been heavily shelled and had retired about half a mile to a parallel road lined with cottages. It was, therefore, decided to hold this line instead. The position was not a good one. There was much cover for the enemy's advance close in front, especially from the houses along the roads leading from Bas Warneton and Warneton—in the case of the latter especially it was quite possible for the enemy to emerge suddenly at close range in any direction. Again desperate efforts were made to collect tools, dig in, loophole walls, etc. At 5.45 p.m. some sixty German infantry from Bas Warneton approached the level crossing

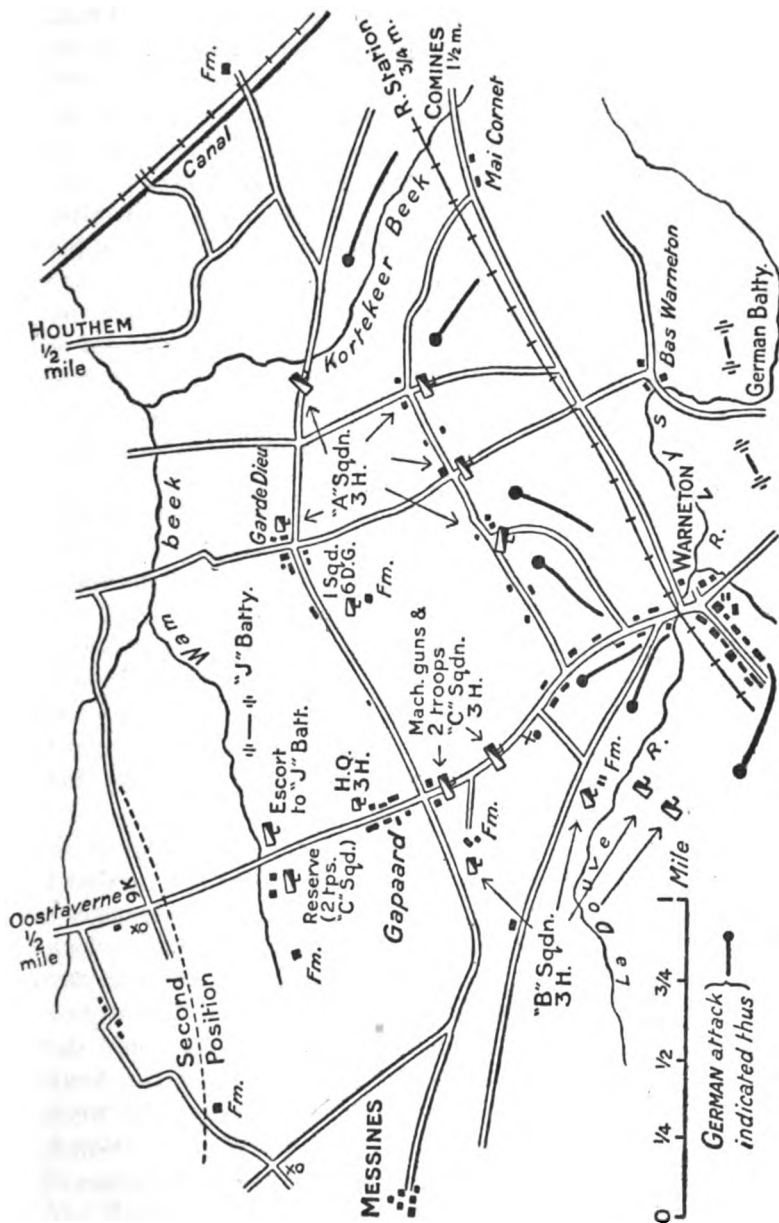


north of that village in close formation and were driven back with considerable losses by the "A" Squadron post on the level crossing.

Another quiet night given up to the amusement of the opposing snipers. "J" Battery, with an escort of a squadron of the Carabiniers, arrived at 7 a.m. on the 19th, and took up its former position. The Composite Regiment of Household Cavalry, left behind on the Aisne, had now rejoined the brigade and took over the ground on the right of "B" Squadron which had been held by the 5th Lancers of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade. That brigade relieved the 5th Cavalry Brigade on our left. About 2 p.m. an enemy howitzer battery south of Warneton began to search along the Gapaard road, and for half an hour from 5 p.m. they concentrated on our centre advanced post and plastered the troop of "C" Squadron and the machine guns with high explosive shells, killing a man and wounding seven others. In the late evening some two hundred German infantry came under the rifle-fire of "A" Squadron, who claimed to have accounted for a good number.

From the early hours of the 20th the enemy in our front showed signs of activity, and shots were exchanged with snipers who had come more forward. At about 10 a.m. the right troop of the left squadron (sketch-map) was heavily attacked by infantry, and both the posts which it supplied had to retire on Garde Dieu. Almost simultaneously a heavy attack began to be made from Warneton against the right squadron (sketch-map). Soon the whole front of the Regiment was engaged. A German battery opened, and "J" Battery and another Royal Horse Artillery battery nearer Messines, both firing indirect, came into action.

There were soon calls for assistance from both flanks, and the two reserve troops were sent from the centre to "B" Squadron on the right, while a squadron of the Carabiniers which had arrived in support was sent to the left centre. There only remained now one squadron of Carabiniers which was escort to "J" Battery. Gapaard was heavily shelled, and the horses there had to be led to



ACTION OF WARNETON.

the valley of the Wambeek north of the village. Crash through the roof of the village inn came a high explosive shell, and out through its door, "*pouff!*" came Monsieur le Capitaine, the French interpreter, hurried somewhat by another immediate crash in the inn yard. Garde Dieu, too, was heavily shelled throughout the day. The position, with desperate fighting everywhere, was held on until after 4 o'clock in the afternoon, when it became clear that the Regiment must retire. The dogged determination of the men, heavily shelled throughout the day, and exposed, by nature of the small isolated posts (unavoidable because of the few in numbers and the extended front), to enfilade rifle-fire everywhere, was of no avail. There was no haste, however; the squadrons held, and, disputing foot by foot every yard of ground, did the dismounted hussars fall back to their horses. An officer had been sent to select the next position to retire upon. To the Oosttaverne Ridge the battery and its escorting squadron fell back. Messages were sent to the flank squadrons to retire on the ridge, and the centre and Headquarters slowly withdrew. The retirement was carried out in capital order, and, on the centre squadron reaching the ninth kilometre stone on the road crossing the ridge, it was found that the 5th Cavalry Brigade had been brought up, and was hastily entrenching the position.

The Regiment was then collected north of the ridge, with the exception of "B" Squadron, which had been ordered by General Gough, who had arrived upon the scene, to occupy the farm in the valley just north-west of Gapaard, which was on its line of retirement. The attack against the centre towards Gapaard was never much pressed, the enemy holding the centre and doing his utmost to get round our flank squadrons. For some seven hours the three weak squadrons of the 3rd, supported by the one equally weak squadron of Carabiniers, had held off a determined attack by what was estimated at the time to be three battalions of German infantry. The brunt of the infantry attack had been faced by "A" and "B" Squadrons on the flanks.

The two troops on the extreme left of "A" Squadron on the left were attacked in strength from the direction of Comines. Lieutenant Hill, 7th Hussars, in command of one of these troops, was severely wounded and gallantly removed under shrapnel and rifle fire by a captain of the R.A.M.C. and an orderly, who came up with an ambulance from the 3rd Cavalry Brigade. Lieutenant Taylor then took command of both troops, inflicted considerable loss on the enemy, and eventually, being cut off from Garde Dieu, brought them both safely out of action, rejoining the Regiment south of Oosttaverne.

The whole of the 5th Cavalry Brigade was now up and hard at work entrenching astride the Gapaard Oosttaverne road—in touch with the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, which had also been attacked and driven back on our left. At about 6.15 p.m. the Regiment was ordered to extend this line of trenches from the position occupied by the Carabiniers half a mile west of the 9th kilo stone towards Messines, until touch was obtained with the Composite Regiment in that direction. This was a most hazardous but necessary movement. It was already quite dark, and the locality was within a mile of the line reached by the enemy some two hours previously. Further, there was no certainty that the Composite Regiment had retired by the eastern side of Messines. After successfully hitting off the flank of the Carabiniers and recalling "B" Squadron by a ride across country in the dark, the advance was continued by compass bearing towards Messines. Roads shown on the map did not exist, but, after stumbling along through heavy mud for another hour, a farm was reached near a windmill, where the Composite Regiment's left should certainly have rested. The farm was at once occupied, pickets thrown out, and horses concealed behind the buildings, while reconnaissance, was pushed farther forward to gain touch with the Composite Regiment, but unsuccessfully. It was now about 8.30 p.m., and, just as the reconnaissance party returned, a squadron of the Composite Regiment was met, having come up from the rear of the Regiment. The line was now com-

plete again. Horses were kept "saddled up" all night, and the Regiment ready to turn out at the shortest notice. There was no possibility of receiving supplies, but fortunately oats in abundance were found in both the farms we occupied. After all these years how that short ride comes back to one ! A pitch-dark night ; the Colonel, with a candle-lantern which kept blowing out under his cloak, escorted by two men leading his horse, intent himself upon his compass bearing, the head of the Regiment riding some five or ten yards behind him, horses stumbling along, mud up to their hocks, in half-sections, and every man knowing that two hours since the Regiment had disengaged with a strong line of German infantry a short mile away on their left. In spite of the heavy fighting, our casualties were light during the day. Two men killed ; Major Combe, Lieutenants Baynes, Eastwood, Huggins, and Hill, with sixteen men, wounded ; two men missing. No casualties amongst the horses. Major Combe, commanding the right squadron, was knocked over by a shell early in the fight and severely wounded in the neck and cheek, yet he most pluckily continued his command and brought his squadron safely back. When ordered off his horse at 5 p.m. he was barely able to retain his seat in the saddle.

For the 21st we quote from officers' diaries, the digest of which would run : An uncomfortable and wet night, but no excitement. I walked round my post half a dozen times. In the evening we started cutting down some fences for wire entanglements, when a lot of shrapnel came buzzing about us. Also rifle-fire, and the support troops were called up. Bullets were flying about all over the place. It did not appear to be a night attack, but someone probably got the needle, and thought they saw something, and started loosing off, then gradually everyone took it up in sympathy ; as a matter of fact, our men hardly fired at all. From the *War Diary* : Moved out at 5 a.m. and commenced advance on foot to suitable fire positions, while gaps in line to left were occupied. As implements were discovered in farms trenches were constructed. Shots were exchanged more or

less continuously, and the front kept under a constant German shrapnel-fire, but no attack was made. Supplies came up in rear about midday and were brought up by hand to the troops in front. On the 22nd the *War Diary* writes : A good deal of firing took place during the night and early hours of the morning, especially just as a dismounted reconnaissance had been ordered to push out to the front. Occasional shrapnel and continuous sniping continued throughout the day. At 5 p.m. a double company of the 57th, Wilde's Rifles of the Indian Corps, took over the portion of the line held by the Regiment, and we retired to billets in Wytschaete, which were reached at 7 p.m. Transport already in, having been sent up from Kemmel. At 9 p.m. the Regiment was warned to be ready to occupy a position just east of the Wytschaete-Ypres road, which had been worked at by Belgians and Indian infantry during the day. This order was the result of a messenger coming to report that the 5th Cavalry Brigade line had been pierced by the enemy. As the locality was quite unknown to anyone in the Regiment—we having arrived in the dark—it was necessary to reconnoitre forthwith the approaches to the trenches by the light of a lantern. Squadrons were warned to remain ready for instant action, and the reconnaissance was completed shortly after midnight. The messenger's report was subsequently discovered to be quite devoid of foundation, but the Regiment was not told so until the next day. While in the trenches occasional civilians approached our posts, but were not allowed through, and were sent back. We heard of a great Russian victory over the Germans somewhere in the east.

At 4 a.m. on the 23rd a warning order was received that the 3RD was to be ready to move any time after 5 a.m., so the Regiment turned out at 5 o'clock and remained in a state of constant readiness throughout the day, but without being required. The horses had to be shifted farther west about 1 o'clock as a series of shrapnel burst over Wytschaete. At 4 p.m. the Regiment rode out to relieve the Carabiniers in the trenches west of our late line. The horses were sent

back to Wytschaete with one man to every three horses. The relief was carried out without being observed by the enemy. Some firing during the night, and a misty morning. The troops in reserve were employed in constructing trenches for supports and reserves, and a rear position. There was a great difficulty in raising the necessary tools, and eventually we had to borrow picks and spades from Wilde's Rifles. Rain began at 7 p.m., and soon there was a deluge. While in Wytschaete some officers got lodging in the convent. "We gave the old nuns some money for their poor people," wrote a subaltern, "before we left, and they were very pleased." The same young officer had his meals "in a nice little pub" adjacent to the convent. "There was a funny old *patron* here, who each time the shelling started, got up a cart and began to load up his beer to be taken away. When it stopped back came the beer again."

The following message reached the Regiment :

"The Field-Marshal Commanding in Chief wishes once more to make known to the troops under his command how deeply he appreciates the bravery and endurance which they have again displayed since their arrival in the northern theatre. In circulating the official information which records the splendid victories of our Russian allies, he would remind the troops that the enemy must, before very long, withdraw troops to the east, and so relieve the tension on our front.

"He feels it is quite unnecessary to urge officers, non-commissioned officers, and men to make a determined effort to drive the enemy over the frontier.

"Please circulate to troops."

A beastly wet night for those in the trenches, and the enemy gave no trouble. Throughout the whole of the night and during the day (26th) the attack of the I Corps to the north could be plainly heard drawing nearer. Arrangements were made for an attack by the Indian infantry to be delivered through our front at 3 p.m. ; but, just as it was launched, the operation was stopped. The leading

companies, had, however, gone on out of touch, and were not got back until late at night. To co-operate in the attack all the troops of the 3RD were brought up to the advanced and supporting trenches. The infantry advance was made from the north, and was, therefore, plainly visible to the enemy, who shelled the Connaught Rangers as soon as they showed themselves in the rear of our trenches. Incidentally, it transpired that the battalion had not been informed that there were any trenches, nor that there were any men occupying them, or of a covered line of approach, and that the position of the enemy's trenches could have been pointed out. The Regiment had now been in the trenches day and night for eight days out of the last ten, and the constant strain was beginning to tell on officers and men. With four troops always in the firing line and four more in support, it was not possible to arrange to have one squadron at a time in reserve, for by that means only one squadron could be relieved each day, and not the two in front. While employed on this duty, therefore, the third squadron was broken up and two of its troops allotted to each of the two squadrons in front. There were thus six troops with each squadron, and these provided two troops in the firing line, with two in support and two in reserve resting. Reliefs carried out every twelve hours gave all troop officers and men twelve hours out of every thirty-six in the front trenches, and nobody performed that duty on two consecutive nights. This arrangement was brought into vogue on the 27th. A quiet night, though the Greys on our left were shooting a bit. At 12.30 p.m. (27th) a German battery opened a heavy shell-fire on our trenches from some position in the close vicinity of Garde Dieu, which continued throughout the afternoon. Several shells struck the farm buildings in the centre of our line and set some barns ablaze. A couple of shells came through the roof of a barn in which a support troop were asleep, but not a man was touched. A reinforcement of 1 sergeant, 25 men, and 26 horses joined the led horses in Wytschaete. An unfortunate little girl of some nine years of age was killed by a shell on the Wytschaete



road. It appears that yesterday a leading company of Indians reached an outpost of the German line, and captured an officer and two men, the remainder of the garrison running away. The officer is said to have explained that the Indians had a greater reputation for cutting throats than for taking prisoners, and his men had bolted when they saw an Indian attack approaching! The next day, as the Regiment was being relieved by Wilde's Rifles about 5 p.m., a German howitzer battery opened on us. A shell bursting low over a trench on the left of our line looked like knocking out a whole troop, but only wounded three men. The relief was accomplished by 5.45 p.m., the men retiring on foot to join the horses about a mile north-west of Wytschaete down the Groote Vierstraat road. Just before entering Wytschaete the same German battery from near Garde Dieu shelled the town, killing a nun and wounding other non-combatants. All shelter was crowded with refugee Belgians, but a little cover was found for the men, who were well able to rest after ten days of strenuous life in the trenches. Ten days out of twelve continuously on the alert day in, day out.

From shortly after midnight until 5 a.m. on the 29th the sounds of heavy fighting by the I Corps could be very plainly heard about Zandvoorde, and at 11 a.m. the Regiment received orders to be ready to move at half an hour's notice. Horses had been concealed in neighbouring woods since daylight to avoid detection by the enemy's aeroplanes, two of which had passed over about 7.30. Transport wagons sent up from Kemmel overnight were also so concealed, and tobacco, cigarettes, warm clothes and other comforts sent out from home for the Regiment were distributed.

With the 30th of October began the "Epic of the North."

To check for a moment in our narrative. The main German attack on the 30th October was directed against the British line east of Ypres from near the Ypres-Menin road south to Messines. The enemy launched two corps and an infantry

division against this front, which was held by the 7th Division and three cavalry divisions. The German Reserve Corps (4th Army) was north of the Ypres-Menin road: their XV Corps attacked between that road at Gheluvelt and the canal; the II Bav. Corps and the 26th Infantry Division attacked between the canal and Messines. In defence stood the British 7th Division and the 3rd Cavalry Division from Ypres-Menin road to the canal, and the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions from the canal to Messines.

The 3rd Cavalry Division at Zandvoorde was the first to meet the main effort of the storm, and especially so the brigade of the Life Guards and the Blues, a couple of squadrons of whom were practically buried by shell-fire. The Commander of the 2nd Cavalry Division withdrew a regiment from each of his brigades—the Scots Greys, 3rd Hussars, and 4th Hussars—and sent them to the help of Byng's division. The line was driven back a short distance, but the attack was held at Klein Zillebeke.

It was now the turn of the 2nd Cavalry Division to meet an overwhelming onslaught, and Gough, finding himself very hard pressed, had to recall his three regiments, and he was further helped by Douglas Haig, who sent him in his dire need the London Scottish, the battalion having joined the I Corps the day before, the only reinforcement which Sir John French had left. During the night the Commander-in-Chief ordered up the 9th Brigade from the 3rd Division of the II Corps to support the cavalry.

Meanwhile, the 1st Cavalry Division at Messines had been also very heavily engaged, and had held the German attacks.

Wanting the pen of the ready writer, it is difficult to tell the story. During the two days and two nights of that tempest of mad fury which commenced on the thirtieth people lost all thought of everything but that each hour brought carnage and death, and that each minute was pregnant with action. One's own area in the bloody fighting was the only care; that and the determination to hold the line and check the Germans.

A German account of this battle (*Ypres*, 1914, an official account published by order of the German General Staff) says :

“ The left wing of the Corps (2nd Bavarian Corps) pushed forward as far as the Wambeke stream, north of the village of the same name ; but had here to put in all its reserves to hold its ground against strong hostile counter-attacks.”

A more true account would be that a strong hostile counter-attack was impossible, and that the very thin line of the 2nd Cavalry Division was forced to a position nearer Wytschaete !

To resume the narrative. It was 12.30 a.m. on the 30th that orders arrived for the Regiment to be at Klein Zillebeke at 8 a.m., and with one other regiment from each of the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades to form a reserve to the 3rd Cavalry Division (Major-General Byng), the senior lieutenant-colonel to command. The Scots Greys and 4th Hussars were the other two regiments of this reserve, and Lieutenant-Colonel Bulkely Johnson of the Greys, as senior, took command. The bridge over the canal had been destroyed, and we crossed by a very doubtful bank. On arriving at the rendezvous we found the Germans attacking heavily, and they had driven the troops of the 3rd Cavalry Division from Zandvoorde and had occupied that place.

At 10.30 a.m. the Regiment was sent to the north-east to co-operate in a counter-attack to be made by troops of the I Corps against Zandvoorde. The horses were left some distance in rear and the Regiment advanced on foot, and eventually occupied the southern edge of the wood just west of Zandvoorde. “ B ” and “ C ” Squadrons were in front line and “ A ” Squadron in support. This wood had been vacated by the 3rd Cavalry Division, but its reoccupation was essential for the protection of the batteries in action just north of the wood near a farm. During the advance to this position the Regiment was subjected to heavy shell-fire, and subsequently, while holding the wood, an extremely heavy fire from howitzer batteries with high

explosive shell, also heavy howitzers and field guns was continually maintained, especially over the wood. The only protection against this fire were some indifferent trenches south of the wood and a sunken road to the west of it. Our advance to the wood had been made in close touch with the right of the infantry counter-attack; but, as this attack was not pushed beyond the point where the Basseville brook crossed the main road, the position taken up by the Regiment was considerably in advance of the line. However, despite the shell-fire, the Regiment maintained its position until 4 p.m., and prevented the enemy gaining the wood. But by this hour the Germans, who had been working round our right flank in considerable numbers, also managed to obtain a hold on some buildings adjoining the edge of the wood on the south-west side. Two squadrons of the Scots Greys were now sent up, and these occupied some trenches south of the main Zandvoorde road, and just east of the branch road leading south from Klein Zillebeke. The Regiment then retired to a position north of the main road in line with the trenches held by the Greys. There were also a few indifferent trenches here, and only sufficient for one squadron. At about 5 p.m. the Irish Guards arrived and took over the position, just after the advanced squadrons of the Regiment had fallen back to it.

Turning over the pages of an old diary one reads :

“ On arriving at Klein Zillebeke I was told to attach myself to Bulkely Johnson, and immediately had to take a message to Sir Douglas Haig at the I Corps Headquarters about a mile east of Ypres, and inform him of the arrival of the three regiments. As I rode up to the château the general was pacing up and down the verandah, and I saw the most undisturbed looking general of all the generals I had seen during the last few days. I have been told since that I was wrong, but I would swear that I saw a pipe in his mouth; however, those who should know say he has never smoked a pipe in his life. “ Here’s word from the cavalry,” he said as I walked up the steps, “ Go in and tell ——” (his chief of staff), and pointing to the door. I was told to tell

Bulkely Johnson that if an expected attack by German infantry developed against Byng's cavalry holding Zandvoorde, he was to attack the German left from the southwest. I rode back, and the Greys and 4th Hussars were ordered to attack from Hollebeke château, the 3RD Hussars being kept in reserve near Klein Zillebeke. This information I had to take back at once to Sir Douglas Haig. Heavy fighting was going on at Zandvoorde as I left. On my return I found that the cavalry had been forced back from Zandvoorde, and that the 3RD Hussars had gone into the firing line. The Greys were recalled from the flank attack, and went into the firing line on the right of the 3RD Hussars. By midday a very severe struggle was raging between Zandvoorde and Klein Zillebeke, but for the rest of the day the cavalry held the German infantry, who, in spite of the awful shelling which supported them, could make no headway against us. The German shelling was tremendous; their 'Black Marias' were falling as far back as Zillebeke, while Klein Zillebeke and its inn, which was the headquarters of the cavalry brigades, was a tornado of bursting shells, and many casualties occurred there. It was a most interesting spot, that inn. To it came Allenby, the Cavalry Corps Commander, Byng of the 3rd Cavalry Division, and staff officers of the Army and the I Corps, and behind it on the railway line an armoured car—sailors, they said, but I don't know, popping off a smallish gun gallantly but one imagines most ineffectually against the masses of German howitzers. A dressing station had been formed near the inn, and to it streamed, or were carried, a continuous flow of wounded, while not two hundred yards from the pub someone had reverently covered the appalling remains of a motor-cyclist despatch rider, who had met a German shell, with a sack."

Meanwhile the regiments of cavalry, woefully weak in numbers, struggled and held the hordes of German infantry a few hundreds of yards in front. Famous regiments, yet more famous now. Regiments which had fought on this same soil with Marlborough in days of old, and on foot as they were doing now—history repeats itself. The 3RD's horses were well placed in a wood, and not one was lost.

An officer of "C" Squadron wrote :

"Leaving our horses near Klein Zillebeke, we went to our position on foot. 'B' Squadron was on our right, and the Gordon Highlanders on our left. Soon after we got into position the shells began to arrive. At first they burst just beyond us, but very soon they got our range and gave us hell. The German gunners fired devilish well, and burst their shrapnel all along our line. We eventually got an order to retire, and went back to a wood some three-quarters of a mile farther back; the Gordons had gone half an hour before. We took our wounded with us, except those who were so badly wounded that they required stretchers, for we had none; Gath, amongst others, had to be left behind. Later on we were relieved by the Irish Guards, and during the walk back to the led horses we passed a gun team which had been knocked out by a 'Black Maria,' a gruesome sight—I saw half a horse stuck up in a tree."

The order to retire never reached Lieutenant the Hon. Donald Howard's troop of "C" Squadron, which was in action at the farm just north of the main Zandvoorde road. The troop was eventually forced to retire under very heavy shell-fire to the edge of the woods north of the farm. During its retirement the troop was joined by a few Gordon Highlanders. One of the highlanders was badly hit, and Corporal Bennett of the 3RD hoisted the wounded man on his back and carried him to safety. For his gallantry the corporal was awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal. Lieutenant Howard then led his troop forward again in a south-westerly direction, and eventually rejoined his squadron in the woods north-east of Klein Zillebeke.

Our casualties while holding the wood and while retiring were almost entirely caused by shell-fire, and were heavy. Lieutenant Gath and three men were killed. Major Clinch, Captains Dobie and Cross, Lieutenants Eliot and Barton, and 27 non-commissioned officers and men were wounded. Twenty-one men were missing, of whom 7 were known to have been wounded. A total of 57, about 50 per cent. of the men in the firing line.

The behaviour of the men under the heavy bombardment was beyond praise. They undoubtedly checked the German attack against them, and they inflicted more loss than they sustained, by their rifle-fire. The absence of entrenching tools was a severe handicap to them.

On being relieved by the Irish Guards the Regiment was ordered to rejoin the 2nd Cavalry Division, and, marching via St. Eloi in rear of the Greys, eventually reached Wytschaete about 8 p.m. On the way we passed the London Scottish getting out of motor-buses—old friends, those buses, for they brought a breath of home to those of us who hailed from London, with their familiar signs of “Bank,” “Oxford Circus,” etc. On our arrival at Wytschaete all the horses were sent back to Kemmel, and the Regiment lay down in a farm ready for emergencies. During our absence the brigade had also been attacked and was now holding another position just east of the Wytschaete-Messines road, on the Ridge which the morrow was to make famous for all time, for it was to see the crisis of the battle of Ypres, and possibly of the Western campaign.

The German attack on the 31st October and 1st November was over the same area and was carried out by the XXVIII Corps north of the Ypres-Menin road, the XV Corps between Gheluvelt on that road and the canal: the II Bav. Corps, 6th Bav. Reserve Division, and 26th Infantry Division between the canal and Messines, while south of the latter place was the Army Cavalry. Against this onslaught—at the Menin road stood the 7th Division and then the 3rd Cavalry Division north of the canal: south of the canal to Messines were the 2nd and 1st Cavalry Divisions.

During the night of the 30th and 31st the 1st Cavalry Division in Messines was hard pressed, and the Germans occupied a portion of the town. The 3rd moved from their billets about 7 o'clock on the morning of the 31st, and waited along a hedge behind the brigade, and just west of Wytschaete. At 9.30 a.m. large masses of enemy infantry were reported to be advancing against the 2nd Cavalry Division between Oosttaverne and the Roozebeek

stream, and long German columns were between the former place and St. Eloi. At 10 a.m. the Regiment was ordered to support the London Scottish in a counter-attack directed on the windmill on the ridge and just north-east of Messines. The enemy at this time was bombarding the Wytschaete-Messines road and the former village with howitzers of heavy calibre. This bombardment continued throughout the day, but the cavalry in the trenches maintained their position, while the counter-attack was stopped just east of the main road by the Germans holding the eastern portion of Messines. The London Scottish can lay claim to being the first territorial battalion in action, and very gallantly did they undergo their baptism of fire. At dusk the 3RD Hussars were withdrawn to a farm west of Wytschaete on the Kemmel road, while the London Scottish retained possession of the trenches. Just before dark the Composite Regiment reported that they were being pressed by German infantry. A patrol from the 3RD was sent to see if they wanted help, but Lord Crichton, who was in command, replied that they were holding their own. A pathetic sight met us at the farm—some twenty sisters of mercy standing in the road, not knowing what to do, and gazing at their convent by Wytschaete, which was burning furiously. They were advised to go on to Kemmel.

At 12.15 a.m. our Brigadier came to the farm and informed us that the Germans had made a heavy attack on the trenches between Wytschaete and Messines, and that the line had been broken in the centre. The Lincolns from close in rear of the farm were being pushed up to Wytschaete at once to make a counter-attack, and the 5th Fusiliers were also coming up. The 3RD turned out at once, and by the time the Regiment had taken up a position facing east from the windmill on the hill at point 75 to the Wytschaete-Wulverghem road, an officer's patrol, under Lieutenant Taylor, which had been sent to the London Scottish to discover the situation, had returned, with the information that their supports were all right, but that heavy fighting was going on in the trenches. Every effort was made to



entrench the position with the very limited supply of spades at our disposal. Meanwhile, heavy firing was going on in front, and ere long bullets began to whistle over our line. Pandemonium reigned on the ridge, Wytschaete was in flames, and Messines was burning. Another reconnaissance by Lieutenant Taylor pushed up to the London Scottish reported that the battalion was falling back. Our position was notified to the Officer Commanding, who was asked to retire clear of our right so as not to mask our fire. About the same time some of the 57th Native Infantry (Wilde's Rifles) arrived from the rear, and began to take up and entrench a position close alongside the windmill and in rear of our line, which was on the forward slope as giving a better field of fire.

As daylight approached the firing in front became still heavier, especially in our direction, and soon figures could be observed making our way. Orders had been given that nobody was to fire without an order on account of the difficulty in telling friend from foe. The approaching figures eventually turned out to be London Scottish, Lincolns, and Carabiniers, all indiscriminately mixed up. The London Scottish rallied to our right flank after passing our trenches, the Carabiniers to our left, and the Lincolns in rear of us. The Composite Regiment was also rallied to our left rear, where two companies of the 5th Fusiliers had taken up a position. Just after daybreak the tower of Wytschaete church, which had been burning furiously, fell in, and crash came the first "Black Maria" directed on to us at the windmill, followed in quick succession by half a dozen more. The Indians left—they had no officers. Shortly before 8 o'clock "J" and "H" Batteries of Royal Horse Artillery came up to the valley behind our ridge. Word as to the most likely spots in the Steenebeek valley for their fire was sent them by the Regiment. A terrific bombardment of the valley and of Wytschaete was opened, with the result that the rifle-fire directed upon our position ceased at once. The situation on our front was sent from the Regiment to the Divisional Staff, who replied that a

French corps was fast coming up on our left, and was going to advance east on Houthem from the line Voormezele-Wytschaete, and that this would relieve the pressure on our front. Also, that there were no more troops available; that the 3RD was to hold on as long as possible, and if forced to retire was to take up a second position between its present one and Mont Kemmel. When returning to the Regiment the messenger met a sergeant of the London Scottish, who, with forty men of his battalion whom he had collected, wished to "do something"; he had gone to "help the 3RD Hussars, but had found no room there"; the gallant fellow was persuaded to get back to Kemmel, where his regiment was rallying. Communication had meanwhile been established with the 9th Lancers on our right. The line was intact, the German onslaught had been stopped, and the situation was quietening down. At noon our position was taken over by the 16th Lancers, of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade. The led horses had been sent for, and met the Regiment just east of Kemmel. Mounting, we rode to the fifth kilometre stone on the Kemmel-la Clytte road, where for the remainder of the day the 4th and 5th Cavalry Brigades remained in reserve. While there column upon column of French infantry passed us going up. The Regiment billeted for the night in the neighbourhood of la Clytte, the Headquarters sharing its billet with some Scots Greys. With the morning of the 2nd arrived some German shells, and soon after the brigade assembled round the Headquarters billet. At 2 p.m. it moved to south of Locre, and at 4.30 p.m. marched to billets just north of Bailleul. The brigade was now in reserve, the division having been relieved by a French cavalry corps.

The line had held against all odds. Three weak divisions of infantry and three cavalry divisions, destitute of reserves, had barred the path to a powerful German army. Never again, throughout the war, was the situation quite so perilous as on that immortal last day of October, when, on the old-time battle-fields of the British Army, two great empires fought for the mastery. The great events of the day had

taken place between Cheluvelt in the north and Messines in the south.

A review of these events by the Commander-in-Chief sums up the true meaning of a somewhat complicated story. In his opinion, the vital interests of the British Empire were in great danger on those days—the whole coast-line from Havre to Ostend was within an ace of falling into the hands of the Germans.

He wrote :

“ In recalling the fateful hours of those two wonderful days and nights, I think we were perhaps in the greatest danger between 2 a.m. and 11 a.m. on Sunday, November 1st. Had the French 16th Corps arrived only an hour later than it did, the German advance from the line Wytschaete-Messines would have gained such volume, strength, and impetus that nothing could have saved Mont Kemmel from falling into their hands. A vital wedge would have been driven into the very centre of our line.

“ The enormous numerical and artillery superiority of the Germans must be remembered. If they had turned the situation to full account, we should have seen all the French, British, and Belgian troops lying to the north of an east and west line through Mont Kemmel, cut off and hemmed against the coast. The greatest threat of disaster with which we were faced in 1914 was staved off by the devoted bravery and endurance displayed by the Cavalry Corps under a commander, General Allenby, who handled them throughout with consummate skill. The same high praise must be given to those two redoubtable divisional leaders, Hubert Gough and de Lisle.

“ The cavalry was admirably supported and helped by Shaw and Egerton with the splendid battalions of infantry which composed the brigades they commanded, and none of us will ever forget how those French battalions on the left of the 2nd Cavalry Division checked the enemy by their gallant and determined advance at the most critical moment.

“ It is no disparagement, however, to the other troops engaged if I lay stress on the fact that it was the cavalry alone who, for more than a fortnight previously, had been disputing foot by foot every yard of the ground to the river

Lys. They had fought day and night with the utmost tenacity, and the battles of 31st October and 1st November were but the climax to a long and bitter spell of heroic effort." ("1914.")

The Commander-in-Chief goes on to explain the small fire power which a cavalry division has compared with an infantry division. When cavalry fight on foot, the horses behind have to be looked after, and this takes from half to three-quarters of the fighting men. With their losses, they can hardly have opposed 2,000 rifles to the onslaught of more than two German Army Corps during these critical days.

In an official account of the battle published by order of the German General Staff in 1917 (*Ypres, 1914*),<sup>1</sup> writing of the 31st October the author states :

"General von Fabeck had from the outset realised that the Wytschaete-Messines ridge was of decisive importance, and that every effort must be made to take it ; on the 31st, therefore, the main pressure was to be exerted along the southern sector of attack of the II Bavarian Corps. The fact that neither the enemy's commanders nor their troops gave way under the strong pressure we put on them, but continued to fight the battle round Ypres, though their situation was most perilous, gives us an opportunity to acknowledge that there were men of real worth opposed to us, who did their duty thoroughly. His Majesty the Kaiser, who had arrived at the battle headquarters of the 6th Army, watched the infantry working its way, etc. We now come to the most vital point of the battle : who was to be the victor in the fight for the Wytschaete-Messines Ridge ? The 6th Bavarian Reserve Division had worked forward by daylight towards Wytschaete. At nightfall the left wing of the II Bavarian Corps was still hanging back, unable to break the strong resistance opposed to it ; but, in spite of this, the Bavarian Reserve Division dared to make its attack. The 17th Reserve Infantry Regiment was to enter Wytschaete from the east and the 21st from the south. All the preparations had been carefully made. The men wore white arm-bands as a distinguishing mark when at

<sup>1</sup> (Constable & Co., 1919.)

close quarters with the enemy in the darkness. Water-bottles were packed away in the haversacks ; rifles were unloaded and bayonets fixed. It was hoped to take the enemy by surprise, and not a light betrayed our arrival in the assembly positions. The hostile artillery fire slackened during the night, but frequent star-shells lighted up the darkness and showed that our opponents were keeping a careful watch. The clear moon must have helped them to see our movements. At 2 a.m. (1st November) the Bavarians advanced from their assembly positions, taking little notice of the enemy's artillery, which began to open on them. The general direction of the attack was given by the windmill of Wyttschaete, which was clearly outlined in the moonlight against the sky. The 17th Reserve Infantry Regiment, under Colonel Hofmann, rapidly reached the edge of the village and pushed through to the western exit. The surprise had succeeded, and numbers of the enemy who still held out in isolated ruins were either killed in a hand-to-hand fight or taken prisoner. Unfortunately, however, our own guns continued to bombard the village, as the news of the victory of the 17th Regiment was not communicated to them sufficiently quickly."

That regiment was withdrawn to the eastern side of the village to reorganize.

" It so happened that the 21st Reserve Regiment arrived on the southern side of the village at this moment, its advance having been delayed by a heavy enfilade fire from the southwest. When the men of the 21st Regiment, in the first dim light of dawn, saw the figures of men wearing caps running eastwards among the ruins, they immediately opened fire on them. Nevertheless, in spite of the losses incurred through this mistake, the 17th Regiment held its ground at the eastern edge of the village. The error was quickly remedied by singing patriotic songs and by flag signals."

There was no element of a surprise, as stated by this German writer ; it was the German masses directed against the 4th Cavalry Brigade which alone broke through the defence. There may or there may not be any truth in the

statements that the attacking infantry were shelled by their own guns and that the 17th Regiment was fired into by the 21st; but the German advance was held up in Wytschaete by the counter-attacks of the 2nd Cavalry Division and the 1st Northumberland Fusiliers and the 1st Lincolnshires. They, the Germans, certainly came on singing their patriotic songs, amongst which the "Wacht am Rhine" predominated, but the strains of "We won't go home till morning" were also heard! The admission in this account that two whole German regiments (six battalions) were engaged in the attack is a fine testimony to the resistance made by the 2nd Cavalry Division and attached infantry at Wytschaete with odds of something like four to one against them.

The following special orders were published to the troops :

From the Commander of the 2nd Cavalry Division :

"It is the Divisional Commander's wish that his deep appreciations should be conveyed to the 4th Cavalry Brigade for the admirable manner in which they have performed their duties during the late series of events which culminated in last night's operations.

"The Brigadier would like to add to every officer, n.c.o., and man, his deep sense of the actions of all ranks, and, whilst deeply deploring the losses incurred, feels that they redound to the credit of British cavalry."

From the Commander-in-Chief :

"The Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief has watched with deepest admiration and solicitude the splendid stand made by the soldiers of His Majesty the King, in their successful effort to maintain the forward position which they have won by their gallantry and steadfastness. He believes that no other army in the world would show such tenacity, especially under the tremendous artillery fire directed against it. Its courage and endurance are beyond all praise. It is an honour to belong to such an Army, and the Field-Marshal has to make one more call upon the Troops. It is certainly only a question of a few days, and

it may only be a few hours before, if they only stand firm, strong support will come, the enemy will be driven back, and in his retirement suffer at their hands losses even greater than those which have befallen him under the terrific blows by which especially during the last days he has been repulsed. The Commander-in-Chief feels sure that he does not make the call in vain."

From the Cavalry Corps Commander :

"The Lieutenant-General Commanding the Cavalry Corps has once more to express his appreciation of the fine work performed by the cavalry during the past three days. It has been called upon to hold a position of the British line the maintenance of which was of vital importance to the success of the operation as a whole. The successful performance of this duty was only made possible by the courage and endurance which the cavalry have exhibited with an unfailing spirit."

From His Majesty the King :

"The splendid pluck, spirit, and endurance shown by my troops in the desperate fighting which has continued for so many days against vastly superior forces fills me with admiration. I am confident in the final results of their noble efforts under your able command.

"GEORGE, R.I."

The following reply was sent to His Majesty's message :

"Your Majesty's most gracious message has been received by the officers and men of Your Majesty's Army in France with feelings of the deepest gratitude and pride. We beg to be allowed to express to Your Majesty our most faithful devotion and unalterable determination to uphold the highest traditions of Your Majesty's Army and carry the campaign to a victorious end.

"FRENCH."

The Cavalry Corps now firmly established itself in trenches north-east and east of Wulverghem. The 2nd Cavalry Division was in reserve just north of Bailleul.

On the 3rd November the Regiment was ordered to turn out at 11 a.m., and joined the brigade three-quarters of a mile east of Bailleul, where we remained until 2.30 p.m., and then returned to the same billets. Roads much congested with the movement of French troops. The Regiment remained in billets ready to turn out at short notice for the next three days.

The following notice was sent round to the troops as having been published by the Press Bureau in the English papers, in italics :

“The cavalry have fought, whether mounted or in the trenches, to the admiration of the whole Army.”

On the 7th the division relieved the 1st Cavalry Division in the trenches. The 4th Cavalry Brigade concentrated at Brigade Headquarters at 2 p.m., and marched to the deserted village of Neuve Église, with the tower of its old church bearing the date 1683, and about to end its history in the coming ruin. Here in an adjoining meadow the horses were left, and, as the dismounted brigade commenced its march to the trenches east of Wulverghem, a German “Black Maria,” bursting in the village, laid low three men of the Carabiniers. The section of the front allotted to the Regiment was the extreme right of the cavalry line, and extended from the la Douve stream due north to the Mes-sines-Wulverghem road inclusive. The 3RD relieved the 4th Dragoon Guards in the line, the enemy shelling and sniping the while. By 5.15 p.m. the relief was complete, and the only casualties two wounded in the 3RD. On our left was the Composite Regiment, while a battalion of the Royal West Kent Regiment held the sector on our right.

All was quiet in front of our section during the night—which was exceptionally cold, with a sharp frost in the early hours of the morning; but at 2 a.m., and again at 6 a.m.,



there was heavy firing in the vicinity of hill 75. Our supplies were brought up to Wulverghem in limber wagons and distributed by hand to those in the trenches before daybreak. At about 7.30 a.m. the customary dose of "Jack Johnsons" began to arrive, evidently searching for a French light battery, which had come into action just in rear of the right of our line. This fire, supplemented at intervals with that of howitzer shrapnel, continued till 5 p.m., being heaviest about 1 p.m. Our trenches, however, were good, and no damage was done except to vagrant cows and pigs. At 9.30 a.m. on the 9th the Regiment was ordered to withdraw two squadrons, owing to the presence of French troops in our front. Just as the movement started the enemy began shelling the left of our section and the right of the Composite Regiment. The men were well strung out and all reached Neuve Église and the horses in safety. "A" Squadron remained occupying the trenches previously held by the Regiment, and at about 2 p.m. the whole area was subjected to a particularly heavy bombardment. All the farm buildings in the area were destroyed, and one "Jack Johnson" dropped right into one of the trenches; but fortunately there were no men in that particular portion. At 5.45 p.m. the Queen's Bays arrived in relief, and took over the section. "A" Squadron withdrew and joined the rest of the Regiment in billets about three-quarters of a mile south of Bailleul station by 9 p.m., where we remained until the 13th in a state of "standing to." On the 12th the Commander-in-Chief presented French decorations in Bailleul; Corporals Davidson and Townsend each received the Médaille Militaire. The next day the brigade marched to billets about a mile south of Dranoûtre, where it was in support of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade in the trenches.

The Oxford Hussars (Yeomanry) took the place in the 4th Cavalry Brigade of the Composite Regiment, the squadrons of which joined their own regiments in the 7th (Household) Cavalry Brigade, which had come out from home with the 7th Division and 3rd Cavalry Division.

The 15th saw the Regiment marching through snow and

mud along roads congested by the led horses of various cavalry regiments to the trenches. Dismounting at the brewery near Wulverghem, the led horses were sent back to the billets we had left, and the Regiment continued its march to the same trenches it had occupied the last time, and relieved the 5th Lancers by 5.45 p.m., and had a miserable night in pouring rain. A luckless officer and an equally luckless man had to be dug out of a trench that had fallen in and buried them; they were none the worse, and their language was intolerable. The French 156th Regiment were in trenches just in front of ours, and their reserves in rear of us. A fairly quiet night, and nothing much doing the following day. At 9 p.m. the Regiment was relieved by a battalion of the Suffolk Regiment, and, rejoining our horses near Neuve Église—brought up from south of Bailleul—a march along congested roads brought us eventually to billets in the latter area at midnight. Rain most of the day, and the country an absolute swamp. We remained in billets during the 17th and 18th in a state of standing to, the only excitements being German aeroplanes bombing our Brigade Headquarters, and being turned out at 5 a.m. on the 18th, and turned in again, as a German attack in the neighbourhood of Kemmel did not mature. A sharp frost next morning, with snow and a biting wind, and at 12.40 p.m. the brigade suddenly ordered to march at 1.15 for duty in the trenches. We rode to just east of la Clytte, and thence on foot to the area just north of the Kemmel-Wytschaete road. Here we relieved the 18th Company of the 342nd French Infantry. The arrangements for guides and taking over generally were bad. It was impossible to find out the number of men trenches would accommodate. The front trenches were mostly mere rifle-pits, and were not connected nor provided with communications to the rear. They also had to be approached over an area under enfilade rifle-fire from hill 75 on the south side of the main road. The Regiment was settled in by 10.30 p.m., snowing hard, bitterly cold, and incessant sniping throughout the operation, and three men

wounded. The Regiment numbered 220 of all ranks in the trenches, of whom half were in front line and half in reserve. The horses were sent back to billets. On the 20th November the *Official Diary* reads :

“ Bitterly cold night—sharp frost and east wind—so continued through the day. Only a little shelling, but continuous sniping—great difficulty in distributing rations and water very scarce—pumps in farms frozen.”

From the diary of a subaltern :

“ Not a bad night on the whole. There is a crest about forty or fifty yards in front of us, with a wire entanglement just this side of it, and on the other side of the crest is the German trench. We get enfiladed from our right, which is a nuisance, and one has to lie low. Very cold, and impossible to warm one's feet, as we cannot stand up to stamp them. Got a toothful of tea in the evening. One gets rather thirsty, with nothing to drink but rum ; though I must say the rum fairly saves one's life, as it warms one. When it was quite dark B. and I went out and mended a gap in the entanglement in front of the Boche trench with some French wire.”

And next day :

“ ‘ A ’ Squadron came up and relieved us at 6.30, and we went back to the support trenches. We got some stew and tea at Headquarters, also a good drink of water. I was awfully thirsty after forty-eight hours with only rum, and would have drunk anything ; as a matter of fact, the water was quite good. Some slight diversion was caused next day by a calf walking on to the straw roof of our section trench and falling through, completely burying the man underneath. A pig was also so trapped—and slain.”

Hill 75 brought home to some of us the want of shells in the British artillery.

“ There is incessant sniping from this hill, and the snipers grow ever bolder, and our guns do not appear to pay the same attention to the hill, when the enemy occupies it, as do their gunners when our troops show their noses on it.”

The 18th Hussars arrived in relief at 6 p.m. on the 22nd, and this was safely carried out by 7.30 p.m. ; horses were joined east of la Clytte, the walk back to them being a welcome change after the three days' inactivity. We reached our old billets south of Bailleul by 10 p.m.

For the rest of the month the Regiment remained in its billets, ready to turn out at short notice if required. The weather conditions were bad, hard frost for a day or two followed by a thaw, and then rain for the rest of the month. To quote from the *Official Diary* :

“ The horse-lines quickly became in a perfectly dreadful state—\_inches deep in sticky mud. As yet the horses' condition keeps good, but a continuation of the present weather, added to shortage of fodder—and for some days past now we have only received half or less of the hay ration—is bound to tell on them soon. Certainly it is hard now to foresee any possibility of cavalry work, and, whilst employed holding trenches, horses are an absolute encumbrance. Somewhere near 50 per cent. of our fighting strength is occupied looking after them and the transport, thus rendering our firing line terribly thin, and without supports.”

On the last day of the month the Regiment had again been brought up to strength : Officers, 27 ; N.C.O.s and men, 515 ; horses, 631.

On the 24th of the month short leave home was opened, and well it had been earned. One officer was understood to be doubtful about taking advantage of it ; he thought that the journey back would take away all the pleasure of the couple of days at home ; he seriously thought, he said, of waiting until the end of the war before going home—he changed his mind and went, and during the course of the war no officer had more leave than he !

Early in December His Majesty the King visited the Army. A very cold day it was on which the Regiment, drawn up in line on the side of the road in the neighbourhood of billets, awaited the King. Drawing their swords, the

serried lines cheered their King, with the eternal bombardment a mile or two away a fitting accompaniment.

A dull month was December. The Regiment remained in the same billets, and indifferent billets with the flat country-side mostly under water. The horses picketed in the open, and up to their hocks in mud and water ; they grew coats like bears, and stood it uncommonly well, far better than many of the frost-bitten men who attended them. For two days at a time we were duty regiment of the brigade and standing to, and four days off ; such was the routine. The outstanding features of a weary time were the Christmas dinners, which the Regiment pronounced a great success, and the invitation to inoculation for enteric fever—scarcely so successful in the number of acceptances.

After his visit to the Army the following special order was published by His Majesty the King :

“ OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, AND MEN,—

“ I am very glad to have seen my Army in the Field.

“ I much wished to do so in order to gain a slight experience of the life you are leading.

“ I wish I could have spoken to you all, to express my admiration of the splendid manner in which you have fought and are still fighting against a powerful and relentless enemy.

“ By your discipline, pluck, and endurance, inspired by the indomitable regimental spirit, you have not only upheld the tradition of the British Army, but added fresh lustre to its history.

“ I was particularly impressed by your soldierly, healthy, cheerful appearance.

“ I cannot share in your trials, dangers, and successes ; but I can assure you of the proud confidence and gratitude of myself and of your fellow countrymen.

“ We follow you in our daily thoughts on your certain road to victory.

“ GEORGE, R.I.”

*December 5th, 1914.”*

An innovation to the methods of waging war was the

introduction of that most useful mode of correspondence, the field service post card. The information it carried from, or about, the sender was, it may be remembered, but meagre. Christmas, however, softened the heart of someone, for the orders of the Cavalry Corps ran :

“ There is no objection to the following being written on the Field Service Post Card : ‘ A merry Christmas and a happy New Year.’ ”

The story of a French officer interpreter attached to the Regiment is worth the telling : This officer, when on leave in Paris, had occasion to call at the French General Headquarters. He noticed on the walls of an office large cards on which were printed in English the legend “ Keep smiling ! ” Asking the meaning of the cards, he was told by the staff officer that one day, during the retreat from Mons, when everything looked blackest, he was telephoning to the British Headquarters, and, in the course of the conversation, he said that it looked like the Germans being in Paris in a few days, that Parisians were departing south, and that Paris was in a state of fright. The reply of the British officer was, “ Keep smiling ! ” This had so bucked him up, that he had had these cards printed for his offices, and in English, for French would have taken away the value of the legend.

The following story of the gallantry of a 3RD Hussar, in these early days of the war, was told to the Commanding Officer in a letter by Major-General Carton de Wiart, V.C., head of the British Military Mission to Poland. From Warsaw he wrote in December 1920 :

“ DEAR COLONEL,

“ I heard the following from a brother-in-law of mine, who was a subaltern in the German Household Cavalry during the war, and I thought it might be of interest to the Regiment, and to the deceased’s relations—if they can be found.

"My brother-in-law was on patrol one very misty morning at the beginning of the war, when he heard a horseman coming down the road. The patrol waited till he was a few yards off, when they shouted 'Hands up!' The horseman at once tried to draw his sword, and the patrol fired, hitting him in the hand, and the horse swung round and was making off, when they fired again, hitting the man in the stomach. The man fell off, and they found he had a very nasty wound, and his intestines coming out.

"My brother-in-law asked him his regiment, but the man refused to answer. As his cap was on the ground, my brother-in-law picked it up, and recognized the 3RD Hussars' badge, and saw the name in it, 'Private Rabbitts, B Squadron.' He then told the man not to worry, and proceeded to dress his wounds, and make him as comfortable as he could, and sent back to the squadron to have him picked up, also giving him a note, in case other German troops came up. He told the man he could not stay with him, as he had to go on. The man then asked my brother-in-law for his hand, which the latter gave him, and he then said to him, 'Promise me one thing, please, sir.' My brother-in-law said, 'What is it?' 'Not to ask me any more questions, please, sir.' My brother-in-law said he should not be asked any more questions, and told the poor fellow not to worry. It made a deep impression on him. He said it was a splendid example of a British soldier's sense of duty up to the very last, and he asked me, when I saw him last week, that if I met a 3RD Hussar to tell him how fine Rabbitts's conduct had been, especially as the poor fellow was dying. He was subsequently picked up by the squadron, and he died the same night.

"I hope this may be of interest to the Regiment."

There was a mistake in the name; it was not Rabbitts, so the identity of this gallant soldier is lost. The German officer was Lieutenant Fugger, of the Cuirassiers of the Prussian Guard.

The following dreadful doggerel is a fairly close translation of a verse in a war-song found on a prisoner. The title of the song was "A Song of War," composed by Lieutenant Kotzsch and first sung by the 4th Company, 1st Battalion,

106th Landwehr Regiment, 24th Division, 19th Army Corps :

“ And you, King George, whom nothing shames,  
We'll soon be sailing up your Thames,  
Making a truly German noise,  
For we're the Kaiser's bonniest boys,  
We Landwehr,  
Rah ! Landwehr,  
The howling, scowling Landwehr.”

We will close 1914 with the following messages between the British Commander-in-Chief and General Joffre. The latter wrote on the 31st December :

“ I send you, M. le Maréchal, my New Year's greetings. Five months of the brotherhood of arms have welded between the French and British Armies bonds which are everlasting. We shall pursue, with but one single purpose, the achievement of our common effort towards a victory, which will be complete, and which from now onwards is a certainty. This will be our work in the year that is to come, and on the eve of which I beg you to accept the cordial good wishes of the French Army to yourself and the British Army.”

To which Sir John French replied :

“ In my own name and that of the British Army in France, I thank you with all my heart for your cordial and kind New Year wishes. In offering you and the French Army our fervent and heartfelt greetings, I wish to express the honour and pride we feel in having for five months fought side by side with an Army which has so splendidly maintained its magnificent traditions of the past, and added so many fresh laurels to its glorious standards.”



## CHAPTER II

1915

DURING the early part of January the Regiment remained in the same billets. Rain was incessant, and the country water-logged, horse-lines in an appalling condition, and the Regiment very bored and very wet. On the 8th orders came for a move, and next day the brigade, less the Oxford Yeomanry, left behind because of scarlet fever, marched to new billets some six miles south of St. Omer, marching via Merville, Haverskerque, and Aire. The 3RD billeted in Ecques, and the remainder of the brigade in neighbouring villages of Roquetoire and Robecq. Here the Regiment remained for three weeks in pretty, undulating country not ruined by war, and comfortable billets, while leave home had been increased to seven days.

The morning of the 31st found the Regiment marching to the brigade rendezvous at Roquetoire, and thence, in a succession of snow-storms, via Wittes, Steenbecque, Morbecque, la Motte in the forest of Nieppe, Vieux Berquin, to Doulieu, some six miles south of Bailleul; around there the brigade billeted with its Headquarters in the village itself opposite the ruined church which had been burnt by the Germans. The Regiment went into somewhat scattered billets in farms north of the village, in which every horse was got under cover.

Three hundred men and four officers per squadron from each regiment in the brigade left for Ypres on the 12th February in motor-buses. The party from the 3RD left Doulieu at 1.30 p.m., the horses and the remainder of the Regiment remaining behind. Going by Meteren, Flêtre, Caestre, and Poperinghe, Ypres was reached about 7.30 p.m., and the troops "debused" in the square near the historic Cloth Hall and the Cathedral, both of which were already

in ruins, and the 3RD reached their billet in the Convent in the Rue de Lille an hour later. What struck one next morning was that, in spite of the large extent of ruin and the periods of shelling, good shops were open and business was being carried on much as usual. At 8 in the evening the Regiment marched out of Ypres, going via Zillebeke, which was a shambles and also a total ruin, and Cavan's Dug-out to our trenches. The limbers of "A" and "B" Squadrons were unloaded in Zillebeke, while those of "C" and Headquarters went on to Cavan's Dug-out. The trenches were taken over from the Royal Dragoons, and the relief was finished by midnight.

The German trenches were not more than a hundred yards away, and their front-line trench had evidently been connected with ours, for a communication trench still connected the two. Near this communication trench we had a pump. Our trenches were full to some 6 inches of water. With the aid of the pump we pumped up the water and sent it pouring down the communication trench into the front-line German trench, which was on a lower level than ours. Every few minutes during the night, too, a bullet soared in its flight down that communication trench. Our line lay in what had once been a pine wood, and in one salubrious spot in the parapet a man lay buried with but the top of his head exposed to view. Nothing particularly interesting happened during the stay of the Regiment in that line; the usual artillery and rifle fire, a German attack which came to nothing, sniping, and a few casualties. On the night of the 18th February the 3RD were relieved by the 12th Lancers, and the squadrons arrived back in their old billets in Ypres between 2 and 3 o'clock on the morning of the 19th. At 8 a.m. on the 21st the brigade was turned out and marched to a point on the Menin road, where it remained until 9 next morning, the reason for the move being a heavy attack on the 16th Lancers, whose trenches had been mined and blown up by the Germans.

The same evening (22nd) at 6.30 the Regiment marched down the Poperinghe road and met the motor-buses, but

it was not until 10.15 that the brigade got started. A slow, cold journey, made slower by one of the buses capsizing in a ditch, where it was left, and the men squeezed into the others. Doulieu was reached at 3.30 a.m., where a welcome meal awaited the squadrons. On the 26th the brigade marched back to its late billets south of St. Omer, the 3RD reaching their old quarters in Ecques during the afternoon.

The Curé of Ecques approached the Commanding Officer on the subject of a memorial service to the men of the village and those of the 3RD Hussars killed in action, with a request that the Regiment should attend the service, and the event came off on Sunday the 7th March. The service may be best described in the following extract from an officer's diary :

“ The Curé's memorial service took place in the church of Saint Nicolas, ' Patron d'église d'Ecques,' at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. The Curé, Monsieur l'abbé Émile Salomé, was a quick little man with a wonderful flow of language—I don't mean bad language, but a continuous and rapid flow of eloquence with every word distinct. It was a weird show, and I suppose somewhat unique in its way. The little church, which was built in 1628, and could only hold some five hundred persons, was crammed with well over three hundred of our men, and about the same number of the villagers. The latter sat in the body of the church, and our men in the cross part with the officers in the choir. The Trumpet Major had formed a choir from the men of the 3RD, and they sat in the little gallery, while the ancient Curé of the neighbouring village of Coubronnie officiated at the harmonium and chanted in Latin in a wonderful and deep voice. In front of the altar under a canopy of white was a thing shaped like a coffin, on which lay the Tricolour of France and on it again the Union Jack, while similar flags decorated the corners, and lighted candles surrounded the coffin. There was a collection for the poor, and some of our non-commissioned officers carried round the plates. The service commenced with an English hymn. The harmonium did not play, but the soldiers made the old rafters ring with a torrent of noise which I don't suppose Roman chants ever do. Then followed the Roman Catholic

service, followed by the hymn 'Peace, perfect peace.' After that the Curé went into the pulpit and began operations by asking everyone to pray for those who had been killed during the war. He especially named a French soldier of the village, lately killed, and all of our men who were killed in the trenches before Ypres the other day, naming each by name—Monsieur — of the Hussards Troisième du Roi. Then he went on to talk of the suffering relatives and the glory of dying for one's country, and, 'God,' he said, 'is with France and the Allied nations who fight so nobly for honour, justice, and right, and that is why this spectacle is so beautiful and at the same time important.' Finally he said, 'You Officers,' and he waved his hand to us, 'and soldiers of the King of noble and proud Albion, make it clear to your King that he can count for ever upon the courage and heroism of the children of France to drive back beyond our frontiers the hideous factor of destruction and crime who dares to acclaim to himself the hand of God. God, in His justice, will soon say to this vainglorious chief, "Get you behind me, Satan." As for you, noble soldiers fallen upon the field of battle, innocent victims of this terrible war, rest in peace.' After that came the Roman Catholic funeral service, the Curé the while walking round the canopy and sprinkling holy water and incense upon the two flags. With the hymn 'Lead, kindly light' the old rafters shook again, and the service concluded."

On the 9th the brigade marched back to Doulieu. The battle of Neuve Chapelle took place from the 10th to the 13th, and the Cavalry Corps was in reserve to the British attack. On the 10th the brigade was standing to, saddled up in its billets until 5 p.m., when it was ordered to la Couronne, and then ordered back again. Next day the 2nd Cavalry Division was concentrated on the main road Vieux Berquin-la Couronne-Estaires, without being called upon. The brigades spent the night on that road, and on the 13th returned to their quarters on the conclusion of the British attack, the 3rd going back to Doulieu. On the 15th the brigade moved farther west to make room for the North Midland Division (Territorial), and the Regiment went into billets about Merris and Strazeele. The billets

were good, and the horses well sheltered, and life was taken up in training, especially in bombing, with boxing tournaments and sports as diversion, to say nothing of a divisional horse show in Vieux Berquin.

On the 9th April, Lieutenant-Colonel A. A. Kennedy joined the staff of the 2nd Cavalry Division and Major W. T. Willcox took over the command of the Regiment.

Billets were changed to Neuf Berquin, a few miles farther south, on the 19th.

On the morning of the 23rd the Regiment was engaged upon a scheme in the Forêt de Nieppe, when notice arrived by a motor-cycle despatch rider that the 2nd Cavalry Division was marching—a thunderbolt in the midst of a heated discussion as to which squadron was the victor in a series of intricate operations. The squadrons rode back to billets at once, and there orders were found for the 4th Cavalry Brigade “fighting troops” to concentrate at twelve noon at Bleu, while “B” Echelon of the transport was to remain in billets packed and ready to harness up. From Bleu the brigade marched via Vieux Berquin Strazeele-Flêtre to the Mont des Cats, on the southern side of which it halted in a bitterly cold wind.

From a summary of information issued it appeared that north of Ypres the enemy, using asphyxiating gases, had attacked two divisions of French Territorials, who were holding the line Bixschoote-Langemarck on the left of the British, and had broken them. “At 7 a.m.,” the summary ran, “Germans held line road junction just north of point 6, one mile south-east of Langemarck-road junction, three-quarters of a mile south of Pilkem-Boesinghe station-east of canal as far as Het Sas west of canal as far as Streenstraate. Canadians had been left with their flank in the air, but had made a successful counter-attack. A further counter-attack was being delivered this afternoon, result not yet known. Situation does not appear at all critical. Hill 60 normal. No reports from rest of British front.” The Regiment billeted for the night just north of Flêtre, men in barns and horses in the open, with orders to be ready



*Langfiet, Ltd.*

LIEUTENANT-COLONEL W. T. WILLCOX, C.M.G.  
Commanded the 3RD Hussars from 14th April 1915 to 2nd April 1921.



to move at an hour's notice. Billets were reached about 10.30 p.m.

At 3 a.m., on the 24th, the squadrons got orders to turn out, and at 4.45 the Regiment was on the march to the brigade concentration on the Monts des Cats-Boeschepe road, thence by Reninghelst to the château grounds just north of Vlamertinghe, which was reached at 9 a.m. There the brigade remained for the rest of the day, and rations were brought up—they were welcome, for yesterday we had none. At dusk we were told to bivouac where we were, and to be ready to move at half an hour's notice. A cold, wet night followed, which saturated everybody and everything.

The next day, the 25th April, the British Cavalry Corps was placed under the orders of the French General Putz, and was in support of the French. The 1st Cavalry Division was in a position of readiness just west of Woesten and the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions north of Vlamertinghe, all standing to. It being Sunday, the brigade chaplain held a service in the morning in the lines of the Regiment, the music for which was provided by four men blowing penny whistles out of tune. There had been very heavy shelling during the night, and a French counter-attack at 4 a.m. had been stopped by machine-gun fire.

At 12.45 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to the support of a Zouave counter-attack on Boesinghe, and also to protect a line of British guns south-west of that place. The 3rd, leaving their horses behind the Waanebeek stream, went forward on foot and entrenched south and south-west of Boesinghe, with a good field of fire to the Yser Canal. Front Line: Right, "B" Squadron near a small house by a level crossing, and covered from view by a hedge; one Maxim in the upper story of the house, and the other behind the left flank of the squadron, with a flanking fire across the front of the squadron on the left. Left, "C" Squadron thrown back in echelon, also covered from view, and in touch on its left with a company of Zouaves. In Reserve: "A" Squadron behind the right



of "C." The Carabiniers were on the left of the Regiment and the Oxford Hussars on the right. Heavy enemy shelling produced but few casualties, and the Zouave attack took Boesinghe. At 9 p.m. the Regiment was ordered to withdraw to last night's bivouac, and was also warned that at a later hour the division would move to an area between Poperinghe and Reninghelst.

A summary of information which was issued stated that the French counter-attack from Boesinghe made some progress, and that the line then ran : west of canal between Lizerne and Zuydschoote to just north of Boesinghe, where it crosses to east of canal, then to the Y roads a mile and three-quarters north of Ypres, then just north of the château two miles north-east of Ypres and south of St. Julien to just east of that place and turning south to Zonnebeke.

The Regiment withdrew to its horses, and rode to its last night's bivouac at Vlamertinghe, where instructions were awaiting that the 2nd Cavalry Division was to act as infantry. The Regiment then rode on to just south of the 8 kilo stone on the Poperinghe-Vlamertinghe road, where it joined the brigade in a large field beside the road. Here the brigade got supplies and left its horses. One man was left with every four horses. The dismounted Regiment was organized with four officers per squadron and a total strength of 304 all ranks. The dismounted brigade left the led horses at 3 a.m., and marched back to Vlamertinghe, where it came under the orders of the Commander of the Second Army, the 3rd reaching its close and very dirty billets in the town about 4 o'clock. A sunny, warm day followed by a cold night.

On the 26th the brigade was standing to all day in Vlamertinghe. During the day the Lahore Division of the Indian Corps passed through the village. A summary of information, published at 8.30 p.m., stated that the first attack of the Lahore Division and part of the Northumbrian Division (Territorial Force) in the direction of St. Julien failed all along the line, on account of gas fumes from hostile trenches. Later the attack was renewed, and by 5 p.m.

these divisions were in St. Julien, while the French were fighting in the street of Het Sas. An earlier summary of information to the foregoing stated that the Germans made heavy and repeated attacks about Broodseinde last night, but were repulsed with heavy losses ; a counter-attack was proceeding, and the fighting was very severe ; the 2nd Canadian Brigade had been driven from Gravenstrafel ridge during the evening, and the 11th Brigade had been sent up in support ; the Germans were massing in strength about St. Julien. The 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades moved to occupy trenches in reserve from Potijze to Arret (Halte) on the Menin-Ypres road.

About 5 o'clock the following afternoon, the 27th, the enemy commenced a heavy shelling of Vlamertinghe. The first few shells went over the village, then one burst at the cross-roads, which were some fifty yards from the billets of the Regiment in the centre of the little town. The squadrons were ordered to move out, and rendezvous about a mile down the Poperinghe road. The road was being shelled on the way out, and Captain Dobie, two men, and a French interpreter attached to the Regiment were wounded. The Regiment offered to help in the removal of the wounded in the temporary hospital in the church as it passed, but was not required. The squadrons halted at the appointed rendezvous, where eventually orders arrived from the brigade to rejoin the led horses ; on the way, when passing the Scots Greys, a shell, bursting in the midst of that regiment, stampeded some of its horses. Shortly after the Regiment had left its billets those of " A " and " B " Squadrons were destroyed by shell-fire.

At 11 p.m. the dismounted brigade again left the led horses and marched via Vlamertinghe to the General Headquarters line of trenches north-east of Ypres. The town was being heavily shelled, and the brigade marched round its northern side to Potijze. From there the brigade relieved the Middlesex Regiment at 2.30 a.m. in the line of trenches, which ran from the Zonnebeke road in a northerly direction to just east of Wieltje on the St. Julien road—no

casualties on the march. The 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades continued the line south from the Zonnebeke road to the Menin road. The 3RD Hussars were in the centre of the 4th Cavalry Brigade line with the 6th Dragoon Guards on their left, and the Oxford Yeomanry on their right. There were no support or reserve trenches, and the Regimental line ran : " C " Squadron on the right ; " B," the Maxims, and Regimental Headquarters in the centre ; " A " Squadron on the left. The brigade Headquarters were at the ruined Potijze château in rear of the right of the line. The remainder of the night was spent in digging and improving the trenches. A steady German shelling continued throughout the night and during the 28th, the Regiment losing one man killed and four wounded, while three horses were killed and two wounded with its first-line transport. A German aeroplane was brought down by rifle-fire during the day, just in front of the brigade line, and both pilot and observer captured. Another incident during the day was the arrival of a scared rabbit, which ran up to the trenches, and, climbing the parapet, jumped into the trench ; history relates that, as there was no means of cooking him, he was put outside, and allowed to continue his mad career towards Ypres.

A summary of information, issued at 9 p.m., stated that the situation on the whole was more satisfactory, and that we had made progress at one or two points ; that the Lahore Division had been reorganized, and that the units, which had lost heavily, had been replaced from the reserve. A French report stated that the Germans still held bridge-head south of the canal at Steenstraate, which had been prepared for defence ; the French were entrenched in a semicircle of 400 yards round this bridge-head ; beyond this party no Germans were west of the canal, and preparations were being made to bombard this bridge-head ; in capturing Lizerne, 120 prisoners were taken ; that prisoners had reported a large concentration of troops in Roulers, and that German losses in the attack were heavy.

One hundred men per regiment of the brigade were

employed during the night in digging support trenches, and the remainder of the Regiment spent the night in improving its own trenches. Heavy German shelling throughout the twenty-four hours. Two reconnaissances were ordered out on the 29th, Captain Olive's patrol to the French front line on the British left east of the canal (4th Moroccan Brigade and the 35th Brigade of the 152nd Division), Captain Burge's patrol to the British front line. The commander of the 35th French Brigade, General Mordacq, expressed his astonishment on discovering that the 2nd Cavalry Division was in the trenches. At 7 p.m. the brigade was ordered to move farther to the left at 8.30 p.m. across the St. Julien road. The 3RD were to stand fast, while the Carabiniers were to move farther left to the ordered point, the Oxford Yeomanry were to fill the gap, and the 20th Hussars from the 5th Cavalry Brigade were to take their place on the right of the 3RD. At midnight the regimental machine-gun sections of the brigade were ordered to a farm-house just in front of the brigade line. The reason for these changes was that the brigade was to be ready to reinforce the British front line north and north-east of Wieltje. Very heavy hostile shelling all night, during which the Regiment improved its trenches.

The 30th was a day of intensive shelling on the part of the enemy, and the brigade line received a lot of attention; the Regiment, however, only lost one man wounded. Lieutenants Bell and Whiston were sent on patrols to the front line. The duty of these patrols was to remain out all day, watching a portion of the line, and reporting direct to our own brigade any unusual happenings, and not over pleasant were some of their quarters—one patrol reported that it had taken up its position by a farm that had been used as a Canadian dressing-station, that it had been set on fire by an incendiary shell, and that the whole place was covered with burned bodies, "an awful sight!" Just in front of the Headquarters section of the trenches was the remains of a tree; passing shells had quite obliterated its family, but in those charred remains, for some forty-eight

hours, a blackbird sat and weathered the storm of shot and shell, and even a visitation of gas. Gay he looked in his spring plumage, and gaily he sang to us. At 5 p.m. the French attacked from Boesinghe, which was followed up by a French advance of 500 yards on the eastern side of the canal.

The fighting strength of the Regiment at this date was :

	Officers.	Other ranks.	Horses.	Pack.	M.-guns.
Mounted . . .	22	412	434	6	2
Dismounted . . .	16	252	—	—	2

The German line in the northern portion of the Ypres salient now ran approximately from opposite Boesinghe to St. Julien. Facing this, the British line ran from the farm of Fortuin, just south-east of St. Julien westwards, and joined the French right at a point about a mile east of the Yser canal. The distances between the opposing lines in this portion of the field varied from a hundred to over a thousand yards. Heavy shelling during the night, but no casualties in the 3RD, succeeded by a quiet morning on the 1st, followed again during the afternoon by heavy shelling on both sides, and the enemy accurately burst some shrapnel over the 3RD's trenches, two men only being wounded, though the 20th Hussars on our right suffered more severely.

*May 2nd.*—Heavy shelling last night. At 5 a.m. three officers' patrols were sent out: (1) to the north to the front line, to report any change in the situation; (2 and 3) to report upon the second-line trenches to the east. A quiet morning, and the brigade chaplain arrived with the intention of holding afternoon services in the trenches. At 4.45 p.m. a heavy machine-gun fire broke out on our left, and a quarter of an hour after, a wall of green-yellow cloud was seen to apparently rise from the ground to the north-west and come along in our direction, accompanied by a very evil smell; at the same time the enemy commenced a very heavy bombardment of the northern portion of the Ypres salient. Very shortly afterwards large numbers of dazed infantrymen came streaming past the Regiment's trenches. "Jack

Johnsons," "coal-boxes," and every form of German shell, great and small, began to arrive, and the German bombardment could only be described as a continuous crash. "The shelling got heavier and heavier," wrote a subaltern, "and "coal-boxes" burst all round the trenches. At last one pitched into a section of trench held by six of my troop. The shell completely demolished a traverse, blew in the parapet for a length of 8 feet, and wounded five of the men who should have been killed." The gas-dazed infantry were stopped, mainly through the exertions and gallant example of Regimental Sergeant-Major H. Smith, 3RD Hussars, and placed in dug-outs behind the Regiment's trenches. For his gallantry and resourcefulness Mr. Smith was awarded the Distinguished Conduct Medal. Meanwhile the wall of gas, though considerably thinned, came down on to the Carabiniers, and so on to the 3RD. Added to this came the gas-filled German shells, which, bursting over the Regiment, emitted an equally horrible smell, and also affected the eyes. About 6 o'clock a verbal message reported that the front line was broken, and at 6.45 p.m. the following was received from brigade headquarters :

"The brigade will hold on to its present line of trenches. If eventually forced to fall back, it will hold on with its right (3RD Hussars). Oxford Hussars and the left (6th D.G.) will fall back fighting, and hold a line running east and west through Wieltje."

A proportion of the Regiment held their trenches in reverse. The attack was repulsed, however, and by 7.30 p.m. the shelling was dying down. The Regiment was lucky in losing only six men wounded, while the total loss in the brigade was forty.

A summary of information issued later reported on this attack as follows :

"About 5 p.m., the 2nd May, fumes were seen issuing from the wood near C 10, and immediately afterwards a

heavy bombardment, with asphyxiating shells, was directed against our lines between St. Julien and the right of the French. The 10th, 11th, and 12th Brigades were attacked heavily between 5 p.m. and 6 p.m. The effects of the gas used by the enemy were very severe, but in spite of this the brigades made a most gallant fight, driving the enemy back with artillery, machine-gun, and rifle fire. A German lieutenant, who was captured by the 2nd Royal Dublin Fusiliers, reported that our fire was especially effective on St. Julien, the enemy running like rabbits in all directions. Supports were sent up, including some units of the 2nd Cavalry Division, and the enemy were unable to make any progress. During the action a German aeroplane was brought down, and fell in German lines, and one of their captive balloons broke loose opposite the 27th Division, and drifted westwards. By 10 p.m. our line was finally established."

An unofficial report stated that the gas-wall lifted over the first line and came down on the supports, while another Intelligence summary said that "The attack on the 2nd May was repulsed, principally by the supports, who waited until the walls of gas had come up to the support trenches, and then charged through the gas to the front trenches, which they reached before the German assault." The following published account by a German prisoner is of interest: He stated that, the smoke-gas detachment arriving in the front trench, the troops holding it retired to the second line. The detachment wore rubber coats, goggles, and a special head-gear, and were kept apart from the other men. They carried cast-iron cylinders about 2 feet long, with flat bottoms, and conical tops. About forty-five minutes after their arrival a yellow smoke-wall arose along a length of some 600 yards, just in front of the trench, and was blown by the wind towards the British trenches. The Regiment had been served with respirators during the morning, which were found impossible to breathe through when damp; as they were made of cotton-wool, they were recalled, and cotton waste respirators were later issued.

*May 3rd.*—The 4th Cavalry Brigade, being ordered to rejoin its horses on relief in the trenches by infantry, marched at 1 a.m. The 5th Cavalry Brigade had already left, and the 3rd followed the 4th. Order of march in the brigade: 3RD Hussars, Oxford Hussars, 6th Dragoon Guards. It not being advisable to march either through Ypres or round its northern side, a zigzag course across country was taken, and all roads swept by shell-fire were avoided. The brigade zigzagged its way south to the Zillebeke lake, then to Kruisstraat, and from there north-west to the Dickebusch road, down the road to the 6 kilo stone and north-west to Ouderdom, and north again to the led horses on the Poperinghe-Vlamertinghe road, which were reached at 7 a.m. There were no casualties *en route*, in spite of the searching artillery fire. A trying march of six hours, with only two short halts, and especially so for a cavalry brigade!

From there the brigade, starting at once, rode in the same order of march via Poperinghe-Watou-Houtkerque to Herzele, in which neighbourhood we halted from 11 a.m. until 5 p.m. The reason for this unnecessary halt to tired troops was that the brigade was ordered to billet about Herzele and Houtkerque; but, on arrival, it was discovered that the area was required by the Second Army. After six hours of weary waiting spent in a condition of "being ready to move," the regiments of the brigade were ordered to march independently to billets about Wormhoudt. The 3RD got into good billets just south-east of Esquelbecq about 7 in the evening.

Before closing the account of the operations from the 23rd April to 3rd May, as strenuous a time as the Regiment has experienced, it must be placed on record that the duties carried out by the non-commissioned officers and men in charge of the A Echelon of the Regiment were deserving of the highest praise. Every night the A Echelon brought up, without fail, the supplies and rations to the Regiment in the trenches, along roads which were systematically shelled by the enemy day and night.



The following was published in a Special Order by Cavalry Corps Headquarters on the 9th May :

“ A letter has been received from General Sir H. Smith-Dorrien, G.C.B., in which he conveys his earnest thanks to the Cavalry Corps for the splendid work they so nobly performed in helping the Second Army to save a critical situation round Ypres on the 22nd April, and the ensuing fortnight.”

The British line running south from Zonnebeke was successfully withdrawn on the 3rd to a second line west of that place, thereby reducing the salient east of Ypres.

The following interesting and somewhat amusing information was published in the *Intelligence Summary* :

“ The German newspaper *Der Tag*, which during the first month of the war shouted, ‘ O Lord, how delightful these days are,’ declared recently :

“ ‘ So many of our calculations have deceived us. We expected that British India would rise when the first shot was fired in Europe ; but in reality thousands of Indians came to fight with the British against us.

“ ‘ We anticipated that the whole British Empire would be torn to pieces ; but the colonies appear to be closer than ever united with the Mother-country. We expected a triumphant rebellion in South Africa ; yet it turned out nothing but a failure.

“ ‘ We expected trouble in Ireland, but instead she sent her best soldiers against us.

“ ‘ We reckoned that England was degenerate, and incapable of placing any weight in the scale ; yet she seems to be our principal enemy.

“ ‘ The same has been the case with France and Russia. We thought that France was depraved and divided, and we find that they are formidable opponents. We believed that the Russian people were far too discontented to fight for their Government, and we made our plans on the supposition of a rapid collapse of Russia ; but, instead, she mobilized her millions quickly and well, and her people are full of enthusiasm, and their power is crushing. Those who led us into all these mistakes and miscalculations have laid upon themselves a heavy responsibility.’ ”

The Regiment remained in its pleasant billets until the 7th, and on the morning of that day got a warning order to be ready to move. The actual order to march was late in arriving, and, in spite of the squadrons being ready to move, the Regiment had to put on the pace to catch up the brigade. The march was by Wormhoudt and over the hill of Cassel to Caestre and Strazeele to our old billets about Neuf Berquin, the Regiment arriving in its former quarters at 7 p.m., and receiving a warm welcome from the kindly inhabitants. There we stayed in a state of standing to until the 13th.

On the night of the 13th some of the officers of the Oxford Hussars were dining with the Headquarters of the 3RD. With great difficulty a bottle of port, or perhaps two, had found its way from somewhere, and were being merrily discussed as a motor despatch rider rode up about 10 p.m. with a warning order that the Regiment was to be ready to move to Ypres, and our hopes for the evening were shattered ; as our guests rode away, one of them, Bonham-Carter, the adjutant, called, " Better luck next time "—the poor fellow was dead in forty-eight hours.

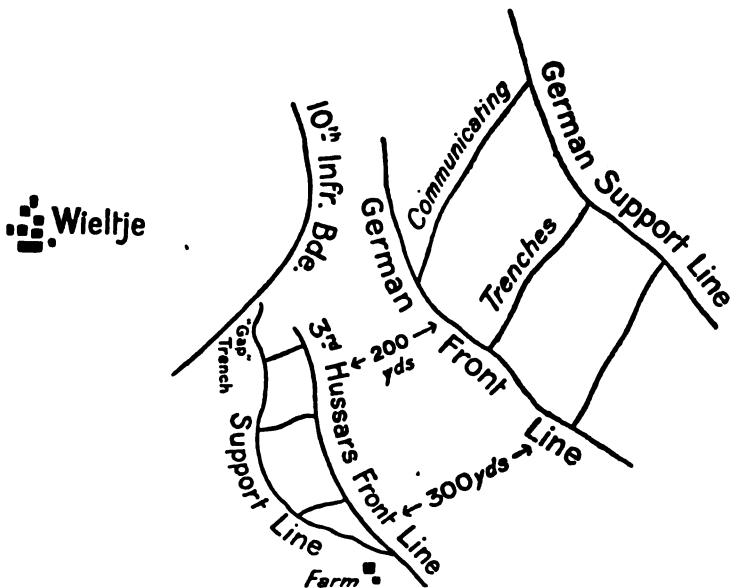
*May 14th.*—By midnight the Regiment was ready at the appointed rendezvous, and at 1 o'clock embused, in the parlance of the period. Eleven buses were allotted to the 3RD, the whole brigade requiring thirty-six. The brigade did not get away until 2 a.m., as the motor-buses were late for the advertised time. The regiments went 280 strong, with 3 officers per squadron. On the way the brigade joined the remainder of the 2nd Cavalry Division, and the long string of buses arrived at Vlamertinghe at 7 in the morning, where the regiments went into military huts south-east of that place ; the machine guns, on packs and pack-horses which had marched by road, arrived soon after. At 11 a.m. the commanding officers of the regiments motored to Potijze, and from there reconnoitred the trenches they were to take over from the 1st Cavalry Brigade, who had yesterday suffered a severe grueling, some of the 5th Dragoon Guards' trenches being completely obliterated

by howitzer-fire. The commanding officers got back to their regiments at 3 p.m.

At 7.5 p.m. the brigade started on its march to Potijze, north-east of Ypres—a march which took the brigade through the centre of the quaint old Flemish town, a march in which those who took part are not likely to forget. The column of dismounted cavalry wound along past the ruins of the Cloth Hall and the Cathedral. There was a rising moon. The desolation was absolute, the beautiful Cloth Hall a shell, as were all the other buildings, mere shells and heaps of ruins; not a living soul or animal to be seen; not a sound except the tramp of the brigade as it picked its way through heaps of masonry, and by carcasses of dead horses which had been gathered and were burning; not a sound but the bursting of an occasional German high explosive shell; utter desolation, and a city of the dead. Leaving the town by the sally-port, the brigade reached Potijze about 10 p.m., where the regiments were met by guides from regiments of the 1st Cavalry Brigade, and conducted to their trenches. On its way the 3RD had to halt for some twenty minutes during a short and furious fusillade, which swept the trenches in front. The enemy's constant flares, too, necessitated occasional halts, while their light lasted. By 11 p.m. the Regiment had taken over its trenches and relieved the 11th Hussars and the 5th Dragoon Guards, the whole operation being carried out without a casualty, in spite of heavy sniping. The remainder of the night was spent in improving the fire-trenches and digging a supporting line.

*May 15th.*—The trenches held by the brigade were those to which the British line was withdrawn on May 3rd. The 3RD was on the left of the brigade line, and just south-east of Wieltje; next on the right was the Oxford Hussars, and beyond that regiment again the Carabiniers, who carried the line to the 5th Cavalry Brigade. On the left of the 3RD stood the Royal Irish Fusiliers of the 10th Brigade, 4th Division. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade was in support in trenches just north of Potijze château. The brigade Headquarters of all three cavalry brigades were in dugouts

in the château grounds. In the Regiment "A" Squadron was on the left and "C" on the right, with two troops of "B" in the support trenches. One Maxim and the Rexer-gun were on the left of "A" and one Maxim with the support. Between the left of "A" and the 10th Infantry Brigade was a gap of 150 yards, which was not held. Opposite "A" Squadron the German trenches were under 200 yards distant, some 300 yards opposite "C," and then



SKETCH OF THE WIELTJE TRENCHES, 14TH-22ND MAY 1915.

they curved away to 400 and 500 yards in the centre, and on the right of the brigade. The day was spent in improving the fire-trenches, for which there was much need, the tops of the parapets in many cases not being bullet-proof. Killed during the day, Sergeant Roe and Sergeant Cooper, and a man wounded. Work during the night: A communicating trench dug across the gap to the 10th Infantry Brigade, the support trench extended to take the remainder of "B" Squadron, who moved into it, the trenches on the right of

"C" Squadron re-dug—they had been demolished by German artillery; all trenches improved and more communicating trenches commenced, while a wiring party of Royal Engineers, with 3RD Hussar covering parties, worked in front, one sapper being killed. The Regiment was in telephone communication with the 110th Battery, R.F.A., between Potijze and Ypres. During the night the second machine gun was moved up to the right of "C" Squadron.

*May 16th.*—The right troop of "C" Squadron being badly shelled, its trench was only lightly held during the day, the men going back to it at night. A ruined farmhouse behind this portion of the line appeared to attract the German artillery. Some trenches fell in. There was heavy shelling by the Germans at intervals, and the British artillery, too, was more active than usual. About 9 in the evening a heavy attack against the 5th Cavalry Brigade, which coincided with a lively burst of shrapnel on the 4th Cavalry Brigade, was driven off without loss to either brigade. During the night the communicating trench across the gap to the infantry was converted into a fire-trench, and held by a troop of "B" Squadron. The Warwickshire Regiment relieved the Royal Irish Fusiliers on our left. The night was spent, as usual, in working at trenches.

*May 17th.*—Rain all night. Some suspicious-looking heaps of earth in front of "A" Squadron suggested an enemy sap. A reconnoitring patrol discovered them to be new shell-holes; a man of the patrol was mortally wounded. Heavy rain all day, and the trenches in a vile condition, with mud up to one's knees. The following message was received from the Brigade Headquarters: "Owing to certain water sources in area occupied by Germans having been poisoned with arsenic, no water is to be used for drinking purposes, other than that obtained west of Ypres from pond pointed out by A.D.M.S., over which a guard is placed. Water-carts to be filled from that place." An attempt was made to gas the 12th Brigade farther to the left in the British line; but it failed, owing

to the use of respirators. The French on our left reported that Germans in front of them were wearing British khaki caps.

*May 18th.*—A cold, wet night. The liquid mud in the trenches was abominable—"We eat, drink, and breathe it." The Germans gave us a good dose of artillery in the morning for an hour from 9 o'clock. Two of the new trenches in the gap were demolished by shells at 10.30 a.m., but luckily no men were in those particular spots. As the German artillery evidently had the range of the gap trenches, an observation post only was left in them by day, the two troops of "B" Squadron being withdrawn to the support trenches during the day-time. The following statement was published in *1st Army Intelligence Summary* of the 18th May :

"It has been established that the Commanding Officer of the 57th Regiment (Major Castendyk) gave orders on the 20th December to his regiment that no British prisoners, wounded or unwounded, were to be taken. The order was read out on parade to the men of the regiment, and subsequently repeated in company orders. Major Castendyk narrowly escaped falling into the hands of our troops yesterday morning."

*May 19th.*—Another cold, wet night, followed by a wet day, with the result that a number of trenches fell in, and more mud, and more liquid perhaps! The usual enemy shelling, and more active sniping, which necessitated one of our batteries being called upon to deal with the German front-line trenches in front of "A" Squadron. It was pretty shooting; our gunners got the range to a nicety. A subaltern of "A" Squadron was ordered to execute a sketch of the trench system held by the Regiment on a scale of 1 inch to 10 yards. It took him eight hours; he used the backs of six or seven sheets of the *Information News*; the total length of his sketch was 40 inches. When this work of art was forwarded to Brigade Headquarters, it was acknowledged with the minute that a sketch of 1/10,000 was what

should have been asked for—an instance of the heavier, not the lighter, side of war ! At 10.30 p.m. a platoon of the 8th Battalion of the Durham Light Infantry (Territorials) was sent up for twenty-four hours' instruction in trench warfare. The platoon was attached to "A" Squadron, a troop of which was withdrawn to the support to make room.

*May 20th.*—The sniping during the night was heavier than usual, and continued throughout the day. Another platoon of the Durham Light Infantry relieved that already with the Regiment.

*May 21st.*—The brigade was relieved at night by portions of the 10th Infantry Brigade, a half-battalion of the 87th Royal Irish Fusiliers relieving the 3RD. The squadrons left the trenches independently, and marched to the Vlamer-tinghe huts, which were not reached by the last squadron until 3 a.m. In spite of heavy sniping and rifle-fire during the relief the Regiment got away without a casualty. At the huts R.A.M.C. orderlies were waiting to rub the men's feet for "trench feet," and every man had a new pair of socks.

The Regiment had spent seven days and nights in front-line trenches. The trenches were very bad, and continuous hard work was necessary to improve them, and to build new fire, communicating, and support trenches. The greater part of the line held by the Regiment was very wet, especially in "B" and "C" Squadrons, the trenches of "B" being up to the knees in mud and water. The water-cart arrangements were not good, there being but one cart for the brigade, and there was nothing for it but to drink the muddy rain water in the trenches, and from an equally muddy stream in front of the support trench, which did not come from the direction of the Germans. No blankets were taken, only mackintoshes, and the nights were cold. Fires for cooking were not possible.

From the 22nd the division went into the Cavalry Corps reserve. Instructions were issued that, upon the brigade being ordered to occupy trenches, or to support or reinforce a trench line, not more than three officers per

squadron were to lead the dismounted men—a leader for the squadron, which was divided into two half-squadrons, each under a subaltern. This was already being done in the 3RD. The division was standing to at half an hour's notice. On the evening of the 23rd three officers and seventy men were ordered off to dig trenches near Zillebeke, and returned at 2.30 in the morning.

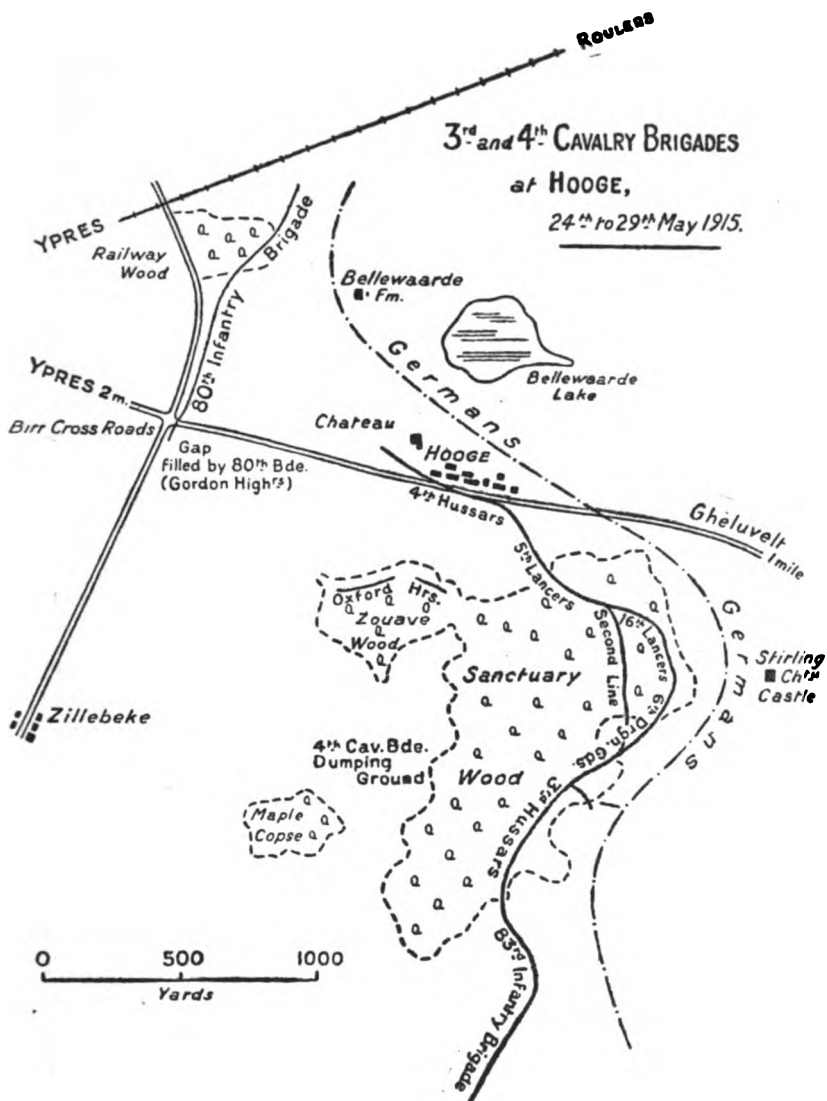
*May 24th.*—At 3 a.m. very heavy and continuous gun-fire awoke everyone; such an unbroken roar was it that it might have been the surf breaking upon a rocky shore. It went on with the same intensity for an hour. At 4.45 orders reached the Regiment to concentrate at once, and soon after 5 a.m. the brigade was assembled just south-east of Vlamertinghe, where, with the rest of the division, it remained all day, concealed amongst trees and hedges. At 3 a.m. the Germans, again making use of poisonous gases, had attacked the British trenches east and north-east of Ypres, and heavily bombarded the line mainly with gas-shells. Between 4 and 5 a.m., under cover of the gas-cloud, they succeeded in obtaining a foothold in the trenches about Bellewaarde Lake and the Ypres-Roulers railway; but in spite of gas and fire from front and flank, the left of the 1st Cavalry Division had hung on to Hooge, and had driven off the German attack.

In the 2nd Cavalry Division, at about 4 o'clock in the afternoon, the 3rd Cavalry Brigade was ordered to Ypres; and at 7.45 the 4th Cavalry Brigade to Hooge, while the 5th Cavalry Brigade marched to Ypres and went into reserve in the ramparts, relieving the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, which went on to Hooge. From the south of Ypres our brigade marched along the railway embankment to the railway cutting, where the gas was still very bad, and where many dead gassed men were lying. What a march it was! Shelled the whole way, losing touch in the dark, thanks chiefly to the pack-horses carrying the machine guns, who were slipping about the railway lines, and in and out of shell-holes. At one point an angry bellow was heard from the inside of the embankment, and an infuriated red face looked over the



top, inquiring in somewhat forceful language as to the reason why a horse should select the roof of red face's dug-out to put its leg through. It was dark, but the face must have been red, as the language most certainly was. From the cutting the brigade turned south on to the Zillebeke road, then east to Sanctuary Wood, just south of Hooge. The 3rd and 4th Cavalry Brigades relieved the 2nd and 1st Cavalry brigades at midnight. Owing to the heavy fighting, the squadrons of those brigades were somewhat mixed up, the 3rd Hussars relieving two squadrons of 5th Dragoon Guards, and one of the Bays, while the Carabiniers relieved one squadron of Bays and two squadrons of 11th Hussars, and the 16th Lancers of the 3rd Brigade relieved squadrons of 5th Dragoon Guards, Bays, and 11th Hussars. The Regiment got into its trenches with the loss of one man wounded. The remainder of the night was spent, as usual, in improving trenches. A German attack was driven off in the early morning.

*May 25th.*—The line held by the 3rd and 4th Cavalry Brigades extended from Hooge in the north, and ran out into a salient to the south-east, and then turned south and joined the 83rd Infantry Brigade. The 3rd Brigade was on the left, and the 4th on the right, the line of trenches mostly running along the eastern edge of Sanctuary Wood. North of Hooge, at Bellewaarde farm, the enemy occupied the British trenches they had captured in the gas attack on the 24th, while between the left of the cavalry line at Hooge and the 80th Infantry Brigade at Birr Cross Roads was a gap, which was filled at night by the Gordon Highlanders. The 4th Hussars were at Hooge, and the line ran 5th and 16th Lancers of the 3rd Brigade, 6th Dragoon Guards and 3rd Hussars of the 4th Brigade, the latter regiment being in close touch with the Yorkshire Light Infantry of the 83rd Brigade. The Oxford Hussars were in reserve in Zouave Wood. Both the cavalry brigades were under the command of Brigadier-General J. Vaughan of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade. In the Regimental line, "C" Squadron was on the left, "A" in the centre, and "B" on

**BATTLE OF BELLEWAARDE.**

the right, while the Maxims occupied a sap running out to a similar sap from the German line. In front of the centre of the 3RD's line was a thickly wooded copse, a point of danger, which held our listening patrols day and night.

It was proposed to withdraw the salient to a line from the 5th Lancers to the left of the 3RD Hussars, and the Commanding Officers of the 16th, 6th Dragoon Guards, and the 3RD were ordered to reconnoitre it. Those officers, however, reported badly on the proposed line, and we were told later that the present line would not be changed. The cavalry line was very weak. There was considerable sniping during the day, but no shelling to speak of. A German officer was seen to come over to the British line for some extraordinary reason, and he was allowed to look over into a Carabinier trench. It was reported that his look of astonishment on finding it occupied was quite worth seeing. He did not get away with his information! One man was killed during the day, and 2nd Lieutenant A. H. Turner and one man wounded.

*May 26th.*—Sniping all night without intermission from both sides. Hooge was shelled by howitzers during the day, and there was some bombing by minnenwurfen. Orders were given for a second line to be prepared in case the salient should be driven in. The 16th Lancers, Carabiniers, and the left squadron of the 3RD Hussars, if driven in, would fall back upon it. The new line was worked at while the two brigades remained in Sanctuary Wood, but never occupied. The song of a nightingale in that awful wood brought visions of better times and more pleasant spots. Two men wounded. At midnight the Regiment was warned by telephone that the Germans were making a gas attack in the early morning, but nothing came of it. During the night the Germans in front of "C" Squadron sapped up to within 60 yards of an advanced trench running out at a right angle from the main trench, and occupied by a troop of 3RD Hussars, and a Maxim of the Carabiniers. This sap was responsible for much sniping, bombing, and maxim fire, and there were some casualties.

The 28th and 29th was a period of a good deal of sniping on both sides, and a little shelling.

Both the brigades were relieved during the night of 29/30th by the 3rd Cavalry Division. The 2nd Life Guards relieved the 3rd Hussars. Each squadron, as it was relieved, marched away independently across country, keeping along the northern edge of the Zillebeke Lake, then due west, across the railway and canal, and eventually turning north-west to Vlamertinghe, an eight-mile walk. Vlamertinghe was reached by the squadrons between 3 and 3.30 in the morning, and the Divisional Staff had provided a cup of coffee for every man, which was greatly appreciated. At 5 a.m. the 3rd boarded their share of the buses, which had brought up the 3rd Cavalry Division, and were waiting to take our division back to its horses, which were reached at Rue Pruvost at about 9 o'clock. The Regiment had again suffered but slightly in casualties during its time in the Hooge trenches. The Germans threatened attacks, but in reality confined themselves to sniping and some shelling. As usual, day and night work was carried on in improving and rebuilding trenches. The trenches in the left centre of the Regiment were very bad, and held some inches of water. The line held was a dangerous one, because of its salient, while rifle-fire hit the two brigades from the front and both flanks, and in the salient from the rear. There were no supporting troops nearer than the 5th Cavalry Brigade in Ypres. The A Echelon dumped supplies, etc., just in rear of Sanctuary Wood, and they had a very uncomfortable journey every night from Ypres along the well-shelled Menin and Zillebeke roads. The echelon deserved the highest praise for its work throughout the second battle of Ypres.

Major-General the Hon. Cecil Bingham, on being appointed to the command of the 1st Cavalry Division, forwarded the following message to the brigade :

“ After being in command of the 4th Cavalry Brigade for four and a half years, I leave it with very mixed feelings : pride at having commanded it so long, regret that, in leaving

it, I part from so many whom I shall always regard as my best friends and comrades. Many months of the vicissitudes of active service welds men together as no other conditions can, and, in wishing all ranks the best of luck in the future, I wish to thank the whole brigade who have so splendidly acted in the past."

On the 31st May the 4th Cavalry Brigade marched to billets between Hazebrouck and St. Omer, the 3rd billeting about the village of Wallon Cappel. Brigadier-General T. T. Pitman, C.B., from the 11th Hussars, took over the command of the brigade.

During June the Cavalry Corps was in general reserve, and the latter part of the month standing to at four hours' notice, though training was not interfered with. Hot summer weather. The seventy-two hours' leave home was not interfered with by the standing to. It was granted at the rate of four officers and sixteen men per regiment at a time, with special leave for four married men extra per regiment.

While at Wallon Cappel the brigade was visited by Sir John French. Speaking of the work of the cavalry during the second battle of Ypres, he said: "The manner in which the cavalry stood against the heavy artillery, when it had little or no trench protection, was nothing short of marvellous."

In a summary of information, issued by the British V Corps on the 19th May 1915, we read the following:

"The diary of a Saxon officer throws considerable light on the proceedings of the German Army in the country between Dinant and Rethel. Here are some extracts:

"*August 17th.*—In the afternoon I had a look at the little château belonging to one of the King's secretaries (not at home). Our men had behaved like regular Vandals. They had looted the cellar, and then they had turned their attention to the bedrooms, and thrown things about all over the place.

"*August 23rd.*—Two 6-inch howitzers succeeded in getting into position, and in twenty shots reduced the

village of Bovines to ruins. The men had already shown their brutal instincts ; everything upside down. The sight of the bodies of all the inhabitants who had been shot was indescribable. Every house in the whole village was destroyed. We dragged the villagers, one after the other, out of the most unlikely corners. The men were shot, as well as the women and children, who were in the convent, since shots had been fired from the convent windows ; and we burnt it afterwards. The inhabitants might have escaped the penalty by handing over the guilty and paying 15,000 francs.' ”

On the 1st July 7 officers and 200 men from the Regiment joined a brigade party which rode via Berthen to a camp about half-way between Reninghelst and la Clytte—a digging party, the horses being taken back to Wallon Cappel. The tents were quite new and white, and the night was spent in trying to colour them with a khaki stain. The attempt was unsuccessful, and mud and water had to be resorted to. Next day work was started upon a new line of trenches about a mile south of Dickebusch, the notorious “ Hell Blast ” Corner, and later near Kemmel Hill. The party was periodically relieved in its officers and men, and finally rejoined the Regiment on September 5th. They were shelled in camp and at work, but sustained no casualties.

Meanwhile, the Regiment left Wallon Cappel on the 13th July, owing to a shortage of water, and moved to some farms near Nieurlet, some three miles north of St. Omer. Here the Regiment remained until the middle of August. Training was carried on so far as it was possible with half the men away with the digging party. The monotony of the time was varied with a Fête Nautique, which took place on the canal. The following was the programme :

1. Épreuves éliminatoires des courses militaires.
2. Courses en péniches montées par des militaires.
3. Courses à la nage pour les soldats.
4. Joutes.
5. Course en bateau réservée aux habitants (hommes) de Nieurlet.

6. Course en baquets (militaires).
7. Course en bateau réservée aux dames.
8. Lutte sur mât de cocagne.
9. Course à pied pour jeunes garçons et fillettes.

Un mât de cocagne fonctionnera tout l'après-midi. Les Habitants sont cordialement invités à honorer la Fête de leur aimable présence.

Prizes were given, while a water-polo match, in which the officers of the 3RD beat those of the Carabiniers, was much appreciated.

In the middle of August the brigade moved farther west, and the Regiment found itself billeted in Noordpeene, east of Cassel, where mild polo in the brigade tended to enliven the dullness of our days.

On the 4th September the horses were sent up for the digging party, which rejoined next day. Intensive training at once commenced, and continued until orders arrived on the 20th for a move the next day.

The Regiment concentrated at l'Hey cross-roads at 1.30 p.m., and marched to the brigade rendezvous at Nieppe church, leaving there at 2.45 p.m. Passed the 7th Cavalry Brigade, which was taking over our late billets. There was great secrecy about our move, no one knew whither we were bound. Order of march: 3RD Hussars, Oxford Hussars, 6th Dragoon Guards. The A Echelon marched with the brigade, but B Echelon was directed to Quiestede, and regiments were informed that they would not see it again. As this information was received after turning out a certain amount of annoyance was caused, for certain things were packed in B Echelon which should have gone with the Regiment. Before leaving Noordpeene each squadron arranged for a room in the village in which to store any superfluous kit of officers and men. The brigade marched via Wardrecques, Couchie d'Ecques, Marthes, and billeted between the latter village and Enquin les Mines, which was the billet of the 3RD, the 10th Hussars leaving it earlier in the day. It was a poor billet, practically

a bivouac ; 6 o'clock saw the Regiment settled in, and A Echelon arrived at 8.30 p.m. The newly formed brigade machine-gun battery was broken up and distributed amongst the regiments of the brigade ; this brought the Regiment's machine-gun section up to four Vickers guns and one Rexer rifle ; the latter, an automatic rifle, had been lent to the 3RD by Major-General the Hon. Cecil Bingham.

The 22nd and 23rd were spent at Enquin les Mines. Despite all endeavours to keep the object of the present manoeuvres secret, it was quite understood by all ranks that the old hope of a cavalry gap was at last probable, with the natural result that an extraordinary state of keenness pervaded the Regiment, in the hope that we were once again to come into our own, and that the monotony of trenches and digging parties was a thing of the past. Every man and horse, not actually cripples, were sent up from the B Echelon. During the night the Guards and 24th Divisions passed through, going up to the front to the battle of Loos. The country about our billets was stiff with partridges.

At 6.15 p.m. on the 24th the Regiment marched to the brigade rendezvous at Cuhem, whence the brigade marched to Fiefs, and billeted in that village with "J" Battery, arriving at 9 o'clock on the 25th September ; the regiments were ordered to each prepare a squadron, ready to move light upon a special mission. "B" Squadron, Major H. Combe, as senior squadron, was selected in the 3RD. The squadron was prepared to go off upon an independent mission, with practically stripped saddles—no wallets, great-coats, haversacks, waterproofs, etc. ; and only the remaining portion of the day's food was to be taken. Two full bandoliers were to be carried by each man, and complete pioneer and demolition equipment was to be carried on pack-horses, and a few spare horses were to be led. At 2.15 p.m. the brigade concentrated at Pernes, and from there marched via Auchel and Lozinghem to a wood just north of Marles les Mines, which was reached about 9 p.m. There the 2nd Cavalry Division bivouacked after a somewhat congested march, in which our division, the 1st Cavalry Division, and



the Guards Division were marching along the same road. A wet and cold night, which the Regiment spent in a ploughed field, moving into the shelter of the wood before daylight to escape aerial observation.

The following message was published from Sir John French :

“ Chief wishes troops to be informed that he feels confident that they will realize how much our success in the forthcoming operations depends upon the individual efforts of each officer, non-commissioned officer, and man. He wishes this to be conveyed to them verbally, and in such a manner as not to disclose our intentions to the enemy. General Headquarters.”

State of the Regiment : 23 Officers, 491 Non-Commissioned Officers and men, 524 Horses. With B Echelon : 1 Officer, 45 Non-Commissioned Officers and men, 28 Horses.

As the Regiment was not actively engaged in the battle of Loos, it is not proposed to go deeply into those operations. Suffice it to say that, behind the attack by the British First Army between La Bassée and Lens stood the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions awaiting the moment when success meant the gap through which they would be hurled upon the beaten Germans. On the British right and behind the Tenth French Army, similarly stood and waited two divisions of French cavalry under General Conneau. Two brigades of the British 3rd Cavalry Division acted as corps cavalry to our First Army, and were engaged in Loos, the only portion of the cavalry which took an active part in the battle.

The 27th and 28th the Regiment spent in the same bivouac, and on both mornings between 4 and 5 the division was turned out, only to be turned in again ; rain fell practically the whole time, and the wood soon became a quagmire. On the 29th the brigade moved to Lières, where all the men were got under cover.

Two officers and a hundred men per regiment from the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions were sent on the 1st October in motor-buses to Vermelles to clear the battle-field, and

repair captured German trenches. Captain Burge and Lieutenant Eastwood were in command of the party from the 3RD. The next afternoon the brigade moved farther west, the Regiment going to Westrehem, a long, straggling village with a bad water supply. At midnight on the 4th the Vermelles working party rejoined the Regiment with the loss of three men killed and two men wounded. The party had been employed in repairing German trenches as far as the present British front line west of Hulluch. Brigadier-General F. Wormald of the 5th Cavalry Brigade, who commanded the detachment from the 2nd Cavalry Division, had been killed.

On the 11th the Regiment was billeted in Norrent Fontes, south of Aires, where also lay the Brigade Headquarters. On the 17th the brigade moved to a widely scattered area, the 3RD in Delette, Carabiniers in Blessy, and the Oxford Hussars in Coyecque. Another move on the 20th found the brigade equally scattered: the Carabiniers in Théroutanne, the Oxfords in Coyecque and Delette, and the 3RD much scattered with Headquarters, the machine guns, and "B" Squadron in Estrée Blanche, "A" Squadron in Serny, and "C" in Enguinegatte. During the month training was actively carried on, especially in bomb-throwing.

In the early part of November the Cavalry Corps moved to winter quarters west of St. Omer. On the 17th the 3RD Hussars marched in heavy snow to billets in the following villages: Headquarters and "C" Squadron in Bayenghem, "A" in Coulomby, "B" in Afferingues, and the machine guns in Seninghem, where all horses and men were comfortably under cover. Brigade Headquarters was at Nielles.

A trench bomb-thrower called a West Gun had been sent to the Regiment for trial. Lieutenant Cliff, the officer carrying out the tests, was very badly damaged by the spring of the gun smashing his face. During November and December a dismounted detachment from the Regiment joined a digging party from the brigade, constructing a portion of a reserve line of trenches near Ebblinghem. In

the Regiment training in bomb-throwing was carried on, football and paper-chases kept everybody fit, and last, but not least, an excellent Christmas dinner brought another year to its close. It would be more correct to say nearly to its close, for on the 31st December a dismounted party left for the trenches.

The following letter was published from the Commander of the Second Army :

“I shall be glad if you will express to the Generals Commanding 1st, 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions, and to Brigadiers and Commanding Officers my thanks for the work done by their officers, non-commissioned officers and men in the Second Army area.

“The entrenchments which they have constructed have strengthened the defences very materially, and all the units of the Second Army thoroughly appreciate and are grateful for the zeal and energy shown by the Cavalry Corps on their behalf.

“(Signed) HERBERT PLUMER, *General.*”

“*Special Order of the Day by His Majesty the King*

““OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND MEN :

“‘I am happy to have found myself once more with my Armies. It is especially gratifying to me to have been able to see some of those that have been newly created. For I have watched with interest the growth of these troops, from the first days of recruit drill, and through the different stages of training, until their final inspection on the eve of departure for the front as organized divisions. Already they have justified the general conviction then formed on their splendid fighting worth.

“‘Since I was last among you, you have fought many strenuous battles. In all you have reaped renown, and proved yourselves at least equal to the highest traditions of the British Army.

“‘In company with our noble Allies, you have baffled the infamous conspiracy against the law and liberty of Europe, so long and insidiously prepared.

“‘These achievements have involved vast sacrifices. But your countrymen, who watch your campaign with

sympathetic admiration, will, I am well assured, spare no effort to fill your ranks and afford you all supplies.

“ ‘ I have decorated many of you. But, had I decorated all who deserve recognition for conspicuous valour, there would have been no limit, for the whole Army is illustrious.

“ ‘ It is a matter of sincere regret to me that my accident should have prevented my seeing all the troops I had intended ; but during my stay amongst you I have seen enough to fill my heart with admiration of your patient, cheerful endurance of life in the trenches : a life either of weary monotony or of terrible tumult. It is the dogged determination evinced by all ranks which will at last bring you to victory. Keep the goal in sight, and remember it is the final lap that wins.

“ ‘ GEORGE, R.I.’ ”

“ ‘ *November 1st, 1915.*’ ”

In a Special Order of the Day, dated the 18th December, 1915, the Commander-in-Chief bade farewell to the Army in the following terms :

“ In relinquishing the command of the British Army in France, I wish to express to the officers, non-commissioned officers and men, with whom I have been so closely associated during the last sixteen months, my heartfelt sorrow in parting with them before the campaign, in which we have been so long engaged together, has been brought to a victorious conclusion.

“ I have, however, the firmest conviction that such a glorious ending to their splendid and heroic efforts is not far distant, and I shall watch their progress to this final goal with intense interest, but in the most confident hope.

“ The success so far attained has been due to the indomitable spirit, dogged tenacity which knows no defeat, and the heroic courage so abundantly displayed by the rank and file of the splendid Army which it will ever remain the pride and glory of my life to have commanded during over sixteen months of incessant fighting.

“ Regulars and Territorials, Old Army and New Army, have ever shown these magnificent qualities in equal degree.

“ From my heart I thank them all.

“ At this sad moment of parting my heart goes out to those who have received life-long injury from wounds, and I

think with sorrow of that great and glorious host of my beloved comrades who have made the greatest sacrifice of all by laying down their lives for their country.

“ In saying good-bye to the British Army in France, I ask them once again to accept this expression of my deepest gratitude and heartfelt devotion towards them, and my earnest good wishes for the glorious future which I feel to be assured.

J. D. P. FRENCH, *Field-Marshal*,  
 “ *Commander-in-Chief, the British Army in France.*”

General Sir Douglas Haig succeeded Sir John French.

## CHAPTER III

1916

THE new year found the Regiment in the same billets in villages just south of the main Boulogne-St. Omer road, a couple of miles west of the town of Lumbres. Headquarters and the Machine Gun Section were at Bayenghem ; " A " Squadron at Coulomby ; " B " at Affringues ; " C " at Seninghem. Brigade Headquarters were south of us still at Nielles-lez-Bléquin, and the other regiments of the 4th Cavalry Brigade, the Carabiniers and the Oxfordshire Hussars, were west of the 3RD.

A hilly, wooded country with the villages sheltered in deep valleys. A pretty area, and well watered by streams. The squadrons were somewhat separated, " A " being nearly three miles from Regimental Headquarters. The men were well housed, but the officers and horses indifferently so.

The strength of the Regiment on the 1st January was 26 Officers, 664 Other ranks, and 619 Horses.

Of these numbers, 13 Officers, 377 Other ranks, and 55 Horses with transport had left Headquarters on the 31st December to form part of the 4th Battalion of the Dismounted Cavalry Division, attached to the First Army.

To turn to the Dismounted Division :

During the winter of 1915-16 the British Cavalry Corps was formed upon an infantry basis for service in the trenches and organized as follows :

The Corps found 1 Dismounted Division.  
Each Division found 1 Dismounted Brigade.  
Each Brigade found 1 Battalion of 3 Companies.  
Each Regiment found 1 Company of 6 Platoons.  
Each Squadron found 2 Platoons.

A dismounted brigade and battalion was known by the number of its mounted division and brigade.

A company consisted of a commander, a second-in-command, 6 platoon officers, and 300 men.

In addition to the foregoing numbers were the machine-gun detachments of the brigades: a complete organization of grenadiers, West Gun and trench howitzer detachments, and a detachment of miners. A suitable organization of transport was arranged.

The commanders of the battalions, brigades, and of the division were taken in turn from the regiments of the mounted brigade, the brigades of the mounted division, and from the three divisions of the Cavalry Corps.

The dismounted division was not called upon for duty until the 31st December to relieve the 41st Infantry Division east of Béthune, from which date the diary of the 4th Battalion of the 2nd Dismounted Brigade commences.

The last day of December saw the companies of the Carabiniers, 3RD Hussars, and Oxford Hussars riding an average eight miles from their respective billets to Desvres railway station, where they formed as the 4th Battalion, under the command of the Headquarters of the Oxford Hussars, the horses being taken home by the led horsemen. The company left billets at 3.30 a.m., and entrained at 7.30 a.m. The train, however, did not start until 9 o'clock, and, creeping along, passed Nelles at 11, and the level crossing between Bayenghem and Affringues (in the 3RD's billeting area) half an hour later; so far, an eight hours' journey, and not yet clear of the Regiment's billets! Lillers was reached at 3 p.m., and there the battalion detrained. Ten motor-buses were waiting to convey the thousand-odd men to billets, with the result that three-quarters of the battalion marched the seven miles to billets in heavy rain. All were in billets in Ligny-lez-Aire by 6.30 p.m. Next day the battalion remained in its quarters, and all hands took the opportunity to well grease their feet. On the 2nd the battalion moved to Béthune in two parties of buses, where the 3RD Hussars company billeted in the

girls' school. On the 3rd the battalion marched to Labourse for the night.

The early hours of the 4th January found the battalion marching to the support system of the front-line trenches. The 3RD Hussars company marched to Vermelles, and went into cellars in that unfortunate little town, while the Oxfords' company moved up to the support trenches in Curly Crescent east of Vermelles. The Carabiniers went to Noyelles in reserve. It was a slow march, with much traffic on the road, and 200 yards' distance had to be kept between companies, as the road was shelled. A further application of grease to their feet was no doubt a blessing to the dismounted hussars. At 4 in the afternoon a working party from the 3RD of one officer and fifty men marched to the front line, and were employed in digging a new front-line trench ; they returned at midnight.

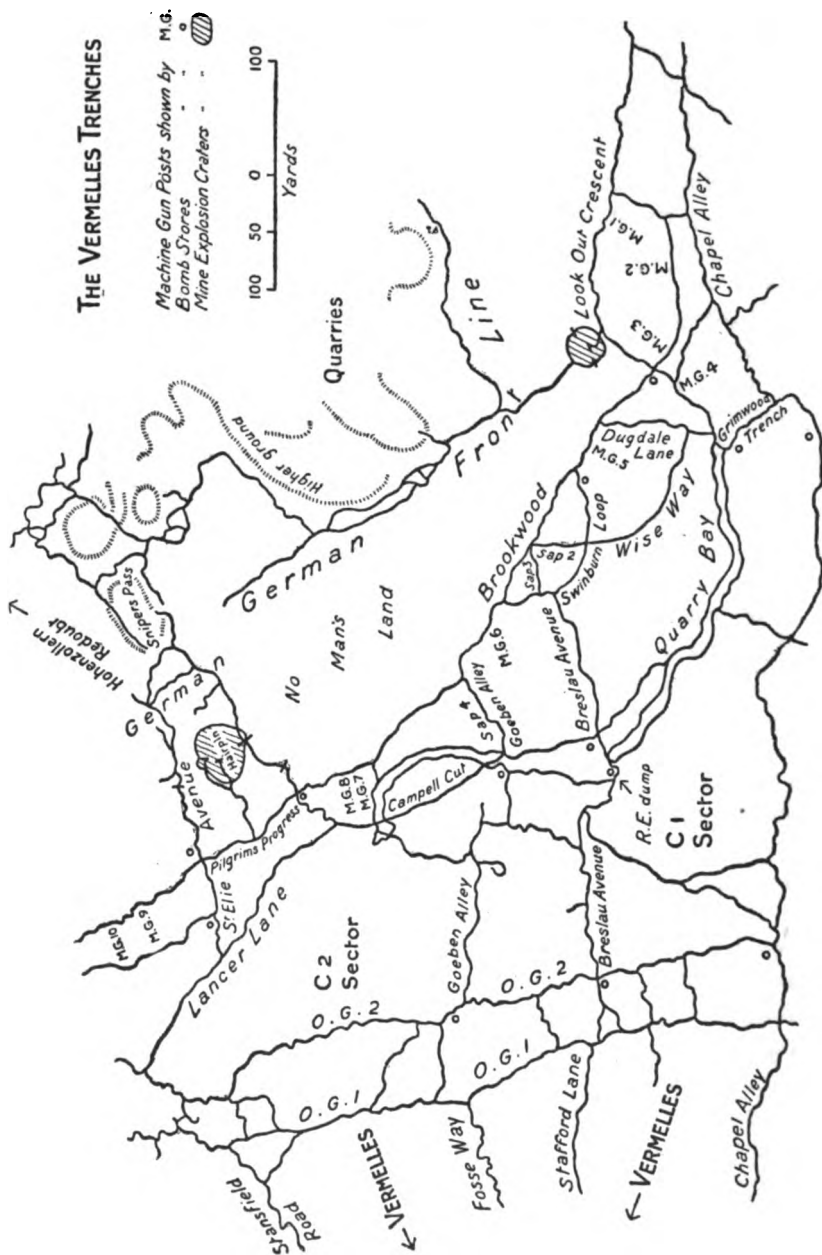
A short description of the situation will not be out of place here. The Dismounted Cavalry Division had taken over the line of trenches from opposite the Hohenzollern Redoubt to the Quarries, east of Vermelles.

The 2nd Dismounted Brigade, consisting of the 3rd, 4th, and 5th Battalions, had the trenches opposite the Quarries for its sector, while the 1st and 3rd Dismounted Brigades extended from the left of the 2nd to the left of the cavalry line at the Hohenzollern Redoubt.

The German line opposite us extended from this redoubt in front of Fosse 8 to the Quarries.

In the 2nd Brigade's sector the village of Noyelles was the reserve billets, and, though considerably knocked about by shell-fire, was more or less intact. The men were in military huts and the officers in huts and cottages in varying degrees of ruin. The considerable village of Vermelles was a complete ruin, scarcely a house standing, while of the church almost nothing was left but the Crucifix. Vermelles had been the scene of a desperate fight between the French and Germans in December of 1914, and had ever since been subjected to severe bombardment. Here, in cellars, lay the supporting troops to the front line.





From Vermelles two communication trenches ran east to the front line opposite the Quarries ; these were called Chapel Alley for "up" traffic and Stansfield Road for "down." Half-way was a supporting line of trench named Curly Crescent, and beyond that came the old British and German trenches of the period of the Loos battle of September last. From them communication trenches named Fosse Way, Stafford Lane, Goeben Alley, Breslau Avenue, and St. Elie Avenue led us to the front-line trenches : The Hairpin on the left, Quarry Bay in the centre, and Lookout Crescent on the right. To look ahead a moment, the 2nd Brigade during its occupation dug a new front-line trench in front of Quarry Bay which straightened the line between the Hairpin and Lookout Crescent. This trench was dubbed Brookwood, a somewhat sinister name, but aptly termed ! Good trenches, the best we have been in, deep, well-made, boarded floors and fairly dry ; but very few dug-outs, and a perfect maze of short trenches connecting the main works. The Hairpin was the most "unhealthy" spot in the system, our grenadiers being, thanks to a mine crater, almost within shaking-hands distance of the German sentries.

At midnight of the 5-6th January the 4th Battalion relieved the 3rd in the front line, a taking-over party, and the grenadiers having preceded the battalion. The 3rd Hussar company took over the right sector (C1) from the 4th Hussars, and that of the Carabiniers the left sector (C2), while the Oxford company remained in support in Curly Crescent. The relief was completed by 5.30 a.m. The 3rd had five platoons in front line and one in close support. The trench held by No. 2 Platoon, being mined by the Germans, was only lightly held. A little shelling and some sniping, but on the whole a quiet day. On the night of the 6-7th our parties were out working in front of the German wire, and about 1 o'clock on the afternoon of the 7th our trench mortars came into action, and drew a heavy retaliation from the German artillery. During the night Second-Lieutenant Stubbs and Privates Rose and Martin of the 3rd were out on

patrol to the German lines. The 5th Battalion relieved the 4th at midnight on the 8-9th January. The relief was completed at 5 a.m., and the battalion went into reserve in Noyelles. The 3RD's company was relieved by that of the Scots Greys. The battalion remained in reserve until the 12th. Practically the whole battalion was taken day and night for fatigue, digging, and wiring parties in the front line—the night parties generally returning about 2 o'clock in the morning. Opportunity was taken of bathing the men in the excellent hot baths fixed up in the cellars of Vermelles. On the 10th the Germans shelled the communication trenches pretty heavily.

The battalion marched from Noyelles at 11.15 on the night of the 12-13th January in pouring rain, and took over the front-line trenches from the 3rd Battalion. The 3RD Hussars company relieved that of the 16th Lancers in the Hairpin on the left; the Oxfords went into Lookout Crescent; the Carabiniers were in support in Curly Crescent. The new line of trench called Brookwood, in front of Quarry Bay, being finished, was occupied. A lively day followed; at 6.30 a.m. our trench mortars opened fire, and the artillery on both sides were busy all day, while the British heavy howitzers shelled the German side of the Hairpin craters. There was also some active grenade fighting, especially at the Hairpin. The 14th was another day of shelling, chiefly on the part of the Germans, and a certain amount of activity amongst the trench mortars and grenadiers of both sides. The 15th and 16th were quiet days of intermittent shelling, and on the night of the 16th the 5th Battalion relieved the 4th, which went into reserve, with the Carabiniers in Vermelles, and the 3RD and Oxfords in Noyelles. The Scots Greys took the place of the 3RD in the Hairpin.

The Headquarters of the Carabiniers arrived from the led horses on the 17th, and took over the command of the battalion, relieving that of the Oxford Hussars. Vermelles was shelled on the 19th and 20th. The usual working parties day and night were found for the front line, and also

various guards. On the 20th the enemy sprung a mine, but no damage was done.

At midnight of the 22-23rd January the battalion relieved the 3rd Battalion in the front line, the Oxfords going into Lookout Crescent and the Carabinier company into the Hairpin, while the 3RD went into support in Curly Crescent, relieving the 4th Hussars. A bombing fight went on in the Hairpin in the early hours of the morning. During the day the enemy shelled Vermelles and Noyelles, and his trench mortars were active against our front line. The next day the enemy was very active with his rifle grenades and trench mortars. He also demolished a part of a trench in the Hairpin, getting a dozen direct hits upon it with high explosive shells. The new Brookwood trench was reported to have been mined by the Germans, and was therefore only patrolled. A new trench behind it called Swinburne Loop, after the gallant captain of Royal Engineers who designed it, and was killed later in the war, was held in its place. The 3RD's company moved up to the old German line (designated O.G.1) from Curly Crescent, where the 4th Hussars took its place. Our heavies were busy on the German front line. The 24th January saw some heavy shelling, and a good deal of activity amongst the grenadiers and trench mortars. The same trench in the Hairpin was again blown up, to the utter disgust of the men who had rebuilt it during the night. The Germans were working hard on the Hairpin crater.

The following routine for the officers and men not on duty may be of interest :

5.45 a.m. to 6.45 a.m.	.	Stand to arms
6.45 a.m. to 8 a.m.	.	Clean and inspection of arms
8 a.m.	.	Breakfast
8.30 a.m. to 12.30 p.m.	.	Work on trenches (inside)
12.30 p.m.	.	Dinners
1.30 p.m. to 4 p.m.	.	Grease feet, change socks, work and stand down
4 p.m.	.	Teas
4.30 p.m.	.	Stand to arms
5 p.m. to daylight	.	Work on trenches (outside after dark) : carrying rations, building material, etc.

On the 25th the 4th Battalion, on relief by the 5th at midnight, marched to Noyelles in reserve, the Scots Greys taking the place of the 3RD. During the evening of the 26th the increased activity in the German shelling looked like an attack. The supporting battalion in Vermelles was moved up to the front and the 4th Battalion took its place at 7 p.m., while other troops from farther back were brought up to Noyelles. Considerable shelling on both sides went on all night, but the expected attack did not materialize, and the troops moved back to their original places in the early hours of the morning. The battalion remained in reserve, carrying out the usual fatigues and working parties, while the guns, both British and German, were busy all the time.

At midnight of the 30-31st the battalion moved up to the front line, relieving the 3rd Battalion. The 3RD's company took the place of the 5th Lancers in Lookout Crescent, the Carabiniers went into the Hairpin, and the Oxfords into support in O.G.I. During the morning our trench mortars bombarded the German trench in front of our sector, and were supported by the 4'2's and the guns of "K" Royal Horse Artillery, and the Warwickshire Horse Artillery. The Germans retaliated, considerably damaging Elie Avenue. At 8.30 p.m. there was heavy artillery fire on our right, and a little later our machine guns opened indirect fire on the German lines, which were at once lit up by many Very lights. The mining officer reported the probability of a German mine going up in or near our lines in the near future. The weather continued fine. The 31st and the 1st of February were quiet days. During the night a party of Germans endeavoured to approach Brookwood trench, and were quickly sent back by the 3RD's 5th Platoon.

After a comparatively quiet night, word reached us that our howitzers were going to shell the German positions in front of the Hairpin and Lookout Crescent; the garrisons of the front trenches were consequently withdrawn. The shelling commenced at 1.10 p.m., and drew a vigorous

retaliation, in which Quarry Bay suffered heavily; but luckily we had no troops there. At 8.45 p.m. a British mine between the right and left legs of the Hairpin was blown up, the trenches for a hundred yards on each side of it being previously cleared of troops. The 12th Lancers' grenadiers, who had relieved those of the Carabiniers earlier in the day in advance of the battalion relief, at once rushed forward, and occupied the flanks of the crater caused by the mine, and commenced a bombing fight with the Germans. Two platoons of the Carabiniers, under the direction of Captain Swinburne, R.E., immediately commenced digging saps connecting the newly formed crater with our trenches, and a new trench up to it between the Hairpin legs, while our artillery put up an effective barrage. The near lip of the crater was some 30 or 40 yards from our trenches. About 7,000 lb. of gun-cotton was used in the explosion. By 10.30 p.m. everything was quiet again, and at 2.30 a.m. next morning the 4th Battalion was relieved by the 5th (the 3RD Hussars platoons by the Scots Greys). The battalion went into reserve with the Oxford Hussars in Curly Crescent, the 3RD in the cellars of the Vermelles mine, and the Carabiniers in Noyelles.

On the 4th the Headquarters of the 3RD Hussars arrived from the led horses, and relieved that of the Carabiniers in command of the 4th Battalion, which was quartered in the cellars of the Vermelles brewery. A desperate fight of trench mortars and rifle grenades was going on in the Hairpin. On the 8th, the 3RD's billets in the Vermelles mine were shelled by high explosive, and three direct hits scored on the water-tower. The usual digging and working parties carried on during the period in reserve.

During the night of the 8-9th, the battalion relieved the 3rd Battalion in front line. The grenadiers went up in the afternoon, followed by the Headquarters at 6 o'clock, and the battalion at midnight. The companies left Curly Crescent at half-hour intervals, and the relief was completed by 3 a.m. The 3RD went to the Hairpin, the Oxfords into Lookout Crescent, and the Carabiniers into O.G.1 in support.

The 3RD relieved the 4th Hussars. Brookwood was handed over as having two German mines under it, and Lookout Crescent one; the dangerous elements were consequently only patrolled, and stops of grenadiers were placed at their ends. A platoon of the support was ordered to reinforce the Hairpin every night, and the flanking platoons of the support were to stand to every night, and on the explosion of a mine to at once run up and reinforce both the Hairpin and Lookout Crescent. The Headquarters dugout was some 20 feet under ground, and extremely stuffy. It consisted of a long, narrow, and low room, containing a bunk, a table and some broken chairs, and was approached by a flight of steep steps. And what a scene of devastation! To look over a parapet was a hazardous thing to do, but, in the comparative security of an artillery observation post, a good view of the front line from the Hohenzollern Redoubt on our left to Lookout Crescent could be got. Not a blade of grass—irregular heaps of clay and gravel, and disturbed as an earthquake could not disturb it, while in front of us the body of an officer hanging across the barbed wire in No Man's land told the grim tale. The daily routine reports back to the Brigade Headquarters may prove interesting: first of all, at 4.30 a.m. a telephone message would tell of the situation, and any special items of interest, a similar message would go at 4.30 p.m., at 10 a.m. a casualty report, and at 3 p.m. a written report giving a résumé of all that had taken place during the twenty-four hours.

During the night a German mine went up on our left in the sector of the 1st Brigade. At about 11 a.m. on the 10th Lookout Crescent was considerably annoyed by enemy rifle grenades, and our Horse Artillery guns retaliated, and soon silenced the Germans. At 12 noon a prearranged bombardment by our trench mortars supported by "K," Royal Horse Artillery, and the Warwickshire battery was carried out against the Quarries. It lasted for twenty minutes. One trench mortar got out of order after the first few rounds. During the afternoon the Germans retaliated. The trench mortar affair was under the direction of a cheery

young sportsman, whose voluminous report upon the bombardment pictured it as if it had been carried out by three batteries of 15-inch howitzers. The telephone communication in the battalion, and with brigade headquarters, completely broke down, owing to the shelling, and recourse had to be found in runners. At night a patrol, consisting of Lieutenant Ainger, Lance-Corporal Fowler, and Privates Rose and Martin, all of the 3RD, went out to reconnoitre a German sap leading up to the Hairpin crater. The sap was found to be strongly held and protected by a screen of snipers. The patrol withdrew without casualties. Private Rose was out most nights on patrol, reconnoitring for the 4th Brigade Intelligence staff, and always did very good work. He was at times joined by Private Martin, whose work was also well reported on.

February 11th was a quiet morning, followed at 2.30 by a lively afternoon. The Germans heavily shelled the 4th Battalion sector with every variety of missile—high explosives, trench mortars, rifle grenades, etc. Their liveliness continued until after 5 o'clock. A good deal of damage was done to the trenches, some 50 yards of Pilgrim's Progress being completely demolished, but only three casualties. At dusk a mine was blown up by the Germans in the Hairpin area, accompanied by the usual inferno of bombardment by heavies and trench mortars, the principal damage in our sector again being done in Pilgrim's Progress. The "liveliness" eventually gave way to comparative quiet.

At 1 a.m. on the 12th the 4th Battalion was relieved by the 5th, the Greys taking the place of the 3RD. The battalion handed over the sector with no less than four known German mines under or near our parapet, two of which were known to be tamped and ready for blowing up. These mines were sprung the following night with some losses to the 5th Battalion. The whole battalion remained in reserve in Noyelles, finding the usual working parties amid heavy enemy shelling.

The Dismounted Cavalry Division was relieved during



the 14th and 15th by the 15th Infantry Division, and the battalions returned to their billets and horses. The 4th Battalion left Noyelles at 11.15 a.m. on the former date. To minimize losses from shelling, 200 yards distance was kept between companies and 20 yards between wagons. Just as the head of the battalion commenced its march to Béthune a parting farewell arrived from the Germans, in the shape of three high explosive shells in rapid succession, falling close to the starting-point—a delicate attention and a fitting farewell to our six weeks' intercourse with the Boches on the line.

Béthune was reached at 2 p.m. Many columns of our relieving infantry—wearing steel helmets and goatskin coats, and looking much like the Samurai of Old Japan, but a hard and serviceable-looking lot withal—passed us going up. The battalion spent the night in the orphanage, and at 7 a.m. on a wet and stormy morning entrained for Lumbres, getting there at 11.15 a.m. Our horses met us at the station, and carried us cheerfully back to billets.

Its time in the trenches had cost the cavalry fairly heavy losses in killed and wounded, though the 4th Battalion had luck in this respect, its losses being only seven killed and thirty-eight wounded. These were as follows :

#### OFFICERS

			Killed.	Wounded.
6th Dragoon Guards . . .	.	.	2	—
3rd Hussars . . .	.	.	—	2
Oxford Hussars . . .	.	.	—	—

#### OTHER RANKS

6th Dragoon Guards . . .	.	.	—	10
3rd Hussars . . .	.	.	3	18
Oxford Hussars . . .	.	.	2	8

The following message was received from the Commander of the I Corps :

“ The Dismounted Cavalry Division having gone, I would like them to know how much I appreciate all that they did in the line. They showed a most gallant and cheerful

spirit, kept the Boches under control, and did an immense amount of work on the trenches.

"They set a fine example, and handed over their bit of the line greatly improved and in good order. We are all most grateful for their work.

"(Signed) H. P. GOUGH,  
*"Lieutenant-General, Commanding I Corps."*

The following extracts from a letter to the Commander-in-Chief from Admiral of the Fleet Sir John Jellicoe are of interest :

"I must write these few lines to endeavour to express my thanks, and, indeed, the thanks of all of us in the Grand Fleet, for the splendid treatment which the first batch of officers and men received on the occasion of their visit to the trenches. From one and all comes the same story.

"First, of gratitude for their reception.

"Second, of the loudest praise and enthusiasm for the extraordinary cheerfulness and wonderful spirit imbuing all ranks of the Army under the worst possible conditions.

"I made a stipulation that each officer and man going to France should recount his experiences to his shipmates in a lecture, on return. They are all doing it with great zest, and the one story is of the spirit of your officers and men.

"I feel that you should know the impression created on officers and men, who, themselves, are accustomed to pretty rough conditions.

"It must give a great feeling of confidence to command such men.

"May I take this opportunity of asking if you will let officers and men know how great is our admiration for them, how closely we watch their gallant fight, and how we long to help them.

"The day when we can do so may yet come."

To revert to the horses of the Regiment during this period in the trenches: the departure of the company, and the lending of thirty men to the Oxford Hussars to help in looking after their horses, left our horses at four to a man. There was nothing of particular interest to chronicle during January. The only work possible was the care and exercising

of the horses, and that with so few men was of a strenuous nature. Considering how they were handicapped by the want of individual attention, the horses were not much the worse for their enforced neglect—a fact which redounded to the credit of non-commissioned officers and men in charge of them. On various dates during January and February reliefs of officers and men were sent up to the Regiment's company in the trenches, the reliefs going and returning by rail between Lumbres and Béthune. The weather during the time in the trenches had been wonderfully mild, but in the middle of February it suddenly changed to extreme cold ; snow fell heavily on the 22nd and 23rd, and again on the 25th, followed by a period of hard frost, after which a thaw set in and mild, and even hot, weather prevailed. During the two months, the following reinforcements arrived at Headquarters : 10 officers from the 9th Reserve Cavalry Regiment in Ireland, and 23 other ranks, and 13 horses from the Rouen Base. After the return of the dismounted men cavalry training recommenced, and the remainder of the month was also devoted to getting the horses fit, and the special instruction of the young officers and the non-commissioned officers.

Towards the end of February it was decided to take the machine-gun sections away from the cavalry regiments and to form them into machine-gun squadrons in the cavalry brigades, a squadron to be known by the number of its brigade. The sections of the Carabiniers, 3RD, and Oxford Hussars were consequently transferred to the 4th Machine Gun Squadron, which was placed under the command of Captain J. C. Petherick of the 3RD Hussars ; Captain Petherick commanded the squadron during the greater part of the war. The squadron was billeted in Affringues—our " B " Squadron moving to Bayenghem to make room for them. By this transfer 3 officers, 72 other ranks, and 101 horses were struck off the strength of the Regiment on the 28th February.

March came in like a lamb, but on the 6th, 7th, and 8th the warm, sunny days gave place to heavy falls of snow.

This was followed by sleet, and an easterly wind, which on the 12th changed to delightful spring weather and a hot sun.

The 6th of March saw the end of the Cavalry Corps. The Corps Staff was scattered to the four winds of heaven, and the cavalry divisions were posted to the armies, our 2nd Cavalry Division being attached to the Second Army.

On the 8th, hearing that the late Cavalry Corps Commander, Lieutenant-General the Hon. Cecil Bingham, was leaving for Boulogne and home by motor, the Regiment very gladly fell in with the suggestion that it should line the Boulogne road above our billets, and give our late Commander a surprise, in the nature of a hearty farewell.

The Regiment turned out mounted, and it was worth the cold waiting in the snow to see the General being greeted with waving swords and lusty cheers by the men he had led in his 4th Cavalry Brigade during the strenuous times of the retreat from Mons, the battles of the Marne and the Aisne, and the glorious battles of First and Second Ypres. It was well, too, to reflect that the last regiment of his Cavalry Corps he saw on leaving France was the Regiment he joined as a subaltern in 1882, and of which he had once been adjutant. Those of us who were serving with the Regiment at the time are not likely, either, to forget the Rexer rifle which General Bingham generously lent us.

On the 14th the horses of the 3RD were inspected by the divisional commander, Sir Philip Chetwode, who congratulated the Regiment on their fitness and appearance. The Brigadier, when he had completed his inspection of the squadrons of the brigade, decided that "A" Squadron of the 3RD Hussars was the best turn out in men, horses, and generally serviceable appearance. He ordered the squadron to turn out again on the 15th, and the commanding officers and squadron leaders of the brigade to attend the parade.

Hotchkiss rifles were now to take the place of the Maxims transferred to the machine-gun squadrons; twelve were promised, but only six arrived on the 22nd, two being given

to each squadron. These rifles were to be carried on packs, and an ammunition pack-horse was allowed for every two rifles.

On the 24th and 25th heavy snow-storms again visited us, and the weather remained wet and cold to the end of the month. Throughout the month the squadrons were engaged upon mounted and trench training, and daily the inhabitants of our peaceful valley were treated to the continuous explosions of bombs and rifle grenades.

The reinforcements received from the base during the month were 25 other ranks and 25 horses, which brought the strength of the Regiment to 28 officers, 591 other ranks, 535 horses.

On the 10th March the British Commander-in-Chief sent the following telegram to General Joffre, commanding the French Armies :

“ While deploring the loss of gallant Frenchmen in the great battle still raging, the British Army desires to assure you of its admiration for the heroic performances of the French Army round Verdun, where Germany has chosen to break her strength in vain against the unconquerable soldiers of France.”

General Joffre replied as follows :

“ The French Army thanks the British Army for its expression of hearty good-will, which it has been kind enough to address to us while the great battle of Verdun is still in progress. In its fierce struggle the French Army is confident that it will obtain results from which all the Allies will reap an advantage. It remembers also that its recent call on the comradeship of the British Army met with an immediate and complete response.”

The Regiment, having to clear out of its billets to make room for units of the 34th Division, moved as follows : Headquarters and “ C ” Squadron to Escoeuilles, “ B ” to Surques, and “ A ” to Henneveux, the latter billet being some five miles from Regimental Headquarters. The move was carried out on the 9th. Here the Regiment remained

until the 28th, many miles from the rest of the brigade, and carrying on such training as the cultivated land allowed.

On the 28th the Regiment marched to Bonningues-les-Ardres, Clerques, and Guémy. From those villages it exercised for two days on the Second Army training ground north-west of Wisques.

On the 1st May the Regiment marched back to its billets, and on the 3rd, while "A" Squadron remained at Henneveux, Headquarters and "C" moved to le Wast and "B" to Bellebrune and Alinethun to make room for the rest of the brigade moving farther west. Nothing of note until the 16th. On two days the Regiment rode down to the sea at Wimereux, carrying out schemes on the way—also a Regimental horse show at le Wast. On the 17th the Regiment marched to the southern end of the Second Army training area, and bivouacked in the Forêt Nationale de Tournehem and exercised during the next two days in the training area, returning to billets on the 20th. On the 22nd the Regiment marched back to bivouac in the Tournehem forest, and next day joined in a brigade exercise on the training area—also an exercise of crossing an enemy trench line, a most successful operation, all three squadrons and four Vickers guns getting through the wire, and crossing the trench system in thirty-five minutes; but there were no bullets, or, even more to the point, an enemy artillery barrage! Then back to billets.

Orders were received on the 4th June for the Regiment to camp between Audresselles and Ambleteuse; and the squadrons marched the next day, the camp was some seven miles north of Boulogne. The morning of the 6th was spent in regimental drill on the sands; and how horses and men delighted once more in the stretch of a good gallop! The afternoon was devoted to dismounted work amongst the sand-dunes. At 6 in the evening came the inevitable motor-cycle despatch rider, and the message he bore was to return to le Wast immediately, as the dismounted brigade had to turn out. The squadrons saddled up, and the Regiment was about to move off, when the whirr of a motor-cycle

announced the approach of another despatch rider, whose orders told us to stay where we were. A bathe in the sea did the Regiment good in the early morning, followed by mounted drill on the sands. The squadrons had just returned to camp when another whirring motor-cycle dashed up with the news that the Regiment was to return to le West at once, where orders would await it for the despatch of the dismounted company. The camp was left standing, and the squadrons were back in billets by 4.30 p.m., and the dismounted company away in the lorries to join the 4th Battalion by 8 p.m. The battalion, with the exception of the 3RD's company, had already joined the 2nd Dismounted Brigade at Reninghelst, south-west of Ypres, the brigade being under the orders of the Canadian Corps. While the company went by lorries, the wretched transport, having done fourteen miles from camp, started on its thirty-seven miles march to St. Marie Cappel, *en route* to Reninghelst. The company went up 240 strong under Captain Clarke and Lieutenant Whiston.

On the 9th, on receipt of sudden orders, Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox and Lieutenant and Adjutant Bell motored to Locre and took over the command of the Kemmel Hill defences. The garrison and working parties on the hill consisted of 600 cavalymen from the 2nd Cavalry Division, the 4th Royal Fusiliers, 1st Northumberland Fusiliers, an entrenching battalion, the Monmouthshire Engineers, and a machine-gun squadron of twelve guns. Major Du Pre took over the command of the details and horses at le West, his grooming strength being five horses to a man, and this with all staffs cut down to a minimum—exercising, grooming, and grazing were a problem !

On the 19th the whole of the Regiment was gathered together again at le West, and warning orders were received for a move next day. The dismounted brigade had been in reserve to the Canadian Corps, but had not been engaged.

At 9 p.m. on the 20th the 4th Cavalry Brigade left its rendezvous at Bayengham, and marched via Arques to billets in the Ebblinghem area, the 3RD reaching Wallon

Cappel at 2.45 a.m. The Regiment joined the brigade at 9 p.m. next day, which marched via the Nieppe Forest to a billeting area about Neuf Berquin, the 3RD arriving at its billets at 12.30 a.m., and taking over its old quarters just north of Doulieu, which it had left fourteen months ago.

There was nothing much to chronicle for the remainder of the month; the Regiment stayed in billets, and from the 26th it was standing to at five hours' notice. On the 27th one officer and forty-six other ranks per regiment from the 2nd Cavalry Division were engaged making a branch railway line towards Ploegsteert from the main line near la Crèche.

The following telegram was published to the armies on the 6th :

“ By His Majesty's commands the following order has been issued to the Army. The King has learned with profound regret of the disaster by which the Secretary of State for War has lost his life, while proceeding on a special mission to the Emperor of Russia. Field-Marshal Lord Kitchener gave forty-five years of distinguished service to the State, and it is largely due to his administrative genius and unwearying energy that the country has been able to create and place in the field the armies which are to-day upholding the traditional glories of our Empire. Lord Kitchener will be mourned by the Army as a great soldier, who, under conditions of unexampled difficulty, rendered supreme and devoted service both to the Army and the State.

“ By Command of the Army Council,

“ R. H. BRADE.”

Until the 30th July the Regiment remained in the vicinity of Doulieu. While the Somme was raging with its opening battles, there was nothing of importance in this area beyond trench raids, heavy shelling and much aeroplane activity. Another working party of an officer and fifty-six men was detached to Locre. During our stay in Doulieu the Regiment stood in readiness for a brigade concentration, to act either mounted or dismounted, to the north-east, east, or south. The division during this period was in reserve to the First and Second Armies. On the 31st the regiments of the 4th Cavalry Brigade marched independently to a new



billeting area. Regimental Headquarters and "B" and "C" Squadrons of the 3rd were about le Tir Anglais with "A" Squadron at la Rue des Morts in the Forêt de Nieppe. Brigade Headquarters and the Carabiniers were about Borre and the Oxfords at Morbecque. During the month the health of the Regiment was as usual very good, and the horses in excellent condition. A detachment of 1 officer, 11 other ranks, and 13 horses of the Australian Light Horse was attached to the Regiment for instruction in the Hotchkiss rifle.

August was spent in the same billets, and, owing to the absence of the working parties, nothing much could be done beyond the care of the horses. These parties had been reorganized in the division, and those found by the 4th Cavalry Brigade were the "A" and "E" parties, to which the Regiment sent the following numbers:

"A" party, 3 officers, 133 other ranks. Attached to V Corps. At la Crèche.

"E" party, 2 officers, 150 other ranks. Attached to V Corps. At Nieppe."

There were some men wounded with these parties, but no men killed.

SPECIAL ORDER OF THE DAY BY GENERAL SIR DOUGLAS  
HAIG, COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF, BRITISH ARMIES IN  
FRANCE.

"It is two years since the British Army entered on the greatest struggle in the history of the world against the most formidable fighting machine that has ever been created—a machine fashioned by the unceasing effort of many generations for the deliberate purpose of imposing on all nations the will of one, regardless of justice, and of the sufferings to be imposed on humanity.

"Originally small in numbers, but constant in purpose, our Army has fought on during these two strenuous years determined to play a part worthy of our race in the achievement of final and complete victory.

"For two years the utmost efforts of a skilful, determined and well-prepared foe have been foiled by the great fighting

qualities so freely displayed, of discipline and pluck, tenacity in defence and vigour in attack, steady and patient effort in training for a new and most trying style of warfare, and endurance and cheerfulness in all circumstances, however difficult.

“By these means time has been gained for forming great new armies during the progress of a great war, a task to which the united efforts of the British Empire have been devoted.

“The fighting value of these new armies has been displayed to the enemy, and to the world, during the last few weeks in which the enemy’s front has been pierced, and he has been driven back from two of his most carefully prepared systems of defence.

“The third year of the war opens brightly for us.

“With his self-confidence rudely shaken, forced to defend himself on every side against the simultaneous and vigorous offensive of all the allied armies, suffering reverses on every front, the enemy, though he still fights strongly, fights no longer with the belief of two years ago in his power to impose his will on the human race, but in a desperate effort to save himself from utter defeat and from the punishment he has merited. However severe the efforts that still lie before us, our worst difficulties have already been overcome.

“Strong in numbers, well provided with munitions and reserves of all kinds, confident in the justice of our quarrel, and strengthened by the consciousness of what has already been accomplished, and by the war experience gained, our fight now is not for time, but for victory.

“The qualities that have brought us through the past two difficult years successfully will enable us to accomplish what still remains to be done, and to take our full share in securing the ultimate complete triumph of the Allied cause.

“D. HAIG, *General*.

“GENERAL HEADQUARTERS,

“4th August 1916.”

Soon after the above the following Special Order by the King was issued to the troops :

“OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, AND MEN,

“It has been a great pleasure and satisfaction to me to be with my armies during the past week. I have been

able to judge for myself of their splendid condition for war, and of the spirit of cheerful confidence which animates all ranks, united in loyal co-operation to their chiefs and to one another.

"Since my last visit to the front there has been almost uninterrupted fighting on parts of our line. The offensive recently begun, has since been resolutely maintained by day and by night. I have had opportunities of visiting some of the scenes of the later desperate struggles, and of appreciating to a slight extent the demands made upon your courage and physical endurance, in order to assail and capture positions prepared during the past two years, and stoutly defended to the last.

"I have realized, not only the splendid work which has been done in immediate touch with the enemy—in the air, underground, as well as on the ground—but also the vast organizations behind the fighting line, honourable alike to the genius of the initiators, and to the heart and hand of the workers. Everywhere there is proof that all, men and women, are playing their part, and I rejoice to think that their noble efforts are being heartily seconded by all classes at home.

"The happy relations maintained by my armies and those of our French Allies were equally noticeable between my troops and the inhabitants of the districts in which they are quartered, and from whom they have received a cordial welcome ever since their first arrival in France.

"Do not think that I and your fellow countrymen forget the heavy sacrifices which the armies have made and the bravery and endurance they have displayed during the past two years of bitter conflict. These sacrifices have not been made in vain ; the arms of the Allies will never be laid down until our cause has triumphed.

"I return home more than ever proud of you.

"May God guide you to victory,

"GEORGE R.I."

"August 15th, 1916."

On the 2nd September all the working parties rejoined, and on the 4th orders were received to march to the Somme. The brigade met at its rendezvous at Croix Marraisse, near Haverskerque, at 9.15 a.m. on the 6th, and marched via St. Vénant, Busnes, and Lillers to billets about Burbure,

the 3RD being in Burbure; *pavé* roads all the way. The whole division was on the move, and the Second Army Commander, Sir H. Plumer, met the different brigades at various points to wish them God-speed on leaving his army—the 4th Cavalry Brigade he saw just south of Busnes.<sup>1</sup>

The brigade was at its rendezvous at Raimbert at 8.35 next morning, and continued its march by Pernes and Eps to Anvin, where the 3RD settled down. Starting from Bermicourt at 8.55 a.m. on the 8th, the march went on through Incourt, Wail, Erquières, to a billeting area between Fontaine-l'Étalon and the river Authie, the Regiment being in very crowded billets in Boufflers, just south of the river. A lovely day and a pleasant march of some twenty miles over a rolling country. On the 9th was a halt and a brigade training scheme. The next day the regiments were on the move again, and, moving in line, carried out what training the crops allowed, while marching to an area east of Auxi-le-Château. The 3RD spent the night in Nœux. The brigade rendezvous the following day was at Bealcourt, and 6.55 a.m. saw the regiments marching via Heuzecourt, Bernaville, Berneuil, Pernois on the river Nièvre—where they halted to water and feed—to Vignacourt, where the whole brigade went into close billets, and where were also the Divisional Headquarters. Leaving Flesselles at 2.5 p.m. on the 12th, the route of the brigade was by Bertangles, Allonville, Querrieu to a bivouac on the high ground north of the junction of the rivers Ancre and Somme, near the village of la Neuville. The 2nd Cavalry Division was now concentrated, as was the 1st Cavalry Division which was in bivouac a little west of the 2nd. The 3RD and both Indian Cavalry Divisions too were on their way up. A wet night without tents—a few did arrive about midnight.

On the 13th the division halted. The brigadiers and commanding officers motored via Albert to Mametz; here the cars were left, and the party reconnoitred the cavalry track, which was being prepared through the front lines. It was followed through the remains of Montauban to the

<sup>1</sup> Steel helmets had by now been issued to all ranks.

north-west point of what had once been the village of Longueval. Here compass bearings were taken across the German lines to Flers and Geudecourt. The party was shelled, but there were no casualties. Later in the day all the squadron leaders of the division were taken up in motor-lorries, and also walked the track.

On the 14th the Hotchkiss rifles were made up to twelve per regiment, and green flares for communication with aeroplanes were received. While the 4th Cavalry Brigade stood fast, the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades moved on to Bray-sur-Somme, and the 1st Cavalry Division to Carnoy.

On the 15th the brigade marched to a bivouac just south-east of Dernancourt on the Ancre. B Echelon was left at Bonnay, and with it the seconds in command of regiments and squadrons to replace casualties amongst leaders.

The five cavalry divisions were placed as follows :

1st Cavalry Division between Carnoy and Maricourt.

2nd Indian Cavalry Division near Mametz.

2nd Cavalry Division : 4th Cavalry Brigade near Dernancourt, 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades near Bray-sur-Somme.

1st Indian Cavalry Division south of Dernancourt.

3rd Cavalry Division near la Neuville.

From 10 a.m. the brigade was standing to at half an hour's notice.

The general plan of the attack by the Fourth Army in to-day's battle, was to secure the quadrilateral Morval, Lesbœufs, Gueudecourt, Flers, and the attack was to be carried out by nine divisions of the III, XIV, and XV Corps. After the infantry had secured this line the cavalry would be sent through to seize and hold the line le Transloy-Bapaume. The Reserve Army was on the left of the III Corps. The French I Corps was attacking east of Combles, and after the capture of Morval by the British, the French objective would be Saily-Saillisel, which would protect the British right. The first task of the cavalry was to occupy positions east of the Péronne-Bapaume road, which was the direction from which German reinforcements

might be expected ; the capture of hostile guns was made of special importance.

The 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Cavalry Divisions and the 1st and 2nd Indian Cavalry Divisions were grouped as a Corps under the command of Lieutenant-General C. Kavanagh, the Corps being placed at the disposal of the Fourth Army Commander. The tasks allotted to the cavalry divisions were as follows :

“ 1st Cavalry Division, moving by the prepared route north of Leuze wood, was to seize the villages Rocquigny and Barastre, with a zone of reconnaissance between Vélú (exclusive) in the north to Fins in the south, and the destruction of the railway just north of Etrécourt.

“ 2nd Indian Cavalry Division moving by the prepared route east of Delville wood to seize the line Villers-au-Flos-Reincourt-Bancourt, with a zone of reconnaissance between Vélú (inclusive) in the south and Beugnatre in the north, and the destruction of the railway junction at Vélú.

“ 2nd Cavalry Division after the 2nd Indian Division commenced to move up to Mametz, and then, moving by the prepared route west of Longueval, it would occupy the high ground north of Bapaume, with a zone of reconnaissance in the country west of the line Bapaume-Noreuil, and the destruction of the Cambrai-Boyeselles line.

“ 3rd and 1st Indian Cavalry Divisions were in reserve. During the advance of the cavalry, certain distant billets and villages were to be kept under the fire of the Fourth Army Artillery.”

The attack not succeeding to the extent of a break through, the order to stand to was cancelled, and while the 2nd, and 1st Indian, Cavalry Divisions remained in their bivouacs, the remainder of the cavalry was sent back. The two divisions remaining daily found two mounted squadrons at the disposal of the front line. B Echelon rejoined. The weather turned into heavy rain, and the bivouacs and horse-lines got into a shocking condition.

On the 25th the Fourth Army, in conjunction with a French army on its right and the Reserve Army on its left, attacked the line Morval-Les Bœufs-Gueudecourt. In

the event of success the 2nd, and 1st Indian, Cavalry Divisions were to move forward and seize the villages of Thillooy and Ligny-Thillooy. Again the cavalry was not called upon. At 9 p.m. a German aeroplane dropped two bombs into the bivouac of the 3RD Hussars. One bomb dropped into "A" Squadron, killing No. 26391 Private W. Law, mortally wounding No. 7576 Private A. Rainbird, and wounding half a dozen others, while ten horses were killed and destroyed and fifteen wounded.<sup>1</sup> On the 27th the Indian Division was ordered back, leaving only the 2nd Cavalry Division, which came under the orders of XV Corps. For the remaining days of the month the 4th Cavalry Brigade found a mounted squadron at the disposal of the front line. "C" Squadron of the Regiment was on this duty on the 29th, and leaving its bivouac at 5 a.m., marched to Fricourt, where it remained standing to until 6 p.m., when it returned to bivouac.

The cavalry tracks through the trenches for the battle of the 15th were made by a dismounted party of the 2nd Cavalry Division, who began work on the 10th September. The contingent from the 3RD consisted of one officer and sixty-five other ranks. In this work they were repeatedly under fire and suffered some casualties.

#### STRENGTH

	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
At Regimental Headquarters	27	501	551
Working party, etc.	3	87	12
Total	30	588	563
Reinforcements from Base	1	24	31

None of us are likely to forget the dull monotony of October and the utter discomfort of our water-logged

<sup>1</sup> Someone was singing just before the bomb dropped. From the inner darkness of a bivouac shelter could be heard the refrain,

"Fifteen men on a dead man's chest,  
Yo! Ho! Ho! and a bottle of rum.  
Drink and the devil did for the rest,  
Yo! Ho! Ho! and a bottle of rum."

It is extraordinary how the strains from that sleepy voice, even after these years, brings back to memory the tragic occurrence.

bivouac. The men, with the resourcefulness of war-worn veterans, had made unto themselves all manner of habitations of mud and stone and brick and wood to keep out the pitiless rain—where the material came from it was as well not to inquire, and the officers were not behind-hand in their efforts to keep a dry skin, for round the messes of Headquarters and the squadrons there arose, like the Phoenix, palatial buildings of mud and wood. Mud everywhere, mud up to the horses' hocks, mud to a man's knees, mud in your food, mud in your drink—and because of the mud an utter impossibility of any movement by mounted men.

Working parties were our fate through October on that Somme battle-field. Here are a few of them: An ammunition dump devoid of great interest at Windy Docks one day took 2 officers and 47 men; upon another day the same dump at the same heaven-inspired spot took a similar party; yet another day that dump claimed 4 officers and 154 men. One night a cable was to be buried for the XIV Corps at what had once been the village of Guillemont and 6 officers and 186 men went to bury it; but someone had forgotten the promised tools—some men were wounded, and the party returned in the early hours of the morning. A couple of nights later 2 officers and 101 men again journeyed forth to bury that cable, the tools were there this time, and the cable planted with the loss of some more wounded men. Trônes wood, too, had a dump which asked for 4 officers and 150 men, who rode forth one night only to find that they were not required; but they built a section of a light railway instead, and the mud pulled the shoes off their horses on the return journey. Another party sallied forth to help "J" Battery dig their guns in near Flers. And so on, and so on, the dismounted parties taking a steady toll in wounded.

German aeroplanes worried a bit, but caused no more casualties. The procedure upon the approach of a Boche was for the aeroplane sentry to warn the guard. The trumpeter sounded "Stand to your horses," and the squad-



rons stood to their horses until Fritz had passed, any lights of course being put out.

For an hour and a half on the morning of the 25th, and again for an hour and a half in the afternoon, the village of Dernancourt was shelled by heavy Boche howitzers. The women and children came streaming out of the village towards the 3RD Hussars, and the men of the Regiment of their own accord at once turned out to their assistance. This act was acknowledged by the French authorities in letters of which the following is a translation :

“The Sous-Préfet of Péronne has forwarded me the enclosed copy of a letter from the Interpreter Officer attached to the 2nd Cavalry Division drawing attention to the hospitality extended by the 3RD Hussars to the women and children driven out of Dernancourt by the bombardment which took place on the 25th October last.

“I should be much obliged if you will kindly convey to the British Military Authorities the Civil Administration’s most heartfelt thanks; the latter is much impressed with the sympathy shown to its subjects in this sad occurrence.

“(Signed) THE PRÉFET OF THE SOMME.”

“I beg to inform you that, as a consequence of the bombardment of Dernancourt on the 25th inst. about thirty women, and as many children took refuge towards 5 p.m. in the 3RD Hussars (4th Cavalry Brigade) lines, which happened to be in the immediate neighbourhood. The general commanding the brigade left Adjutant Barraud and his interpreters a free hand in helping, and the refugees were given shelter in tents, and tea and food were served them. The people were subsequently conveyed to Ville-sous-Corbis by motor-lorries.

“(Signed) J. CHANGEUX.”

Lieutenant-General Kavanagh, Cavalry Corps Commander, inspected the bivouacs of the 2nd Cavalry Division on the 3rd November, and expressed himself pleased with the condition of the 3RD’s horses; but was not so well satisfied with the muddy state of the camp!

About midnight on the 6th a series of enormous explosions in the direction of Bray pulled everybody out of bed. The disturbance lasted about an hour, each explosion being followed by a tremendous flash which lit up the sky for nearly a minute, while a bombardment of anti-aircraft guns provided the music for the entertainment. The sky was a most gorgeous pink. It transpired that a French ammunition dump had been blown up by German aeroplanes.

On the 8th the division left the Somme. The brigade rendezvous was at Morlancourt at 9.35 a.m. The march was via Corbie, Daurs to bivouacs about Bussy. The whole division rode along the same road—order of march, 5th C.B., 4th, and 3rd. Heavy rain. A few tents arrived during the night too late to be put up. The next day's march took us by the northern outskirts of Amiens and along the Somme to bivouacs at Belloy, where a few tents again arrived too late to be of any use. The 10th saw us marching by Flixecourt and Mouflers to bivouacs near Abbeville, the 3RD being at l'Heure, the same remark about the few tents. On the 11th the brigade marched north-east via Argenvillers and Domvast to regimental billets. The 3RD was quartered as follows: Headquarters in the mill at Villeroy-sur-Authie, "A" Squadron and signal troop in Genne-Ivergny, "C" in Vitz-Villeroy, "B" in le Ponchel, being moved a few days later to Boufflers.

The following farewell by the Divisional Commander was issued as a special order in divisional orders on the 8th.

"I am leaving you to-day to take up an appointment in Egypt.

"I shall always be intensely proud of having commanded such a splendid body of men, so typical throughout of all that was best in the old Army.

"The war of trenches has denied to me the honour of leading you in open operations, but when the time comes, as I feel it will, that you will be wanted, I know that you will be ready. It will be a high test, but, knowing you as I do, I am confident as to the result.

"Wherever I go my thoughts will always be with you, wishing you the success and distinction I know you will gain wherever you are employed.

"(Signed) PHILIP W. CHETWODE,  
"Major-General."

Major-General W. H. Greenly succeeded to the command of the 2nd Cavalry Division.

The Regiment was now quartered in comfortable billets in a pretty and hilly country peopled to a certain extent by foxes, badgers, hares, and partridges; Sergeant Flinders's lurchers unfortunately killed a sow badger, and while the strict regulations against hunting and shooting prohibited any sport, an occasional hare was foolish enough to get embroiled with the numerous dogs of all sorts, sizes, and breeds which followed the fortunes of the Regiment. The "Badger Valley," some of us will remember, was a perfect maze of earths.

For the rest of November and December there is not much to note. By the 5th December all the pack-horses had rejoined from the Somme accompanied by the following letter from the III Corps:

"I am directed by the Corps Commander to forward for your information his appreciation of the work performed by the personnel and horses attached to the divisions of this corps, for the purpose of pack transport. The work they have performed in this area has materially assisted the delivery of supplies of all natures, thus facilitating the work the forward troops have been called upon to perform. The pack work was undoubtedly arduous, but the rapid adaptation of pack transport and the quick assimilation of the uses to which pack transport has been put has been a credit to all those engaged in this service."

On Christmas Day the squadrons sat down to an excellent dinner, with the customary visit by the Colonel, followed by concerts, and all the officers dined together in the evening at Regimental Headquarters. A troop football league was instituted, which became an annual occurrence until

the Regiment returned home. In the matter of equipment, field service boots were issued to the whole Regiment, and ankle boots and puttees were withdrawn from the men. Towards the end of the year there was a good deal of frost and snow. A thorough grounding in individual training was carried on.

Special Orders of the Day on Christmas Day :

*From General Sir Douglas Haig*

“I desire to convey to all ranks under my command my hearty good wishes for Christmas and the New Year. It is, indeed, a privilege to command such officers and such men, and I feel confident that the magnificent qualities they have already shown in the face of the enemy will carry our arms to ultimate victory.”

*From His Majesty the King*

“I send you, my sailors and soldiers, hearty good wishes for Christmas and the New Year. My grateful thoughts are ever with you for victories gained, for hardships endured, and for your unfailing cheeriness. Another Christmas has come round, and we are still at war ; but the Empire, confident in you, remains determined to win.

“May God bless and protect you.

“GEORGE R.I.”

It was in 1916, July I think, that the famous periodical *The White Horse* first appeared. Its numbers only ran to two editions ; the stress of war stopped it. The censor, too, had something to say.

## CHAPTER IV

1917

WITH the dawn of another year arose the hope that 1917 would prove less monotonous than its predecessor. It began badly, for on the 7th January the 4th Cavalry Pioneer Battalion (so called because it was formed by units of the 4th Cavalry Brigade) was ordered to Savy. The title of this new organization explains its existence—digging! Spade and shovel instead of sword and lance. Small wonder that the eyes of cavalry officers turned longingly to their comrades of the infantry; so much so that the transfer of cavalry officers for temporary employment with the infantry was ordered to cease, and the practice of inviting them to do so was forbidden by General Headquarters. It was about time, too, for the well-being of the cavalry service. Meanwhile, the 3RD's company of four officers and 240 men under Captain C. F. Clarke journeyed off to Savy with the remainder of the 4th Battalion. Practically all training was thereby suspended, every energy being devoted to keeping the horses fit with an average of one man in charge of three or four horses. Another annoyance was the reduction of the horses' forage, the oat ration being reduced to 9 lb. and hay to 8 lb. The first half of February was accompanied by heavy snow and hard frost.

The Regiment marched to a new area on the 28th. Riding via Wadicourt, Ligescourt, and Vron—the majority of the horses being led, owing to the absence of the pioneer company—Headquarters, signal troop, and "A" Squadron established themselves in Villers-sur-Authie. "B" Squadron was at Vercourt and "C" divided itself between Larronville, Flandre, and Cantereme. The remainder of the brigade were about Quend, Jeune, and Vron.

The Pioneer company rejoined on the 4th March, and

from that date until the end of the month the squadrons were strenuously engaged in cavalry training. The Regiment was equipped with the new Hotchkiss pack (Hotchkiss Equipment 1917 pattern)—a great improvement upon the old one. In the sporting world Private Carey of the Regiment won the final of the light weights in the Cavalry Corps boxing championships, and the 3RD Hussars were beaten by the 12th Lancers by five goals to three in the final of the divisional football tournament. During the German retirement in the middle of March the three English cavalry divisions stood fast, the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions being sent up to the front. (The 1st and 2nd Indian Cavalry Divisions were now designated the 4th and 5th.)

Another offensive battle was about to commence, and the cavalry was warned for the "gap." The operations were to be in the neighbourhood of Arras.

The general plan of these operations was :

The First Army was to capture the Vimy Ridge simultaneously with the attack of the Third Army, which was to break through the enemy's defences from Mercatel on the right of its attack to a mile south-east of Thélus on the left. The Third Army was then to capture the Hindenburg Line between Arras and Cambrai, and was to continue to operate towards Cambrai.

Later the Fifth Army was to attack the Hindenburg Line from the direction of Quéant.

These attacks had the further purpose of drawing the enemy reserves, so as to help an attack by the French armies with large effectives, with the purpose of breaking the enemy's line.

For the operations of the Third Army the Cavalry Corps, consisting of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th Cavalry Divisions and the 17th Infantry Division, was to come under the orders of that Army.

The 1st Cavalry Division was placed under the orders of the First Army, while the 5th Cavalry Division was to come under the orders of General Headquarters.

The Cavalry Corps was to closely follow the attack of the Third Army south of the Scarpe, the 2nd Cavalry Division moving on the right and the 3rd Cavalry Division on the left. The 17th Infantry Division was to follow them in close support, while the 4th Cavalry Division was to be in reserve. The mission of the Cavalry Corps was to seize and hold the line Rencourt-Cagnicourt-Dury-Etaing, with a view to further operations towards Cambrai.

The advance of the cavalry to their objectives was to commence as soon as the infantry had gained the passages of the river Cojeul at Héninel and Wancourt, and the high ground at Monchy-le-Preux.

A warning order was received on the 2nd April for the Regiment to move on the 5th. On the 4th a dismounted party of 3 officers and 110 men under Lieutenant Ainger left in lorries for Montreuil, whence they were to go by rail to Pas.

The morning of the 5th saw the Regiment on the move again, and no one regretted it after the inaction of the last few weeks. A short march brought Headquarters and "A" Squadron to Saulchoy, and "B" and "C" to Maintenay, Brigade Headquarters being in Dominois. Supernumerary officers were sent to the base at Rouen. The next day was a halt.

		Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
Total strength with A and B Echelons	.	26	462	537
Strength of fighting troops	.	25	404	477

At 8.30 a.m. on the 7th the Regiment started off to the brigade starting-point, just east of Crecy and its famous battle-field of bygone times. The order of march of the fighting troops was 6th Dragoon Guards, 3RD Hussars, "J" Battery, and Oxford Hussars Riding through Neuilly-le-Dien, Auxi-le-Château and Wavans, the 3RD went on to indifferent quarters in Frohen-le-Petit. The next day found the brigade concentrated at Outrebois in the same order of march—thence via Doullens and Pommerehne to Pas, where the brigade went into bivouac, the horses in the open and officers and men in the wooden hutments of a German



A PRIVATE OF THE REGIMENT IN THE GREAT WAR.  
From a sketch by Captain Adrian Jones, M.V.O.

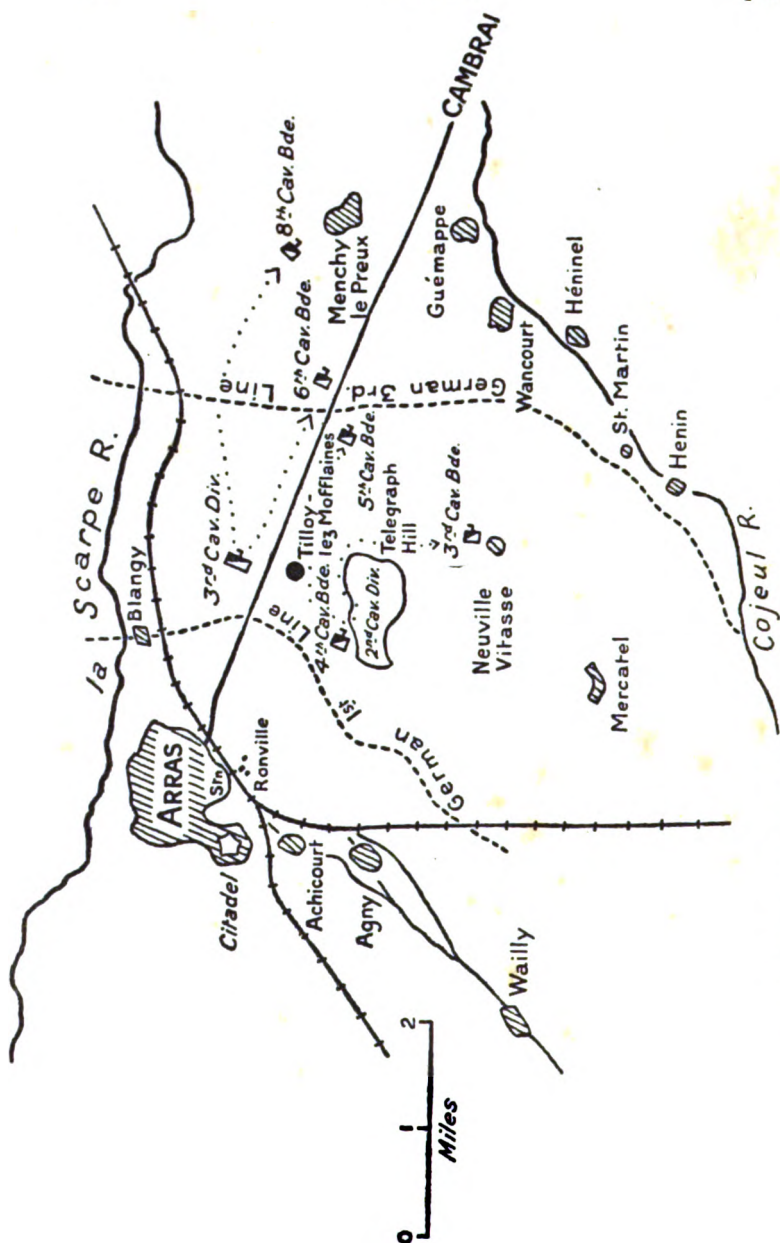




prisoners' cage. The orders for the morrow were to stand to at an hour's notice from 6 a.m.

The Regiment was saddled up and ready to mount at 6 o'clock on the morning of the 9th, Easter Monday. The attack had commenced, and the brigade was some sixteen miles from the battle-field as the crow flies. It was not until 9.30 that orders came to mount and concentrate at the brigade starting-point at St. Amand, whence the order of march was 3RD Hussars, 6th Dragoon Guards, Oxford Hussars, 4th Machine Gun Squadron. The brigade marched via Pommier, Wailly, Achicourt, and joined the "C" cavalry track at Ronville, just south of Arras. Four such tracks had been prepared by cavalry working parties, following the infantry assault across the succession of trench lines. Between Achicourt and Ronville a number of big guns in action on the side of the road were passed. Riding along in a column of half-sections, the cavalry track eventually brought us to a position of readiness on Telegraph Hill, a mile south of Tilloy-lez-Mofflaines. It was rough going that track, and falls were numerous, and why the cavalry columns were not shelled the God of War alone knows. The track had taken us over the British and German front lines, and Telegraph Hill was on the late German second line, but the tide of battle had not yet reached the third German line. At the position of readiness the 4th joined the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades which had preceded us. For the remaining daylight hours the division stood ready to move forward, but it looked as if the attack had been checked. There was some shelling on the division, and a few casualties—it might have been heavy, it was wonderful that it was not. Had there been a heavy bombardment it would have played the devil with the massed division, for, with the attacking infantry so close in front of us, and a long, narrow, and difficult defile in the shape of the cavalry track behind us, there was no room for movement.

There being no water for the horses, orders came at 8 p.m. for the division to move back to Wailly and bivouac. The track on the return journey was a perfect nightmare.



ARRAS, 2ND CAVALRY DIVISION AT THE BATTLE OF THE SCARPE, 1917.

The snow, hail, and sleet of the day had turned the surface into a foot deep of slippery mud ; the narrow plank bridges over the trenches had no side-rails ; it was pitch dark and difficult to follow the narrow track—woe betide the wretched horse and its rider who got a couple of feet off the track, for there were yawning chasms and shell-holes full of water and mud, to say nothing of masses of loose and fixed barbed wire. It was slow work getting along. The half-sections were closed up nose to croup, and, as horses were continually falling and bringing down those behind them, the column was often checked. At length, finding ourselves in the main square of Arras, the Regiment got on to the road to Wailly. There was a bad congestion of traffic of all sorts, and the going was slow. At one point it looked like a permanent block, and the Regiment turned off the road to clear it by going into the fields—a dangerous manoeuvre in the dark with all the wire about, but something had to be done. All went well until warning voices reached us out of the darkness, " 'Old on to your 'orses, lads ! "—then a roar of 4·7's ; it nearly lifted one out of the saddle, it deafened you, and the flashes which lit up the whole place were blinding. We were right under and in front of a battery of 4·7's, and, as bad luck would have it, the head of the Regiment had reached the road again, and found it blocked at this point as well. There in that very unquiet spot we had to sit in our saddles for some time and suffer. Preceding the riot of the guns came the gunners' warning, " 'Old on to your 'orses, lads ! " Some of our horses merely shivered, others were on their hind-legs, while others again attempted back-somersaults and catherine-wheels. After some half-hour spent in agony, blinded and deafened, the congestion on the road slowly moved, and we thankfully joined it. Wailly was reached a little after 2 a.m., and we went into a snowy bivouac.

Next morning, the 10th, the brigade was standing to at an hour's notice from 6 a.m., but it was not until 2 o'clock in the afternoon that the order came to mount, and back along the same track in rear of the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades

to our former position of readiness at Telegraph Hill. By this time the track, with the snow and the columns of horses which had been along it, was a quagmire, and the bridges over the trenches courted disaster. It snowed hard all the afternoon, and the east wind went through everything. At 4.30 p.m. the 3rd Cavalry Brigade moved to Neuville-Vitasse and the 5th to north-west of Wancourt, where, with its horses, it was not far behind the infantry front line; the 4th Cavalry Brigade moved slightly forward and remained in reserve. Monchy-le-Preux, Guémappe, and Wancourt were still in the hands of the enemy. While the two forward brigades stayed where they were, waterless, for the night; the 4th, on that account, was ordered back to Arras. At 7.30 p.m. the brigade started by a different track, which was much in the same vile condition as our own. Our orders were to go into Arras and find water if we could, and be ready to mount at 4 a.m. The railway station was a bad place to make for from a shelling point of view, but still water was bound to be there. On leaving the track the Regiment at once made for it, and after watering the horses settled down in the streets near by for an hour or so of rest, such officers and men not on duty with the horses getting what shelter they could in the ruined houses—they did not give much cover, but were better than the street. Headquarters lay down on the floor of what must have been the drawing-room of quite a good house, everything smashed up except a piano, walls only sufficiently standing to hold up the upper stories; but still it had a roof. At midnight came orders to be back in our old position at 6 a.m., which meant that the Regiment was mounted at 3.30, and had joined the brigade by 4. Bitterly cold.

The brigade returned to its position in reserve near Telegraph Hill, and found that the 5th Cavalry Brigade, which had suffered heavily in men and horses, had been drawn back to a point a little south-east of Tilloy. In the event of an advance by the 4th Cavalry Brigade the brigade order of march was 3RD Hussars, 6th Dragoon Guards,

"J" Battery, Machine Gun Squadron (less 2 sections to each of the leading regiments), Oxford Hussars. Should the advance be on a two regiment front, then the 3RD and 6th Dragoon Guards would be in front, the former on the right, and the remainder of the brigade in rear. As this advance never came off, it is unnecessary to labour the various objectives and further instructions on the other side of the "gap." At 12 noon the brigade relieved the 5th Cavalry Brigade, which came back into reserve. On the fall of Wancourt the brigade was to make its first bound, but the German was still in possession of the village. At 2.30 p.m. came the news of the capture of Wancourt, and the 3RD, as leading regiment, made ready to dash into the blue; but, alas, it was false news, there was to be no gap, and the whole division was ordered back to Wailly at 3 p.m. The attack was held up.

The following is a patrol report by Lieutenant C. L. Huggins, 3RD Hussars:

"On the 11th April 1917 I took over the patrol duty from the 20th Hussars in N.19 (large-scale map reference) at 2.15 p.m.

"The officer I relieved told me that any information I required could be got from the battalion Headquarters of the 1st Gordons, who were in the front line. Leaving my horses in the support trenches, I went to these Headquarters with two men. Outside the dugout I met two officers, who said they were going to attack Wancourt at 2.30 p.m., and, as the Commanding Officer was very busy, I decided to return later.

"I then returned to the support trench, and found battalion Headquarters of the 1st Royal Scots Fusiliers. The Officer Commanding had no information of the situation at Wancourt, but showed me a telephone message from his brigade, stating that Guémappe had been taken during the morning, and that our infantry were pushing on to the wood in 0.19.d.5. I returned to the patrol, and wrote a message to this effect.

"I then went towards Wancourt, and asked all company commanders that I passed for information. They were unable to give me any, as they had only been in the trenches

an hour; they all, however, contradicted the report that Guémappe had been taken. The time was now 3.5 p.m., so I sent a message stating the above.

"I arrived in the front-line trench on the high ground N.W. of Wancourt; there I heard that there had been no infantry activity round Wancourt, but they were expecting to attack soon, they did not know where. Here I met an officer of the Scots Greys, who was also on patrol. He told me there had been no change in the situation round Wancourt, and from the front-line trench I could see no movement. After my arrival in front of Wancourt I intended to send a message, and then to proceed to the trenches in front of Guémappe, but I received a message recalling me before I was able to do this.

"My method of carrying out my mission was as follows—I left my horses under cover in the support trenches. I proceeded with two men to make myself acquainted with the situation from the information gained from infantry officers, and then proceeded to verify it myself."

The Germans had been driven from their first two trench systems, and a good piece of ground had been gained: but the enemy had foiled the break through. The cavalry track was now wellnigh impassable, and to make matters worse were the number of dead horses upon it—horses which had fallen exhausted, and in their weak state prevented by the clinging mud from rising again; a merciful bullet had ended the suffering of many of them. The division reached Wailly about 7 p.m., and went into brigade bivouacs, and men and officers off duty got what shelter they could in the dilapidated village. It was snowing heavily, and the slush in places was well over a man's knees. One recalls a slight difference of opinion as to the ownership of a cottage consisting of two walls and a very small bit, and a quarter of a roof, between officers of the Carabiniers and the 3rd—the matter was amicably settled, and all of them bedded down under the quarter roof, and got well snowed upon. So cold was the night that three of our horses died from exposure, another regiment lost twenty, and yet another fourteen. Midday on the 12th saw the Regiment passing

the brigade starting-point at le Bac du Nord, and marching in the rear of the brigade down the Arras-Doullens road to la Bellevue, where it turned off to Pas, and went into its former bivouac and the German prisoners' cage. A very slow march as we were riding and walking alternate kilometres to save the horses, and much traffic on the road, including an infantry division going up to Arras; by 5 o'clock the Regiment was settled in.

Until the 19th the brigade remained at Pas, our time being mainly devoted to getting the horses round again; but, as they were standing in the open up to their hocks in mud and in continuous rain, it was difficult. The forage ration was raised to 12 lb. of oats and 12 lb. of hay, and horse-rugs were issued.

On the 16th the following telegram was received from the Commander-in-Chief:

"G.O.C. Third Army has informed me of the good work of the troops of the Cavalry Corps engaged in the recent fighting. Please convey to them my congratulations, and especially to those regiments which gave such valuable help in securing and holding Monchy-le-Preux."

The following order was published by the Divisional Commander on the 19th April:

"The difficulties and great continued discomfort entailed by the conditions experienced since the division moved from the Ligescourt area have been met in a spirit of never-failing cheeriness and soldierly determination to make the best of things on the part of all ranks, which is beyond all praise, and has my most sincere admiration.

"The health of the *men*, due to their fitness at starting and their determination not to go sick, does them and all concerned the greatest credit.

"These conditions, however, following on a long period of semi-starvation of the *horses* have very seriously reduced the fighting efficiency of the division as regards mobility, in spite of the determined efforts made by all to reduce the ill effects to a minimum.

"The vile weather we have been having cannot, in the



nature of things, last much longer, and, after the move of the division has been completed, we shall, I hope, be under conditions of quarters, stabling, and forage which will afford every facility for improving the condition of the horses and recovering complete efficiency in every way.

"How long this period of opportunity will last it is impossible to say, but there is no doubt that in a comparatively short time we shall again be required to be at the top of our form in every way, and there is, therefore, not a minute to lose.

"I am perfectly confident that all ranks will thoroughly realize this, and will spare no effort to get things right again quickly.

"It must be a point of honour on the part of every individual to do all that in him lies to complete the efficiency of everything for which he is responsible *in the shortest time possible*.

"I am equally certain that results will very quickly speak for themselves when once the conditions allow, and that the improvement will be rapid beyond all belief.

"(Signed) W. H. GREENLY;

"*Major-General, Commanding 2nd Cavalry Division.*"

It was explained later that the reduced forage ration which had been in existence since the early part of January was largely due to the considerable number of oat ships which had been sunk. The Cavalry Corps lost very heavily in horses at Arras, from sheer exhaustion. This was undoubtedly due to their semi-starvation for a long period before the battle, as stated in the foregoing order.

On the 19th the Regiment marched to Gaudiempré, some three miles north-east of Pas, where all the horses were under shelter in military sheds, and the men in huts with a few in the village. It is noted in an officer's diary on 30th April, "horses which have come on sufficiently are now exercised under saddle, the poorer conditioned ones being still only grazed!"

On the 10th May the Regiment was ordered to move by short marches to another area on the 12th, and on the 11th a dismounted party of a hundred men under Lieutenant Naylor were taken to Hesdin in motor-lorries.

The 12th May found the Regiment on the march again. It left its billets at 7.45 a.m. for the brigade starting-point south-west of Pas, and then with the brigade marched via Thièvres, Marieux, Puchevillers to billets in Talmas, which was reached at 12.15 p.m. Order of march: 6th Dragoon Guards, "J" Battery, Oxford Hussars, 3RD Hussars, 4th Machine-Gun Squadron. Horses in the open and the men in barns. At 6.45 a.m. on the 13th the 3RD moved off to join the brigade via Villers-Bocage, at Molliens-au-Bois, whence in the same order of march the route followed was St. Gratien, Querrieu and Corbie to billets in Fouillois, the horses being watered at Querrieu. The brigade starting-point next morning was at the cross-roads just south-west of the Bois de Vaire, the Regiment starting at 7.40. The 3RD led the brigade by Warfusée-Abancourt and Lamotte to Bayonvillers, where brigade Headquarters and the battery billeted. The following day the Regiment marched at 6.30 a.m. for the brigade starting point, and with the Carabiniers leading, the route followed was Estrées, Villers-Carbonnel, and, crossing the Somme at Brie, turning north-east at Mons-en-Chaussée, thence via Hancourt to Roisel, some six miles east of Péronne. The brigade went into its bivouac at 3 p.m. The 2nd Cavalry Division was now concentrated, the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades north of the river Cologne and the 4th south of it. The dismounted party by rail rejoined. The division was going into trenches. During the march the villages west of the Somme were found completely wiped out by shell-fire—where a village had been was a mass of rubble, while those east of the river, although not so badly damaged by artillery, were in a sad state, and in addition the Germans, in their retirement, had in a spirit of vandalism deliberately cut down all the orchards.

On the 16th, at 7 p.m., the 3RD and "D" Squadron of the Oxford Hussars (Major V. Fleming) paraded dismounted under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox of the 3RD and marched via Saint Emilie and Ronssoy to Lempire. A few limber wagons carried stores and then returned to bivouac, where the horses were left with one man to three

horses under the command of Major Du Pre. At Lempire Willcox's force went into reserve, relieving the 5th Battalion East Lancashire Regiment of the 126th Infantry Brigade. The Carabiniers had left bivouac half an hour before, and had gone into reserve in the quarries south of Ronssoy. The 3RD left bivouac with a strength of :

	Officers.	Other Ranks.
" A " Squadron . . . . .	4	105
" B " Squadron . . . . .	4	105
" C " Squadron . . . . .	4	105
Regimental Headquarters . . . . .	6	25
	<hr/> 18	<hr/> 340
" D " Squadron, Oxford Hussars . . . . .	4	105
	<hr/>	<hr/>

During the day of the 17th the squadrons of the 3RD worked on the Brown Line, making dugouts, while the Oxford squadron was similarly employed at Queuchettes Wood, and at 9.30 p.m. all four squadrons started at intervals to relieve the 10th Manchester Regiment in the Green Line. By 1.10 a.m. on the 18th the relief was completed without casualty.

Description of the 4th Cavalry Brigade sector, which the accompanying sketch will help to explain :

The defences consisted of :

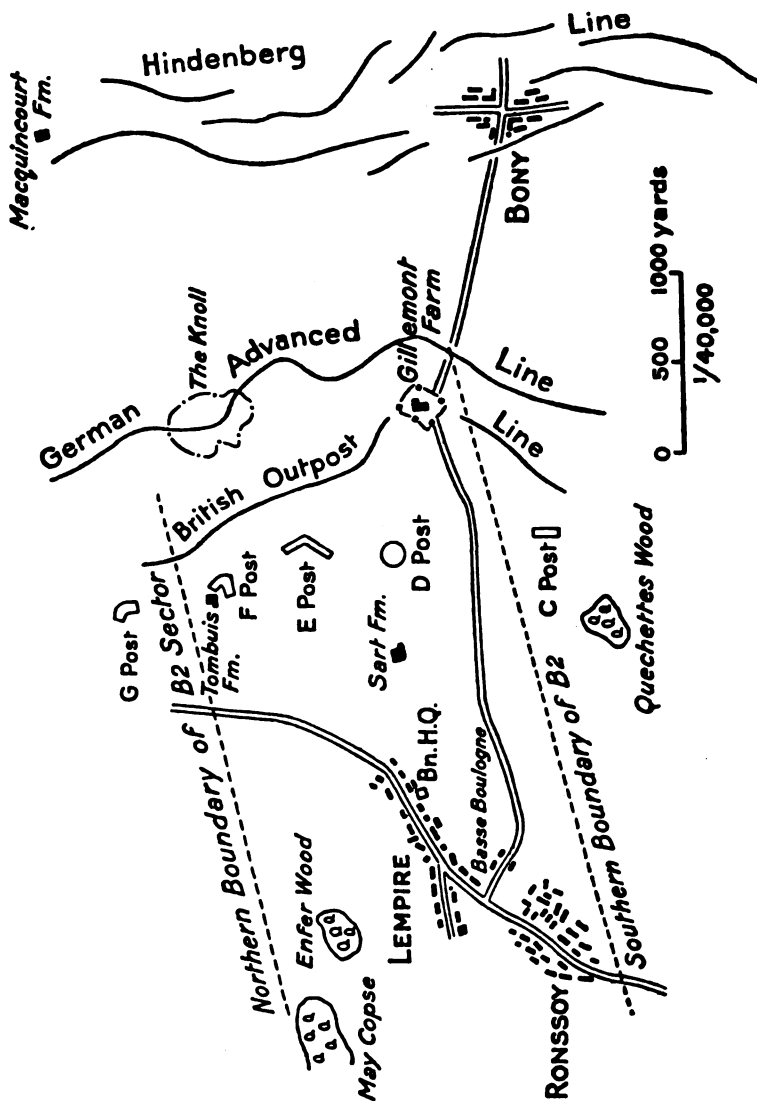
- (a) An outpost line.
- (b) The Green line, which was the main line of resistance.
- (c) The Brown line, which was not yet completed.

The Green line consisted of a series of mutually supporting posts, the intervening ground being defended by wire and the cross-fire of machine guns. The posts were taken over in anything but a good state of defence, and the wiring was indifferent.

The brigade sector was divided into two sub-sectors, which were known as Right sub-sector, or B1, and Left sub-sector, or B2.

B1, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Kirby, C.M.G., 6th Dragoon Guards.

*Outpost line and Green line.*—Each post in Green line occu-



plied by a squadron of Carabiniers. Each squadron furnished its own outpost line.

*Brown line.*—12th Lancers.

*B2*, under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox, C.M.G., 3RD Hussars.

*Outpost line and Green line.*—Each post in Green line occupied by a squadron of 3RD Hussars. Each squadron furnished its own outpost line.

*Gillemont Farm.*—One squadron of Oxford Hussars, which furnished its own outpost line.

*Brown line.*—20th Hussars and a squadron of Oxford Hussars in Lempire.

*Reserve.*—One squadron of Oxford Hussars at Brigade Headquarters in St. Emilie.

*Machine-gun Squadron.*—10 guns were distributed in the Green line and 2 guns were in reserve.

*Artillery.*—The artillery covering the 4th Cavalry Brigade front consisted of five 13-pr. batteries and one 4.5 battery.

The 5th Cavalry Division was on the right of the brigade, and the 3rd Cavalry Brigade on the left.

The 5th Cavalry Division was on the right of the 2nd Cavalry Division and the 40th Infantry Division on its left, while the divisional reserve consisted of two battalions of the 178th Infantry Brigade and the 5th Machine-gun Squadron.

The following were the principles of the defence :

“(a) In the case of local attacks : The outpost line must be held. In the event of the enemy penetrating into any portion of it, he must at once be counter-attacked and ejected.

“12th Lancers and 20th Hussars will always have a squadron detailed for the immediate support of outposts and Green line. Officers commanding sectors may call upon these squadrons without reference to brigade Headquarters.

“All commanders down to troop leaders must study their positions, and have plans ready for immediate counter-attack with the troops at their disposal at the moment.

“(b) In the case of attack by the enemy in force : The Green line is the main line resistance of the brigade, and must be held at all costs.

“Troops holding the outpost line will do everything possible to delay and break up the enemy attack.

“In the event of the enemy penetrating into any portion

of the Green line, the commander of the local reserves to that position will at once counter-attack with the troops immediately available.

"Should this be unsuccessful the Brigade Commander will organize a counter-attack at the earliest possible moment with such of his reserves, and of the artillery at his disposal, as may be necessary.

"If more strength than is at the disposal of the brigade is required, it will be carried out under the orders of the Divisional Commander.

"The 4th Cavalry Brigade will be prepared to form a defensive flank facing north along the spur facing east and west from Brown line at Bassé Boulogne to the vicinity of locality D in F 17, so as to prevent the enemy obtaining observation into the valley south-east of Ronssoy, should the left brigade be temporarily driven back to the Brown line."

Upon the above instructions the following local orders were issued :

For messages the designation of sub-sectors were :

B1	.	.	.	.	.	Kirb.
B2	.	.	.	.	.	Will.

The strong posts in the defences of Will were :

D post, known as Lark, and garrisoned by " B " Squadron 3rd Hussars.

E post, known as Bag, and garrisoned by " A " Squadron 3rd Hussars.

F post known as Dob, and garrisoned by " C " Squadron 3rd Hussars.

Gillemont Farm, known as Val, and garrisoned by " D " Squadron Oxford Hussars.

In the event of the enemy penetrating into any portion of the Green line, the strong posts on his right and left were to do all in their power to prevent his further advance, without imperilling their own posts, in order to gain time for the counter-attack. The usual reconnaissances by the local reserves were carried out, while arrangements were made for close touch along the line. Minute instructions

were issued for the advance of the supporting squadrons to the Green line.

The country was undulating, and not cut up by trench systems. The valley were searched by the artillery of both sides. Gillemont Farm was on a hill of its own, and in advance of the Green line, and therefore isolated. In the event of the hill upon which stood the ruined farm being heavily attacked E post was ordered to bring a cross-fire from its machine guns to bear in front of the farm.

As has been said before, the relief was completed by 1.10 a.m. on the 18th without casualty. Soon after, however, F post was heavily shelled and Captain Dobie wounded; Captain Howard took his place. Quiet night elsewhere along the line.

4 a.m.—A patrol from Gillemont fired on by the enemy from the sunken Bony road.

1.45 p.m.—The enemy shelled Gillemont. Our own guns retaliated.

3.40 p.m.—Enemy again shelling Gillemont. We retaliated.

4.30 to 5 p.m.—Enemy again shelling Gillemont. We retaliated.

6.5 p.m.—Heavy enemy shelling on Gillemont, an aeroplane directing the fire—especially on communication trench. The shelling reported from east of Bony and Le Catelet. Quiet night all along the line with some slight shelling.

19th :

2 a.m.—Ten Germans coming up to Gillemont bolted when fired upon by the outposts.

9.30 a.m.—Gillemont shelled with gas-shells and high explosives, and also rifle grenades. We retaliated.

10.50 a.m.—Gillemont shelled by our own guns. Artillery informed.

12.45 p.m.—Gillemont shelled by the enemy. An enemy machine gun active from The Knoll, while trench mortar from the Bony road was also in action. We retaliated.

4.15 p.m.—Hostile aerial activity. A British plane fell in flames behind our line.

8 p.m.—Gillemont shelled for an hour. We retaliated.

10.30 p.m.—Lempire shelled until 11.30 p.m. We retaliated. Hostile balloons were up during the day.

20th, Sunday (it is extraordinary the amount of desperate fighting that occurs on Sundays):

2.55 a.m.—A very heavy bombardment began against B2's right, and also heavy shelling of the valleys behind D, E, and F posts.

3 a.m.—The S.O.S. signal went up from Gillemont Farm. The artillery was called upon, and the barrage was at once put down. All telephone communication between B2 Headquarters and the forward posts was cut, and signallers were sent out to repair the lines. The machine guns in E post came into action against the north side of Gillemont Farm. The following two messages were sent from B2 Headquarters:

1. "Oxford Hussars Support Squadron.

"Support Val as arranged at once."

2. "20th Hussars.

"Have your support squadron in readiness at Regimental Headquarters at once."

3.25 a.m.—D post asking for retaliation, the artillery was asked for a barrage to be put down between D and E posts as well as at Gillemont. This was promptly done.

3.30 a.m.—F post reported everything normal in its immediate front, but a very heavy bombardment on its right. The artillery was asked to confine its barrage to just north-east, east, and south-east of Gillemont. No news having been received at all from Gillemont Farm, runners were despatched to discover the situation there.

3.40 a.m.—The signallers by this time, working extremely well, had restored telephonic communication with D, E, and F posts. D post reported that the enemy was attacking Gillemont Farm on its right.

4 a.m.—There being still no news from Gillemont, a reconnaissance was sent there from B2 Headquarters.

4.10 a.m.—Situation in Gillemont still uncertain. The Oxford Hussars reserve squadron at Brigade Headquarters in St. Emilie was asked for and ordered to Lempire.

4.20 a.m.—D post reported that the situation in Gillemont was uncertain.

4.30 a.m.—At last the first news from Gillemont Farm.



Major The Hon. Arthur Villiers, commanding the support squadron which had been ordered up to the help of Major Val. Fleming in command at Gillemont, reported by telephone (which had by this time been repaired) that the attack had failed, but that the shelling was still heavy.

4.30 a.m.—Major Villiers reported that the situation was quieter.

5 a.m.—All supporting squadrons were withdrawn.

Briefly told, the story of Gillemont was as follows: Major Villiers, with his support squadron, had reached the point to which he had been ordered—a barricade on the road on the high ground west of the valley behind Gillemont. Here he could obtain no communication with the Gillemont squadron. With an orderly he went into the valley through the barrage, and up to the farm, where he found that the commander, Major V. Fleming, had been killed, and that the German attack had been driven off.

From prisoners' statements it appeared that two companies of the 3rd Battalion, 237th Reserve Infantry Regiment, had been ordered to take and hold Gillemont; that battalion had arrived in the Hindenburg Line at Bony on the 18th May. About 11.30 p.m. on the 19th the two companies left Bony and marched by road and across country towards Gillemont Farm and occupied some trenches east and south-east of it.

It would appear that the German attack was first started against the northern edge of Gillemont, and that the machine-gun fire from post E helped to disperse it. There were two attacks against the south-east side of the farm, which were driven off by the fire from the outposts. Our artillery barrage on the eastern side of Gillemont broke up the German attack, and must have caused considerable casualties. During their attack the enemy sent up red flares, and put a smoke barrage in the valley west of Gillemont.

The casualties in this very gallant little action were: killed, Major Valentine Fleming and Second-Lieutenant F. S. Silvertop, both of the Oxford Hussars, and three other

ranks of the Oxfords, while five other ranks of the Oxfords were wounded, and one of the 3RD Hussars. It was a wonder that there were not more casualties, taking into consideration the heavy shelling upon the farm and its small area. All honour to gallant Val. Fleming and his squadron of Oxford Hussars for their successful defence of Gillemont Farm—the German had found in the British yeoman a nut too hard to crack.

All the posts reported the remainder of the day as quiet.

10.30 p.m.—The enemy shelled Lempire. During the night two men of the 3RD Hussars were missing from patrol.

21st :

2.30 a.m.—The enemy shelled F post for an hour and a half.

7 a.m.—A German aeroplane over F post, followed by shelling of the post. Retaliation by us.

8 a.m.—Germans shelling F post and the north-eastern end of Lempire about B2 Headquarters. The bombardment of F post, Lempire, and Sart Farm continued until 1 p.m., with retaliation by our gunners.

10.30 p.m.—Enemy shelled D post and Lempire.

11.30 p.m.—The Gillemont Farm squadron was relieved by Major Villiers's squadron of Oxford Hussars, and went into reserve at St. Emilie, the reserve squadron coming up into support in Lempire. A thunderstorm at night.

22nd.—A quiet day, with slight enemy shelling. Heavy rain.

23rd :

2.30 a.m.—F post shelled by the enemy. Retaliation.

7 a.m.—D post and Gillemont Farm shelled.

11 a.m.—E and F posts shelled.

3.30 p.m.—Enemy shelled E post. Casualties, 5 men killed and 1 man wounded, all of "A" Squadron, 3RD Hussars.

9.50 p.m.—The enemy shelled Sart Farm valley and Lempire until 10.30 p.m.

24th.—A quiet night in B2, but heavy shelling of B1 about midnight.

11 a.m.—E and F posts shelled. Retaliation.

1.15 p.m.—Gillemont Farm shelled by trench mortars, and again at 1.35 p.m.

10.30 p.m.—S.O.S. signal sent up in B1 sector, and a heavy

barrage which lasted for fifteen minutes. All quiet in B2.

11 p.m.—It was reported that the telephone-line was being tampered with between D post and Gillemont Farm, and a patrol from B post was ordered out until daylight, but with no result.

25th :

The 3RD Hussars were relieved in the Green line by the 20th Hussars, and went into reserve in Lempire under the command of Major Du Pre. The Carabiniers in B1 sector were at the same time relieved by the 12th Lancers. The designation of the sectors was changed to C1 and C2.

26th :

An enemy aeroplane flew low over Lempire during the morning, but was driven off by machine-gun fire. At 1.30 p.m. the Germans began shelling that village and Ronsoy with a shell every three minutes, and working from south to north, the rate increasing during the course of the afternoon to six shells per minute, though 25 per cent. of them failed to explode. By 6 o'clock all was quiet.

Similar days were spent until the end of the month, and at 12.15 a.m. on the 31st the 3RD were relieved by the 16th Lancers and rejoined the led horses—which had moved to another bivouac near Boucly and went into divisional reserve.

The brigade was now in corps reserve, ready to move at two hours' notice.

The following immediate awards for gallantry during the German attack upon Gillemont Farm on the 20th May were published :

### 3RD HUSSARS

No. 2609, SERGEANT SAMUEL MAINWARING.—At the commencement of the German bombardment this N.C.O. was sent to Gillemont Farm and D post to repair broken telegraph wires. After repairing the broken line at D post, he followed the wire across the open, and down the valley, until he found the breaks. The last break was 30 yards from Gillemont Farm main trench. He repaired three breaks, and reopened communication between Headquarters

and Gillemont. The repairing of these breaks in the open, and under a very heavy artillery fire, amounting to a barrage, was a most gallant episode, and a fine example of devotion to duty. He was awarded the Military Medal on the 7th June 1917.

NO. 15262, PRIVATE JOHN MALLET.—This private soldier was with Sergeant Mainwaring during the repairing of the broken telephone wires in the valley behind Gillemont Farm, during the German attack on the 20th May. He and his sergeant followed the wire across the open, and repaired three breaks in it under heavy enemy artillery fire and reopened communication. The repairing of the wire in the open and under a barrage was a fine performance and a courageous and devoted act. He was awarded a Military Medal on the 29th May 1917.

On the 15th June the Regiment was for another turn of the Lempire trenches, a dismounted party parading at 6.30 p.m. under the command of Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O., and riding to St. Emilie. From there the horses were brought back to bivouac, while the dismounted party marched to Lempire, and relieved the 20th Hussars in support in the Brown line, where a digging party that had been for some days in the Quarries joined Major Du Pre; his command consisted of 16 officers and 310 other ranks. An A Echelon wagon line to carry supplies to the trenches was again established in Villers-Faucon, its strength being 1 officer, 28 other ranks, and 47 horses. By 10 p.m. the relief was complete, and the line held as follows:

C1, Green line: 4th Hussars. Support—6th Dragoon Guards.

C2, Green line: 16th Lancers Support—3RD Hussars.  
Gillemont Farm: 5th Lancers.

Divisional Reserve: Oxford Hussars.

16th:

A prisoner reported that the Germans intended making an attack during the night. The Green line was consequently strengthened by Second-Lieutenant Bromley's troop of "A" Squadron being placed in the sunken road between E and F posts, and Second-Lieutenant Harvie's troop of "C" Squadron between

E and D posts. There was no attack, and the troops returned at daylight.

17th :

In the evening the arrangements of the previous night were repeated, Second-Lieutenant Cannon's troop ("A" Squadron), and Second-Lieutenant Freeman's troop ("B" Squadron) going to the above points. Again no attack.

22nd :

At 12.55 a.m. the 3RD Hussars relieved the 16th Lancers in the Green line, "A" Squadron going to E post, "B" to D post, and "C" to F post.

At 1 a.m. a heavy bombardment of Gillemont and of the posts held by the Regiment commenced. Seven minutes later the enemy's fire was concentrated round Gillemont and D post and slackening on E and F posts, while our batteries put in a heavy barrage in front of Gillemont.

At 1.30 a.m. the enemy's fire ceased, our batteries slackening, and by 2 a.m. all was quiet.

At 2.5 a.m. a corporal of the 5th Lancers from Gillemont Farm reported that the enemy was occupying that post, but that the squadron was still holding the communication trench. Another message to this effect was received ten minutes later. The reserves for Gillemont were called up, but at 5.30 a.m. the situation there was reported normal.

Casualties in the 3RD : D post 3 wounded, E post 2 wounded, F post 4 wounded.

24th :

A normal day, but with considerable aerial activity.

25th, 26th and 27th were normal days. Five men of the 3RD were wounded in F post on the 27th, and one killed and one wounded in F Post. Second-Lieutenant Lancefield was also wounded.

29th :

The Regiment went into support in the Brown line, being relieved at midnight by the 20th Hussars, Captain Bagnell taking over command.

On the 4th July the dismounted party went into the Green line under Major Du Pre. In the early hours of the 5th Gillemont Farm was heavily bombarded ; but, otherwise, the time was normal, until the 4th Cavalry Brigade was

relieved by the 18th Highland Light Infantry on the 7th July. The dismounted party got back to the horses in the Boucly bivouac at 3 o'clock next morning.

Another immediate reward for the Regiment was made at this time :

No. 8039, PRIVATE FRED GARNET WARD.—At 1 a.m. on the 22nd June, while on duty in a listening post, a very violent barrage was put down by the enemy between his post and his squadron. Ten minutes later he saw enemy advancing in open order across his front threatening the rear of another post to his right front. He immediately went back through his own wire, and through the very close barrage to inform his squadron leader at the squadron's post, which was being heavily shelled at the time. It was a very dark night, and he not only courted almost certain death by going through the barrage, but also ran a great risk of being shot by the men in the post. He showed great gallantry and devotion to duty. He was awarded the Military Medal.

The casualties in the 3RD during the time the Regiment was in the trenches in front of Lempire were :

Killed. Died of Wounds, Missing. Wounded.					(Captain Dobie, Second-Lieutenant Lancefield)
Officers	.	.	—	—	
Other ranks	.	5	2	2	16

Before leaving this short account of the Lempire trenches let us hark back to the retreat from Mons. It was to Lempire that the Regiment marched after the battle of Le Cateau, and next day, the 27th August of 1914, at 3.30 a.m., what was left of it assembled at the brigade rendezvous at Gillemont Farm. Curiously enough, too, the Regimental Headquarters had established itself during the late trenches in the ruins of the house which General Allenby had occupied after Le Cateau.

Major-General W. H. Greenly, commanding the 2nd Cavalry Division, issued the following special order on the relief of the division at Lempire :

“On the division being relieved I wish to express my admiration of the fighting qualities displayed, and the

amount of work done by all units during our tour in the trenches.

"As regards fighting, whether in attack or defence, opportunities of specially distinguishing themselves have happened to come more often to certain units than to others; but all have made the most of such chances as offered, and all have shown once again that our cavalry are fighting troops of the very first quality.

"Our complete superiority over the enemy has again been strongly emphasized.

"As regards work, my knowledge of the troops led me to expect a very large amount; I can only say that even those expectations were far surpassed by what was actually accomplished.

"I wish to congratulate all ranks of all units on their most successful and fruitful efforts, staffs, services, and departments no less than regiments and batteries."

At the same time the following appreciation of their work from General Headquarters was published to the regiments and departments of the Cavalry Corps:

"The Commander-in-Chief wishes me to convey to you and to all ranks of the Cavalry Corps his pleasure at the report received on the excellent state of the defences recently handed over by them.

"He considers that it reflects the greatest possible credit on all concerned, and that the best traditions of the British Cavalry are being maintained.

"(Signed) W. E. PEYTON, *Major-General*,

*Military Secretary to Commander-in-Chief.*"

A few days' rest in the comfortable Boucly bivouac, and the 12th July saw the brigade on the move again. Leaving the brigade starting-point at 8 a.m., a march of sixteen miles by Doingt and Péronne brought us to military huts near Cappy on the Somme, where many of us took advantage of a bathe in the canal. Next day, passing the brigade starting-point near Chuignolles at 8 a.m., we rode via Morcourt, Cérisy, Sailly-le-Sec, to billets in Méricourt-l'Abbé. A lot of black labour was passed on the roads—what a war!



TRENCHES KIT.





Two more marches—via Toutencourt, Puchevillers, Beauquesne, Authieule (where we billeted), Bouquemaision and Frévent—brought the 3RD to its billets in Boubers-sur-Canche on the 15th. In Boubers itself were Headquarters and “C” Squadron, “A” was about Petit Boubers and Ligny, and “B” in Vacquerie-le-Boucq and Fortel. The remainder of the month was devoted to training and a divisional horse show near Frévent, at which the Regiment won the cup for the “12 best troop horses.”

Training was carried on throughout August as far as the state of the crops and the continuous rain of the first half of the month allowed. Leave home, too, somewhat hampered work, 8 officers and 153 other ranks going to England during the month; but, as 150 of these had not left France for eighteen months and over, it was not grudged—there were still 110 men in the Regiment who had not been on leave for a year to eighteen months.

On the 4th August Second-Lieutenant Craig's troop of “C” Squadron won a brigade Hotchkiss gun competition; Corporal Bunnett was in charge of the gun. That officer's troop also won the 2nd Cavalry Division Hotchkiss competition on the 21st, the following being the scores:

	Brigade.	Represented by a Troop of	Points.
1st . .	4th	3rd Hussars	96
2nd . .	5th	Scots Greys	61
3rd . .	3rd	16th Lancers	50

The only other note of interest for the month is that of the Regimental dinner, held by the officers in Frévent. It was an excellent dinner, and a cheery function, and also it was a pleasant reunion after the interminable months of squadron messes.

The 1st September found the Regiment in the same billets.

A limited number of men were allowed to help the neighbouring farmers with the harvest.

On the 10th the Regiment moved to new billets some eight miles down the Canche, our old quarters being taken by the 4th Hussars.

Headquarters was billeted at the Château du Forestel.

" B " Squadron was billeted in Vieil Hesdin, with a troop in le Parcq.

" C " Squadron was billeted in St. Georges and Watelet Farm.

" A " Squadron was billeted in St. Ladre and Ste. Austreberthe.

They were good quarters for man and horse, but very scattered.

Fifty-six other ranks left the Regiment on the 15th for the Rouen base to be transferred to infantry. They were a portion of a hundred extra dismounted men who had been allowed to cavalry regiments to help with the horses on a regiment going into the trenches, and were now being reduced.

A dismounted battalion, designated the 4th Cavalry Dismounted Battalion, was ordered to be formed by the 4th Cavalry Brigade, and for this the Regiment found a company. On the 23rd it formed a part of a working party in the First Army, and left Fillièvres cross-roads in motor-buses at 11 a.m., the transport going by road, for Bully Grenay and Calonne.

The personnel of the 3RD Hussars company consisted of :

Captain the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.

Second-Lieutenant W. G. Dalrymple.

Second-Lieutenant A. C. B. Freeman.

116 Other ranks.

4 Light draught horses.

1 Limber General Service Wagon.

The battles of Passchendaele were about to commence, and the cavalry divisions were being moved up towards Ypres in readiness for a " gap." On the 5th October a warning order was received that the division would probably move on the 8th, and the working party, with the dismounted battalion, rejoined Headquarters, and at the same time the heavy rain, which was to spoil the British offensive, commenced. The Regiment passed the brigade starting-point at Willeman at 9.15 a.m. on the 8th, and marched in brigade

via Humières, Bermicourt, and Fleury to Monchy-Cayeux, where the men were in military huts and the horses in the open. By the 16th it was evident that all hope of a break through had been abandoned, for the division was ordered to march south. The weather was a steady downpour of rain, and the lines in an appalling condition, with the horses up to their hocks in mud. What the battle-field on the Passchendaele ridge must have been, Heaven knows! On the 19th the brigade moved south, the regiments marching independently. The 3RD Hussars mounted at 9 a.m and rode via St. Pol and Nuncq to billets about Boubers and Ligny on the river Canche, the Cavalry Corps Commander inspecting us *en route*. Second-Lieutenant J. K. Harvie and sixty-seven other ranks were left at St. Pol and joined a divisional working party, which was said to be going to build stables for the division in the winter area. They left by rail for the south, and were eventually attached to the 4th Cavalry Division near Péronne. The brigade continued south next day, still marching by regiments, by Fortel and Frohen-le-Grand to billets in Pernois, Berteaucourt, and Halloy. The 5th Cavalry Brigade marched a day in front of the 4th, and the 3rd a day behind. The following days' march took the Regiment by Vignacourt and St. Vast-en-Chaussée to Amiens, and leaving the brigade just south of that city it continued on by Cagny, Boves, and Cottency to billets—Headquarters in Remiencourt, "A" Squadron Guyencourt and "B" and "C" in Dommartin. During the latter part of the march a German aeroplane was over the Regiment and was driven off by anti-aircraft guns. From Amiens the Regiment followed the road it had taken in the advance north from the Aisne in October 1914. It was reported that French cavalry had suffered from mange in part of Dommartin, so "B" Squadron was moved to Thèzy and Hailles on the Avre. On the 24th Lieutenant Kettle and thirty-three other ranks left to reinforce the working party, which had left the Regiment on the 19th, and but little training was possible, the grooming states of the troops showing three or four horses to a man.

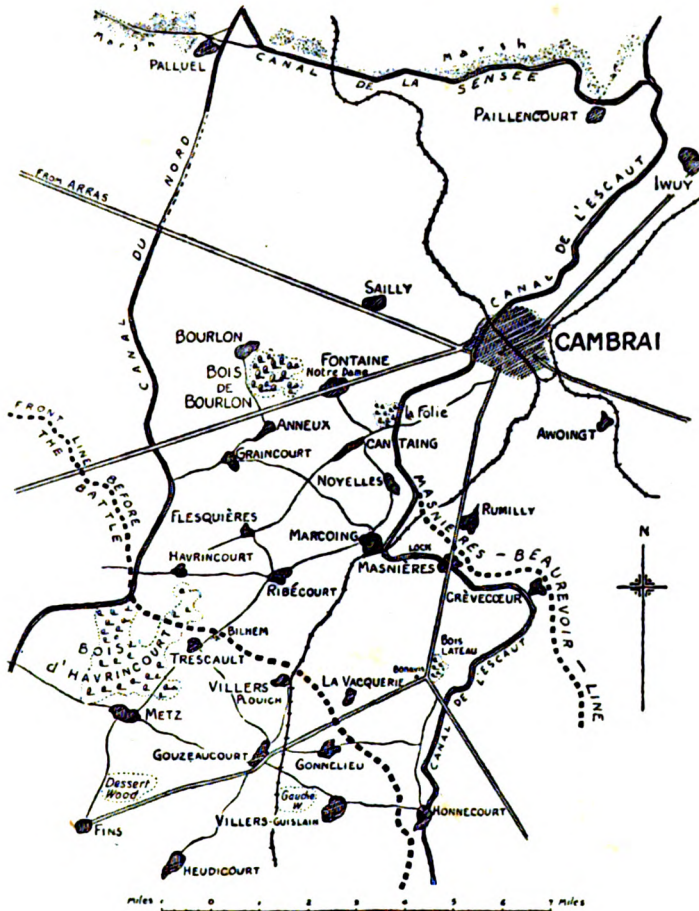
The first fortnight of November saw the squadrons in the same billets. Sixty men of the working party rejoined on the 13th—they had been building stables and huts in the neighbourhood of Cartigny, south-east of Péronne, and next day a warning order was received to march on the 16th.

On the 16th the Regiment marched to the brigade rendezvous, just south-east of Villers-Bretonneux via St. Nicolas near Boves, being ordered to be clear of the latter place by noon. The rendezvous was reached at 1.25 p.m., and the squadrons off-saddled and fed. It was 4 p.m. before the brigade moved off, and, marching by Lamotte, it left the St. Quentin road, and went through Proyart and Cappy to billets in Suzanne on the Somme, arriving at 8.30 p.m., with the exception of the Carabiniers and Oxfords, who stayed in Cappy. The Regiment was in huts and broken-down houses, and the horses in open sheds. A and B Echelons were in by 10 p.m. The next day the march was continued at 4 p.m., and the route followed was Péronne, Doingt, and the Bois de Bias to Tertry, which was reached at 10 p.m., both the echelons following the brigade. The 3RD was quartered in unfinished huts and stables, and the remainder of the brigade also in huts about Tertry. The brigade halted on the 18th.

Another battle was pending—that of Cambrai.

Before detailing the doings of the Regiment, a short study of the general plan for the surprise attack on Cambrai will be of interest. The main plan was to break the German line; to pass the cavalry through the break; to seize the passages over the Sensée River, and to cut off the Germans holding the front line between Havrincourt and that river. At the same time to seize the crossings over the Escaut Canal at Masnières and Marcoing; cut the Masnières-Beaurevoir line, the enemy's last line of defence in this part; and pass the cavalry through before the German reserves could appear on the field. Surprise was the main factor in the attack; there was no preliminary bombardment, and the attack depended upon the successful advance of the tanks in front of the infantry.

The operations were to consist of three stages : (a) The tank and infantry attack as outlined above : (b) The advance of the cavalry to isolate Cambrai, and to seize the Sensée



CAMBRAI, 1917.

crossings, and the IV Corps to capture Bourlon Wood ; (c) The clearing of the quadrilateral Escaut Canal-Sensée River-Canal du Nord, and the overthrow of the cut-off German divisions.

The attack was to be carried out by the III and IV Corps

and some 360 tanks, while for the advance of the Cavalry Corps the 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, and 5th Cavalry Divisions were available.

The corps in the Third Army at the commencement of the operations were the III, IV, V, VI, VII, and XVII.

To assist the main operations, subsidiary attacks were carried out.

It was considered very important that Boursin Wood should be captured on the first (or Z) day.

Turning to the cavalry operations, the general plan was as follows :

Provided that the infantry secured Marcoing and Masnières and the Masnières-Beaurevoir line, a cavalry division, closely supported by a second cavalry division, were to be pushed forward to carry out the following tasks :

(a) To surround and isolate Cambrai, occupying the main points of tactical importance, and blocking all exits from the town.

To cut the railway communication running into Cambrai from Busigny, Le Cateau, Solesmes, and Courches, and the Solesmes-Haspres-Valenciennes line.

No large body of cavalry was to attempt to enter Cambrai at first. The town of Cambrai was to be damaged as little as possible, but, having regard to the above instructions, the enemy was to be prevented from setting fire to it as far as that was possible.

(b) To secure the crossings over the River Sensée between Paillencourt and Palluel (both inclusive).

(c) To secure the flank of the forces engaged in clearing up the quadrilateral Canal de l'Escaut-Sensée River-Canal du Nord and the advance of the V Corps north and north-east.

To carry out these tasks the Cavalry Corps staff proposed moving the 1st Cavalry Division west of Marcoing on to the line SAILLY-Boursin preparatory to its further advance to the Sensée, east of Palluel, and passing two cavalry divisions over the Escaut Canal at Masnières and Marcoing. The leading division, the 5th, moving east of Cambrai, was to seize the crossings over the Sensée River between Aubencheul

and Paillencourt. Closely following the 5th was the 2nd Cavalry Division, whose task was to guard the eastern flank on the line Iwuy-Awoingt.

By the 19th November the cavalry divisions were concentrated as follows :

1st Cavalry Division about Péronne.				
5th	"	"	"	Roisel.
2nd	"	"	"	Caulaincourt.
4th	"	"	"	Athies.
3rd	"	"	"	Bray.

The forward concentration areas were :

North of Fins	.	.	1st and 5th Cavalry Divisions.
Villers-Faucon	.	.	} 2nd Cavalry Division.
Longavesnes	.	.	
Heudecourt	.	.	

The first objective of the 5th Cavalry Division was to isolate Cambrai, and its second the crossings of the Sensée. The first objective of the 2nd Cavalry Division was the taking over the positions held by the 5th east of Cambrai, and so enabling that division to move north. Its second objective was to push troops north-east as far as Neuville-sur-l'Escaut.

In the advance of the 2nd Cavalry Division to its first objective the 5th and 3rd Cavalry Brigades were to relieve the 5th Cavalry Division in its positions east of Cambrai and the 4th Cavalry Brigade would follow in divisional reserve, with the Oxford Hussars watching the eastern exits of the town. In the advance of the division to its second objective the left of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade was to rest on the high ground east of Iwuy. The 4th Cavalry Brigade, with the 3rd Hussars leading, would move north-east, and that Regiment would seize the high ground north-east of Lieu St. Amand and north-west of Avesnes-le-Sec to the Iwuy-Lieu St. Amand road. A squadron of the 3rd was also to destroy the railway bridges at Neuville-sur-l'Escaut. A Carabinier squadron was to move to Hordain,

NOTE.—As the scheme did not mature, the places east of Cambria are not shown on the map.



seize the crossings over the canal, and gain touch with the right of the 5th Cavalry Division at Paillencourt. Every opportunity was to be taken to push forward squadrons to attack depots, aerodromes, isolated hostile detachments, etc., and vigorous action against any German reinforcements was to be pursued.

To return to our story. The 19th November saw the Regiment in the huts at Tertry. During the day the general plan of the coming battle was explained to all ranks, and the interest and excitement in the squadrons was intense. Cavalry work at last ! The underlying spirit in the whole of the planned operations pointed to it. Writing of the main attack the Army Commander expressed the view that, " If we are successful in overrunning the enemy's line of defence, a unique opportunity for the cavalry action becomes possible. This action may have a far-reaching effect, not only on the local situation, but on the course of the war. Attacking divisions must realize that the boldest action is required during the first two days. Hesitation and waiting for support may enable the enemy to recover from his first surprise, and delay the advance of the cavalry." It was a sad duty deciding the officers to be left behind in reserve with the B Echelon ! The following was the strength of the Regiment :

	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
Fighting Troops . . .	24	390	470
A Echelon . . . . .	1	46	35
B Echelon left at Tertry .	6	29	36

The rations to be carried were :

On officers and men . . .	The unexpired portion of the day's issue.
	Two Emergency rations.
On horses . . . . .	16 lb. oats in two nosebags.
On troop pack-horses . .	One day's ration per officer and man.

At 2.15 a.m. on the 20th November the Regiment left Tertry, and at 2.40 a.m. it passed the brigade starting-point in Caulaincourt. The order of march was: 6th Dragoon

Guards, Oxford Hussars, 3RD Hussars, 4th Machine-gun Squadron, followed by the ammunition and supply portions of the A Echelon. The route was by Bernes and Roisel—where the brigade watered in specially constructed troughs—to the forward concentration area at Villers-Faucon, which was reached at 7.30 a.m. A cold, wet, and stormy ride. At Villers Faucon the brigade halted. Soup was provided, by men sent on ahead for the purpose, and a feed for the horses. The battle's zero hour was 6.30 a.m., and the latter part of the march was to the tune of an intense bombardment. There was no authentic news as to the progress of the battle, and we sat about in the cold thoroughly bored until 12.30 p.m., when the brigade moved forward to the Fins-Gouzeaucourt road, and halted some two thousand yards west of the latter village, the order of march being: Oxford Hussars, 3RD Hussars, 4th Machine-gun Squadron, and 6th Dragoon Guards. Here the brigade waited from 1.25 p.m. until 2.36 p.m., when the march was continued, via Queen's Cross to Villers Plouich by a cavalry track, which was as deep in mud as cavalry tracks across a battle-field usually are, with the attendant horror of congestion of traffic. In a defile, just before the village, the brigade was moving forward with limbers going up with ammunition, and endeavouring to pass coming down were empty limbers coming back for ammunition, walking wounded, wounded on stretchers, and parties of German prisoners, while infantry were marching both up and down. From Villers Plouich the division moved up on to the high ground east of the road from that village to Marcoing, and halted behind the 5th Cavalry Division, near the late German front line. It was a quarter past four when this position was reached, and it was obvious to everyone that darkness would put a stop to any cavalry advance that day.

The result of the day's fighting was a big success for the tanks and infantry. On the left the attack had broken the German line, and the 1st Cavalry Division had been passed through on its objective, but on the right the 29th Division had failed to gain its objective—the Masnières-Beaurevoir

line, which was the starting-point for the cavalry on that flank. Some units of the 5th Cavalry Division had co-operated with the infantry in its attack on the line, but there had been no scope for the cavalry operation as planned. It was eventually decided to withdraw both the divisions, but it was not before 9.30 p.m. that the 2nd Cavalry Division was ordered to move back to Villers-Faucon. A vile job it was, coming down that steep, greasy hill to the road, and the night as dark as pitch, while on the road chaos still reigned in the matter of traffic congestion. Thanks to the darkness and to the congestion, units failed to keep touch. The 3RD, with the exception of "B" Squadron, which had got cut off, marched by Gouzeaucourt, Heudicourt, and Guyencourt out of touch with the brigade to Villers-Faucon, which was reached at 2.15 a.m. on the 21st, "B" Squadron, and the rest of the brigade arriving later. The remainder of the cold, wet, and stormy night was spent by the Regiment lying beside its horses.

It was clear by the afternoon of the 21st that the enemy had pushed reinforcements into the Masnières-Beaurevoir line, and that the opportunity of the cavalry moving east of Cambrai was consequently out of the question. This was confirmed the following day by the withdrawal of the 5th Cavalry Division to Fins, and of the 1st Cavalry Division to Metz-en-Couture, and the subsequent orders in the evening for the backward movement of the 4th and 5th Cavalry Divisions. Meanwhile the 2nd Cavalry Division remained in its bivouac.

On the 23rd, while the Regiment was at water, orders arrived to saddle up to move forward, and at 5.25 p.m. the brigade marched by Liéramount and Nurlu to Equancourt, where the regiments went into bivouac. At 7 a.m. on the 24th an officer's patrol under Second-Lieutenant H. T. Bromley was sent to Metz, Trescault, and Ribécourt, and, after contradictory orders, twice repeated, to saddle up and turn out followed by "off saddle," the brigade did eventually turn out at 2.30 p.m., and march to Dessart Wood, on the northern edge of which it went into a very muddy bivouac.

The 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions were now at the disposal of the IV Corps for the defence of Bourlon Wood if required, and an officer's patrol from the 3RD, under Lieutenant H. R. Barton, was ordered out at 8.15 p.m. as liaison officer with the infantry attack on Bourlon village ordered for the morning. Orders were also received for the Regiment to be ready to move forward at a moment's notice at any time during the night. A conference was held during the evening on the prospective operations for the morrow. The infantry were to attack north of Bourlon Wood, and, if the attack was successful, mounted operations would follow.

At 6.30 a.m. on the 25th the 2nd Cavalry Division left Fins to take up a position of readiness north of Flesquières in order to take advantage of any opportunity which might be created by any operation of the 40th Division, and an advanced cavalry report centre was formed at 7 a.m. at Flesquières. The Regiment marched at 6.10 a.m., and passed the brigade starting-point in Metz at 6.45 a.m. The squadrons saddled up in a storm. The wind blew a hurricane, and the rain came down in sheets. So violent was the wind that it took three men to saddle up each horse, two men holding down the blanket while the other put on the saddle. The brigade marched by Trescault and Ribécourt to some high ground just north-east of Flesquières, which was reached at 9 a.m., and on the slopes of which the division was concentrated. Meanwhile an officer's patrol, under Second-Lieutenant H. G. Mitchell, had been sent to Graincourt and Anneux upon a route reconnaissance.

At 9 a.m. the Brigadier assembled the commanding officers at the northern edge of Flesquières, whence an extensive view of Bourlon and the intervening ground could be seen, and patrols were sent out to reconnoitre the various lines of approach to Bourlon. About 12.45 p.m. the enemy shelled the division, causing some casualties, and the brigades were moved back to about Ribécourt.

The infantry operations had not succeeded, and the division was ordered by the Cavalry Corps to carry out an attack upon its own. The 4th Cavalry Brigade, acting

dismounted, was to force a passage in front of Bourslon village, and the other two brigades, passing through mounted, were to seize the high ground that lay about a mile north of the railway. Zero hour was fixed for 3 p.m. The brigadiers met the divisional commander, and the orders for the attack were being prepared, when, at 1.30 p.m., the divisional commander was summoned to the telephone, and received an order cancelling the attack. A message from Lieutenant Barton, who, it will be remembered, had been ordered with a patrol as liaison officer with the infantry attack, was mainly responsible for this decision. His report from Bourslon village ran as follows :

“ Situation at present impossible. Village of Bourslon not cleared of enemy. Defensive line between village and wood is being held. Enemy's machine guns in village and in Bourslon Wood east and south of defensive line. Situation on right obscure. Battalion commander says impossible to clear village without reinforcements and tanks, which could not be got up before night. More enemy guns moved up it is believed.”

This message was sent off by messenger from the battalion Headquarters at 11.30 a.m., and passed through the 4th Cavalry Brigade an hour later.

Lieutenant Barton's report on the action of his patrol is of interest :

“ I left Dessart Wood at 6.30 a.m. on the 25th, and proceeded to Graincourt.

“ As the enemy was shelling Graincourt I left most of the patrol in the sunken road at L.I.a.2.0, and went on into Graincourt with one man and reported at the 119th and 121st Brigade Headquarters at 8.30 a.m.

“ Here I met Lieutenant Aitken of the 6th Dragoon Guards, and found out the situation as far as it was known, which we reported to the 4th Cavalry Brigade at once.

“ We then proceeded to Bourslon Wood by the valley north-west of Graincourt to Anneux Chapel, thence along sunken road to E.18.d.3.5. Here we dismounted and proceeded on foot along the edge of the wood to the battalion

Headquarters at E.12.d.4.6, taking a corporal of the 6th Dragoon Guards with us.

"At these Headquarters we found the officer commanding the troops making the attack, and from him we got the situation, which was sent in by the corporal.

"As the situation could not possibly change until reinforcements arrived, we decided to return to our patrols, finding out the situation to the north and east of Bourlon wood on our way back.

"We returned to our horses and were in time to send our second message in duplicate, which we considered necessary as they had to go back through a barrage.

"We then moved to the quarry at F.19.a.1.2, where I left the horses while I looked in at the battalion Headquarters at Anneux Chapel. Here I found Colonel Benzie, who gave me the situation in the wood.

"We returned to L.1.a.2.0, and, as neither of our last despatch-riders had been seen, we decided to report personally to the General Officer Commanding 4th Cavalry Brigade, and tell him the situation in Bourlon Wood and village.

"On our way back we met the corporal, who had orders for us to return to our units. Lieutenant Aitkin went on with our last report while I returned to L.1.a.2.0 and called in the rest of the patrols. Having found my Regiment, I reported to the Brigadier.

"Report of the situation as made on my return :

"1. A battalion of East Surreys holding a position along edge of Bourlon Wood between Bourlon village and the wood. Three companies had been through the village, but, as the tanks had not come up, and also as the company detailed as mopping-up party had been used to repel a hostile counter-attack from their right rear, the village had not been cleared of the enemy, who came up from their cellars and dugouts with machine guns. No rations could be got up to the advanced companies.

"The commanding officer of the battalion was confident that he could hold this defensive line, but he could not possibly clear the village until he received reinforcements of at least one battalion and six tanks.

"2. Three companies of the 14th Highland Light Infantry had reached their objective, and were holding a line from E.6.d.0.7 to F.1.c.2.7, thence along railway to F.1.c.6.2. These companies were entirely in the air.

"3. 121st Brigade were holding a line along the 100 contour F.7.c.0.3-F.7.d.5.9-F.8.c.0.0-F.14.a.8.9 to Cambrai road about F.20.b.1.8, where they were in touch with the Guards.

"4. Heavy machine-gun fire from both flanks of the wood."

The map references refer to the large-scale trench maps (not produced). Lieutenants Barton and Aitkin were awarded immediate Military Crosses for their work on this patrol.

About 3.30 p.m. orders were received that a dismounted brigade was to be formed in the division, and that the horses were to be moved back to the forward concentration area. From this time on to the end of the battle of Cambrai the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions were under the orders of the IV Corps, and the Cavalry Corps Headquarters closed down a couple of days later.

Each regiment in the brigade found a company to form the 4th Cavalry Brigade battalion. The 3RD Hussars' company consisted of 210 other ranks and the following officers: Captain R. A. Bagnell (commanding), Second-Lieutenants J. K. Harvie, H. T. Bromley, A. C. B. Freeman, H. G. Mitchell, while Major F. J. Du Pre acted as second in command to the battalion, the Headquarters of which was found by the Oxford Hussars. Lieutenant Barton also went as liaison officer with the Brigade Commander.

At 5 p.m. the led horses and the supply section of the A Echelon left for Dessart Wood, the ammunition section of A Echelon remaining at Ribécourt under the command of Captain and Quartermaster F. P. Clark.

The dismounted battalion marched to Flesquières at 4.15 p.m., where it was in reserve to the Guards Division. A cold, stormy day with a severe hailstorm, and followed by a cold, wet night.

The next day, at 6.30 in the evening, the battalion marched for the Hindenburg Line trenches half a mile west of Graincourt, where it came under the orders of the 187th Infantry Brigade, relieving the 2-7 West Yorkshire Regiment at

8 p.m. Another cold night followed, with a snow-storm in addition.

On the 27th, at 11.45 a.m., the battalion moved to trenches just south of the Sugar Factory north of Graincourt. Soon after arriving the enemy shelled the trenches occupied by the 3RD, and also those of the Oxford Hussars; but there were no casualties. At 3.30 p.m. orders arrived to move to Bourlon Wood, and at 4.45 p.m. the battalion arrived at the rendezvous at the south-west corner of the wood. The companies were distributed in shell-holes, in a sunken road, and in a quarry. The enemy shelled the area intermittently, two 3RD Hussars being killed and about a dozen of the battalion wounded. Guides from the 185th Infantry Brigade arrived at 8 o'clock, and the battalion moved forward into the wood. At 10.45 the relief of the infantry commenced, and, despite much German activity in the way of shelling, many of them being gas-shells, and machine-gun and rifle-fire, the relief was completed at 2.30 a.m. on the 28th.

The line taken over was found to be practically non-existent as regards trenches. A line of troop posts was rapidly dug, and the position made secure. All three dismounted battalion Headquarters, together with two infantry battalion Headquarters, were together in a wooden chalet in the centre of the wood, a most unsatisfactory situation—a magnet which, like the lodestone, had the peculiar property of attracting iron, for every German shell in Christendom seemed to crash around that devoted little building, which, as it was not even rain-proof, could scarcely be expected to protect the brains of the defenders of Bourlon Wood gathered together under its dilapidated roof. A heavy enemy barrage was put down continuously on all exits from the wood. Casualties were continuous, and gas-masks had constantly to be worn. The battalion was distributed as follows: Oxford Hussars were on the right, in touch with 5th Cavalry Battalion, the Carabiniers were on the left, in touch with



infantry, and the 3RD Hussars were in support. Our patrols, sent to the southern outskirts of Bourlon village, found no enemy. During the movement of the battalion into the wood the "B" Squadron platoon and part of the "C" Squadron platoon of the 3RD Hussars' company, which was in rear, were cut off by the 5th Cavalry Battalion. The officer in charge was away upon other duty at the time, and the men, failing to regain touch, and suffering severely from shell-fire, returned to the trenches they had occupied the previous night. They rejoined the battalion at daylight. No. 26161, Private J. Lauder, was awarded an immediate Military Medal on this day for gallantry in Bourlon Wood. Fighting continued throughout the day, and much heavy shelling. In the late afternoon a warning order was received that the battalion would be relieved by the 3rd Cavalry Battalion and the 15th London Regiment, and at 7.30 the 4th Hussars' company of the former battalion arrived in relief of the 3RD. The 3RD Hussars' company did not reach the Hindenburg Line trenches, half a mile west of Graincourt, until 11 p.m.; here, at 12.30 a.m., the Carabiniers' company joined them on relief by the 15th London Regiment—the Oxford Hussars had gone straight back to Flesquières on being relieved. At 3 p.m. the two companies were ordered to march to the led horses, which had come up to one mile south of Ribécourt, whence the battalion rode back to Dessart Wood, and the companies rejoined their regiments, the pack-horses, with the Hotchkiss guns, following at 1 a.m.

The 27th to the 30th November had been critical days in Bourlon Wood. The enemy had been strongly reinforced. The wood itself was bombarded night and day by the Germans, and a continuous barrage of gas-shells was directed on to it. The overstrained divisions of the IV Corps were only just able to hold on with the assistance of the dismounted brigade from the 2nd Cavalry Division, who were in Bourlon Wood for three days and nights.

With this short story of Bourlon Wood ended what may be termed the first stage of the battle of Cambrai, and now, with the big German counter-attack, we enter upon its second stage.

From daylight on the 30th November the area Dessart Wood-Fins was shelled by the Germans, and Metz too came in for a great deal of attention. A very heavy enemy bombardment was being put down all along the British front. Over the crest of the rising ground in front of our bivouac there came streaming at 10.30 a.m. a mixed crowd of infantry, working parties, gunners, and gun teams from the direction of Gouzeaucourt and Gauche Wood. From them we learned that the Germans had broken through the line. The Regiment saddled up at once.

Information was received at the 2nd Cavalry Division Headquarters in Fins at 11.45 a.m. that the enemy had broken through in force between Vendhuile and Masnières and had reached Gouzeaucourt and Gonnellieu. General Greenly was up at Flesquières visiting the batteries, and General Pitman took command of the division, Colonel Willcox taking command of the 4th Cavalry Brigade. Orders were issued for the division to saddle up at once. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade had not yet arrived from Flesquières on relief from Bourlon Wood.

The following orders will explain the action taken by the 2nd Cavalry Division. The message was received at brigade Headquarters from the division at 12 noon—quick work ! The map references refer to the large-scale map (not produced).

“ The 5th Cavalry Brigade will establish itself and hold high ground between Revelon Farm W.16.b. and S.W. of Gouzeaucourt roughly through squares W.11 central and W.5 central and windmill Q.35.c. Patrols will be pushed forward to Vaucellete Farm X.13.c, Chapel crossing X.7.c, Gauche Wood X.1.d, Gouzeaucourt to get touch with enemy or our own troops and report on situation. The 4th Cavalry Brigade will assemble in support to 5th Cavalry Brigade

about W.3. central. Divisional advanced report centre cross roads W.3.c.6.9. on Fins-Gouzeaucourt road. On arrival, the 3rd Cavalry Brigade will remain saddled up ready to move at short notice. 5th Machine-gun Squadron, on arrival, will immediately report to Adv. Div. Headquarters."

On this order the brigade moved to a point some two thousand yards east of Dessart Wood, with a squadron of 6th Dragoon Guards near Queen's Cross, and patrols to Beaucamp, Villiers Plouich, la Vacquerie and Gouzeaucourt. In response to a verbal message from the Guards Division asking the brigade to support them, the above dispositions were taken back by the officer who brought the message. The 5th Cavalry Brigade, in the meantime, was in position on the Revelon Farm ridge. Gouzeaucourt was reported to be in the hands of the Germans. An Indian cavalry division was seen coming up from the south-east of Revelon.

Another message from the division reached the brigade at 1 p.m. It ran :

"A line is being taken up for time being from Queen's Cross through Q.34.b and d., W.4.b.W.5.c. Send out patrols N.E. to get touch with enemy or our own troops in direction of Villiers Plouich and find out where line is, and what troops holding it."

At the same time came the following message from Captain P. H. Compton, commanding "C" Squadron of the 6th Dragoon Guards, the advanced squadron at Queen's Cross :

"Am in touch with 5th Cavalry Brigade at Q.35.c.1.6. Germans appear to be in Gouzeaucourt, but do not seem to be west of that place. A battalion of Guards between Queen's Cross and Gouzeaucourt. No report from my patrol as to further situation."

At 1.30 p.m. information gathered from various patrols was sent from the brigade to the division in the following message :

"Situation appears as follows. The Guards are dug in on a good line E. of Queen's Cross. The Durham Light Infantry are also digging in and occupying old German trenches in W.11. and 5. Some 20th Hussars are helping them. The enemy are in Gouzeaucourt and in the mill Q.35.a.6.3. Colonel Willcox has, therefore, counter-ordered the move of the Carabiniers to Gouzeaucourt, and has told "C" Squadron Carabiniers to carry out patrols as laid down (in your message) E.R.112."

At 1.30 p.m. Lieutenant Charlesworth, with a patrol of the Carabiniers, entered Gouzeaucourt and found Germans at the eastern end of the village. He rallied a number of men of the Army Service Corps and other troops, and a young officer, all of whom he found in the village. With them he formed a defensive post in the village, which held on until the Guards arrived.

At 3 p.m. another message was sent by the brigade to the division :

"Patrols report enemy hold Gouzeaucourt and ridge through R.31. Villers - Plouich being heavily shelled. 1st Guards Brigade reported to be attacking Gouzeaucourt. Further report from artillery officer states that Beaucamp is held by the enemy, and that fighting is proceeding there."

General Pitman now returned to the command of the brigade. A little after 3 o'clock the 4th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to push up to Gouzeaucourt and operate on the north side of the village. The brigade moved off in the following order: 6th Dragoon Guards, Oxford Hussars, 4th Machine-gun Squadron, 3rd Hussars. Moving by the valley between Queen's Cross and Gouzeaucourt, the brigade reached a point on the Beaucamp road some half a mile north-west of Gouzeaucourt; but by that time it was too dark for further operations across country. Touch was obtained with the Guards, and information by patrols was to the effect that the Guards,

with Germans in front of them, were on the high ground between Gouzeaucourt and Gonnellieu, and that they were in touch with the 5th Cavalry Brigade on their right. The situation in Villers-Plouich and la Vacquerie was obscure. On the infantry line being firmly established in front of the brigade it withdrew to the vicinity of Queen's Cross, and eventually to Dessart Wood, patrols being left out and amongst them that of Second-Lieutenant N. V. Cannon as liaison with the 3rd Guards Brigade in Gouzeaucourt. Meanwhile orders were issued for the 2nd Cavalry Division to attack on the line Villers-Ghuislain-la Vacquerie in the early morning. "As soon as there was light enough to see," the two leading brigades, the 5th and 4th, were to advance upon their objectives on the above line and drive back the enemy. These orders were cancelled.

At 5 a.m. on the 1st December an officer's patrol, under Second-Lieutenant A. Dilberoglue, was despatched to discover the situation in Villers-Plouich and la Vacquerie, with orders to return from the latter village; similar patrols were also sent out from the other regiments to different localities. The 5th Cavalry Division, plus a brigade of the 4th Cavalry Division, co-operating with fourteen tanks, attacked Gauche Wood and Villers-Ghuislain, and as they moved forward the Guards Division carried out an assault on the Quentin Ridge. The 2nd Cavalry Division was ordered to assemble, ready to move, just north-east of Fins, with one regiment of the 4th Cavalry Brigade pushed forward. At 7 a.m. the 6th Dragoon Guards moved to a position of readiness at the southern end of Gouzeaucourt Wood, while the remainder of the brigade stood to at half an hour's notice in the Dessart Wood bivouac. Two more officers' patrols, under Lieutenant R. A. Kettle and Second-Lieutenant A. C. B. Freeman, were despatched to various points at 7 o'clock, while at 8.15 a.m. Lieutenant H. R. Barton and Second-Lieutenant H. T. Bromley were sent off upon route reconnaissance. The gist of the reports from some of the officers of the division on patrol was as follows :

6.50 a.m.—The line runs through Gauche Wood and St. Quentin mill. The Guards are holding the line on the right of Gouzeaucourt. The Guards attacked at 6.35 a.m. from this line ; the attack still continues.

7.45 a.m.—One battalion 6th Division on high ground west of Villers-Plouich. British support line running through R.8 and 14, then turning slightly south-west, fairly strongly held. 2nd Battalion Scots Guards is just west of road Villers-Plouich-Ribécourt and in touch with Guards on right.

8.20 a.m.—The 3rd Coldstream report capture of ridge in R.32.e. and X.2.a. All tanks which attacked are out of action and burning.

8.30 a.m.—Indian Cavalry in Gauche Wood. Villers-Ghuislain held by enemy and heavy machine-gun fire from the village. Guards have taken all their objectives. 61st Division have one brigade in each at Heudicourt, Metz, and Fins, their rôle being to support any troops of the III, IV, and VII Corps which require it. 69th Division report line at Bourlon Wood intact.

9.10 a.m.—1st Guards report the capture of the ridge from eastern end of Gauche Wood to and including Gonnellieu, and the line is being consolidated.

At 5.15 p.m. a working party of 3 officers and 140 men, under Lieutenant E. Ainger, went with a contingent from the brigade to work upon a new reserve line on the Revelon farm ridge ; they returned at 11.30 p.m.

The news from the divisional Headquarters at 7 p.m. was to the effect that the "Left of the VII Corps rests on Vaucellette Farm and the right of the III Corps, the Guards Division, rests on Gauche Wood (exclusive). The Cavalry Corps will be responsible for filling the gap between the III and VII Corps to-night. The 4th Cavalry Division will have its right in touch with VII Corps on the right, and its left in touch with the 5th Cavalry Division. The 5th Cavalry Division will extend its line north in touch with Guards Division north of Gauche Wood, and will be responsible for the Defence of Gauche Wood. A support line is being dug to-night by 1st Cavalry Division running

approximately from Vaucellette Farm through W.18, W.12, and W5."

On the 2nd the following order reached the Regiment from the brigade at 8 a.m.: "One squadron will remain saddled up all day. The Regiment must be prepared to turn out sharp in half an hour from receipt of order." The B Echelon was moved some four miles west to Manancourt, and at 5.15 p.m. a similar working party to that of yesterday turned out under Second-Lieutenant P. A. Waterlow. Officers' patrols were again out from the brigade, the 3RD finding one under Lieutenant Barton. At 10.45 p.m. came the following order from the brigade:

"Units will be prepared to move mounted at half an hour's notice after 6.30 a.m. to-morrow. The division is at the disposal of the III Corps after 6.30 a.m."

At 9 a.m. on the 3rd the division was ordered to "stand to" to move to Epéhy, and a squadron of the 3RD remained saddled up until 1.35 p.m., when the order was changed to be ready for a move north. At 5 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Dismounted Battalion under 3RD Hussars Headquarters was ordered to be ready all night to turn out to support the 1st Cavalry (Division) Dismounted Brigade in Gauche Wood. This was followed at 8.30 p.m. by an order from the brigade:

"In the event of the 4th Dismounted Battalion being required to turn out to-night to reinforce the 1st Cavalry Division, the battalion will turn out as strong as possible, leaving a few men to look after the horses if the diggers have not returned. If the diggers have returned, the battalion will turn out at trench strength. The brigade-major will come up to battalion Headquarters to give Colonel Willcox instructions as to action of the battalion."

There was some bombing during the night by German aeroplanes, and a number of tanks took up their position by our bivouac. Hard frost.

The 4th found the 2nd Cavalry (Division) Dismounted Brigade standing to and ordered to relieve the 1st Dismounted Brigade at night.

The strength of the 4th Dismounted Cavalry Battalion was :

	Officers.	Other Ranks.
Battalion Headquarters (3RD Hussars) . . . . .	6	27
8th Dragoon Guards Company . . . . .	5	176
3RD Hussars Company . . . . .	5	173
Oxford Hussars Company . . . . .	5	196
Total . . . . .	21	572

The 3RD Hussars supplied the following officers in the above :

*Battalion Headquarters :*

Lieutenant-Colonel W. T. Willcox, C.M.G. . . . .	Commanding Battalion.
Captain and Adjutant A. M. Bell . . . . .	Adjutant.
Lieutenant H. M. Naylor . . . . .	Intelligence Officer.
Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.S. . . . .	Medical Officer.

*3rd Hussars Company.*

Captain J. J. Dobie . . . . .	Commanding Company.
Lieutenant E. Ainger . . . . .	Second in command.
Second-Lieutenant W. G. N. H. Dalrymple . . . . .	Commanding "A" Squadron Platoon.
Second-Lieutenant A. Dilberoglue . . . . .	Commanding "C" Squadron Platoon.
Second-Lieutenant P. A. Waterlow . . . . .	Commanding "B" Squadron Platoon.

At noon the company commanders and their "runners" (messengers) left for the 2nd Battalion Headquarters of the 1st Cavalry Division to reconnoitre the line to be taken up. The battalion left at 4.30 p.m., and marched across country by Revelon Farm, and relieved the 2nd Dismounted Battalion (companies of the 4th Dragoon Guards, 9th Lancers, and 18th Hussars) in and around Gauche Wood.





Half-limbers marched behind companies to a spot near battalion Headquarters carrying tools, etc., and returned to bivouac. The relief was completed without casualty at 10.15 p.m. The 6th Dragoon Guards company was in Gauche Wood in touch with the Guards Division on its left; the 3rd Hussars company was on the right in the open just south of the wood and in touch with the 16th Lancers company (of the 3rd Dismounted Battalion) at Chapel Crossing; the Oxford Hussars were in reserve at battalion Headquarters, which was situated in the bank of a sunken road not far from the western edge of the wood. The enemy shelled all parts of the battalion sector intermittently during the night. All the trenches in the sector were very bad, and not continuous, and work was done throughout the night upon a new support trench running through the wood. The patrols during the night reported sounds of digging and talking from the direction of Villers-Ghuislain, and transport was also heard in the same direction. Hard frost. During the night the Guards Brigade on the left was relieved by South African Infantry.

The following was the scheme of defence: Firstly, to reinforce the front line: secondly, if the front line is driven in from the eastern edge of the wood, it will occupy the new support trench in the wood; if it be driven out of Gauche Wood, it will occupy and hold the ridge at battalion Headquarters, overlooking the railway, while the right company holds on to the bank just east of the railway. The battalion, if driven from the line of the railway, will fall back on the new reserve line dug by the 2nd Cavalry Division, which is to be held at all costs; but as long as the infantry on the left are holding their portion of the line of railway the 4th Battalion will hold on to its line of railway, calling for reinforcements from the 12th Lancers company of the 5th Dismounted Battalion in reserve at Revelon Farm. The 8th Hussars and the 18th (Indian) Lancers of the Ambala Cavalry Brigade of the 5th Cavalry Division are holding the new reserve line behind the 4th Battalion.

On the 5th we stood to arms at 5 a.m. until 6.45. Nothing much had happened during the night beyond a certain amount of machine-gun fire on the part of the enemy and desultory shelling. At 6.30 a.m. the wood and the right sector were heavily shelled by the Germans for an hour, who then switched on to the area between battalion Headquarters and the wood for another hour at 7.45. At 10 o'clock a hostile balloon went up bearing 20 degrees from battalion Headquarters. The Brigadier and Commanding Officers of the 27th Infantry Brigade arrived during the morning to reconnoitre the line preparatory to taking it over at night. The enemy shelled the whole of the battalion sector throughout the day, and there was much sniping of Gauche Wood, while machine guns were very active against the 3RD Hussars. Soon after the evening stand to arms at 4.30, a warning arrived from the dismounted brigade Headquarters that there was considerable activity, and an apparent massing of Germans, behind Villers-Ghuislain. The front line was promptly warned and the information sent to the infantry on our left. Shortly after a heavy British shelling of Villers-Ghuislain began and drew a German retaliation. An ammunition dump blew up in Villers-Ghuislain and small-arm ammunition continued to explode for some hours. At 5.15 a message was sent to dismounted brigade Headquarters, that so far there was no sign of an infantry attack, and at 5.40, the front line patrols reporting all quiet, the battalion stood down, and the brigade was informed. The relief of the battalion by two battalions of the 27th Infantry Brigade commenced at 6.30 p.m. The 9th Scottish Rifles were the first to arrive, and relieved the 3RD Hussars company on the right at 7.45 p.m. It was some time after that the 6th King's Own Scottish Borderers arrived, but by 10.20 p.m. they had relieved the Carabiniers in Gauche Wood, and the Oxford's company in support, when the brigade was informed that the relief was complete and battalion Headquarters retired. On relief the companies marched back to the horses in Dessart Wood independently, following the same route by which they had come,

and the limbers going by Heudicourt. All units of the battalion were back at their regimental Headquarters by midnight, where the men found hot soup awaiting them, and—but it should be written in letters of gold—the officers of each company found a bottle of champagne, the generous gift of a thoughtful Brigadier. It was in the 3RD Hussars company that the sentiment was expressed, “Tommy Pitman is a brick. I wonder where he got it from.” No doubt similar expressions of sentiment were heard in the other companies. *Mon Général*, if you ever read these lines, take it from me that your kindly and thoughtful act to cold and weary men was never forgotten during the remaining months of war by the 3RD Hussars—for the whole Regiment knew of it. Orders to march on the morrow were also awaiting us.

The casualties in the 4th Cavalry Brigade during the battle of Cambrai were :

	Killed.		Wounded.		Missing.	
	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Officers.	Other Ranks.
6th Dragoon Guards	—	—	1	26	—	2
3RD Hussars	—	7	2	34	—	—
Oxford Hussars	—	1	—	12	—	—
4th Machine-gun Squadron	—	1	1	19	—	—
	1	9	4	91	—	2

Amongst the horses in the 3RD, 19 were evacuated to hospital for various causes, 2 died, 1 was destroyed, and 13 were missing.

It was while the division was in Bourlon Wood that the following order was published :

“General Sir Julian Byng, commanding the 3RD Army, has just paid a personal visit to the division in order to express his warmest thanks to the troops, and his appreciation of the valuable services they have rendered, especially in the defence of Bourlon Wood.

“The Army Commander is deeply grateful to all ranks of the division.” (Dated 29th November.)

Major-General W. H. Greenly, commanding the 2nd

Cavalry Division, communicated the following order on the 8th December :

" I wish to congratulate all ranks of the division upon the admirable way in which you met the many and very varied demands made upon you during the recent operations.

" Fighting, work, continuous exposure and want of rest were all carried through with a courage and determination which no troops could surpass, and I wish once again to record my deepest admiration and appreciation of your conduct and services.

" I wish also to congratulate all concerned, but especially the squadron and troop commanders, upon the present condition of the horses ; the fact that they have maintained their efficiency as they have is not only the best proof of the good working condition in which you produced them, but also the best reward for the unremitting work and care previously devoted to them."

In reply to a message from the Commanding Officer on behalf of the Regiment, to General Sir Julian Byng, Colonel of the 3RD Hussars, congratulating him upon his promotion to General, he wrote, " My warmest thanks for your message from the Regiment. Good luck to you all."

The march of the brigade on the 6th was by Heudicourt, Longavesnes, Marquaix, to Boucly. The march took some time as, owing to the march north of infantry, Marquaix was not to be entered until noon. The following day's march was by le Mesnil to Brie, then over the Somme, and by the totally destroyed villages of Villers-Carbonnel and Estrées to Warfusée-Abancourt and to Fouilly, where the men were in tents and the horses in the open. On the 8th the route followed was Blangy, Boves, Sains-en-Amienois, St. Sauflieu, Nampty, Quevaucillers, to billets about Fresnoy. Headquarters and " A " Squadron were in Fresnoy, " B " in Montenoy, but moved next day to the more roomy village of Moyencourt, " C " in Bussy.

On the 13th the Regiment was warned to provide a dismounted company for the trenches. It left on the 18th



GENERAL LORD BYNG OF VIMY, G.C.B., G.C.M.G., M.V.O.  
Colonel of the 3RD Hussars, 3rd May 1912 to 21st January 1924. War commands: 3rd Cavalry  
Division, Cavalry Corps, IX and XVII Corps, Canadian Corps, and Third Army.

Cavalry Division  
8th December :

" I wish to co  
admirable way  
demands made

" Fighting, w  
were all carried  
which no troop  
record my dec  
conduct and se

" I wish also  
the squadron  
condition of th  
their efficiency  
the good work  
but also the be  
previously dev

In reply to  
behalf of the  
of the 3RD H  
to General, he  
from the Reg

The march  
Longavesnes,  
time as, owin  
not to be er  
was by le M  
totally destr  
to Warfusée-  
in tents and  
followed wa  
Nampty, Q  
quarters an  
Montenoy, l  
of Moyenco  
On the  
dismounted

the other companies from the brigade for the trenches  
 Villeret. Composition of the company :

Captain C. F. Clarke . . . . .	Commanding
1st Lieutenant W. G. Dalrymple . . . . .	Second in command
1st Lieutenant F. Craig . . . . .	Platoon commander
1st Lieutenant L. W. Irons . . . . .	" "
1st Lieutenant B. C. Robinson . . . . .	" "
1st Lieutenant A. S. Booth . . . . .	" "

98 other ranks and 12 Hotchkiss rifles, while 9 other  
 joined the dismounted Headquarters. The company  
 organized in three platoons, and its departure left  
 grooming state of the Regiment at four horses to  
 1.  
 The company left the Regiment in motor-buses on the  
 for Saleux, where it spent the night. The following  
 ing it went on by train to Roisel, reaching that place at  
 ay. There the company detrained and marched to  
 elles, arriving at 3 p.m., and went into huts and under  
 as for the night. On the 21st the company paraded  
 30 a.m., and marched to Cote Wood, which it reached  
 1.30, and took over support trenches from " B " Com-  
 of the 1st North Staffordshire Regiment. Apparently  
 was not accommodation for the whole of the dis-  
 mounted battalion in these trenches, and the 3RD's company  
 ordered to march back to Vendelles, which was reached  
 p.m. Early next morning the company was ordered  
 turn to Cote Wood. This was promptly cancelled, and  
 hundred men marched up, the remainder following the  
 day. While in Cote Wood the usual working and wiring  
 ies in the front line carried on. On the 26th the battalion  
 t into the front line in relief of the Scots Greys. The  
 ord Hussars went into the left sector, the Carabiniers  
 e in the centre, and the 3RD on the right. The company  
 ched by platoons into the line, " B " Squadron being  
 he right, " A " on the left, and " C " in reserve. Three  
 s of the 12th Lancers were also put into Captain Clarke's  
 mand. The 3RD already held a thousand yards of





with the other companies from the brigade for the trenches at Villeret. Composition of the company :

Captain C. F. Clarke . . . .	Commanding
Lieutenant W. G. Dalrymple . . . .	Second in command
Lieutenant F. Craig . . . .	Platoon commander
Lieutenant L. W. Irons . . . .	„ „
Second-Lieutenant B. C. Robinson . . . .	„ „
Second-Lieutenant A. S. Booth . . . .	„ „

and 198 other ranks and 12 Hotchkiss rifles, while 9 other ranks joined the dismounted Headquarters. The company was organized in three platoons, and its departure left the grooming state of the Regiment at four horses to a man.

The company left the Regiment in motor-buses on the 19th for Saleux, where it spent the night. The following morning it went on by train to Roisel, reaching that place at midday. There the company detrained and marched to Vendelles, arriving at 3 p.m., and went into huts and under canvas for the night. On the 21st the company paraded at 8.30 a.m., and marched to Cote Wood, which it reached at 10.30, and took over support trenches from "B" Company of the 1st North Staffordshire Regiment. Apparently there was not accommodation for the whole of the dismounted battalion in these trenches, and the 3RD's company was ordered to march back to Vendelles, which was reached at 4 p.m. Early next morning the company was ordered to return to Cote Wood. This was promptly cancelled, and one hundred men marched up, the remainder following the next day. While in Cote Wood the usual working and wiring parties in the front line carried on. On the 26th the battalion went into the front line in relief of the Scots Greys. The Oxford Hussars went into the left sector, the Carabiniers were in the centre, and the 3RD on the right. The company marched by platoons into the line, "B" Squadron being on the right, "A" on the left, and "C" in reserve. Three posts of the 12th Lancers were also put into Captain Clarke's command. The 3RD already held a thousand yards of

continuous trench line, and these three extra posts brought it up to something like fifteen hundred yards. The last day of the year saw the dismounted battalion still in the trenches. The time had been quiet, and no activity beyond a steady shelling on both sides and some trench mortar work; but it was bitterly cold, the trenches at times having three feet of snow in them.

## CHAPTER V

1918

THE New Year found the Regiment divided, the horses being at Fresnoy-au-Val, and in the neighbouring villages, a dozen miles south-west of Amiens, while the dismounted company was with the 4th Dismounted Cavalry Battalion in the front-line trenches near Villeret, some eight miles north-west of St. Quentin.

On the 7th January Captain the Hon. Donald Howard and company Headquarters relieved Captain F. C. Clarke and his Headquarters with the dismounted company, and on the 17th a party of fifty-one other ranks relieved a similar number in the trenches.

The dull monotony of trench life went on by day and by night. Nothing very exciting occurred, the usual steady shelling with its equally steady rising in casualties, and minenwerfers, and of course sniping, for the German lines were but a hundred yards away. A sordid life, with nothing of the pomp of war about it. Not the sound of a trumpet or the beat of a hoof; instead wet trenches—when the thaw set in they became very nearly impassable, the left section of the "B" Squadron platoon became isolated, because of water-logged trenches, and its supplies had to come along the slightly better Carabinier line on the left. In many places the trenches were waist-deep in water and mud. The Germans were in equally bad plight in theirs, and it got so bad that for a couple of days both sides did all reliefs and supplies over the top, with a consequent increase in sniping on both sides of No Man's Land. On the 28th the dismounted company rejoined the Regiment on the relief of the 2nd Cavalry Division by the 4th in the trenches. A warning order was received that the division was about to

march to a forward area, and our daily oat ration was reduced by 2 lb., making it 10 lb. per horse.

On the 2nd February an advanced party of twenty other ranks under Lieutenant Huggins left by lorry for Amiens, and thence by rail to Brie for Devise. On the 4th the Regiment marched to its former billets in Remiencourt, Guyencourt, Estrées-sur-Noye, and Dommartin. On the 7th it marched with the brigade by Boves, Cachy, Marcelcave, to Bayonvillers. The next day the march was continued via Proyart, Estrées, Villers-Carbonnel, Brie, and Athies to Devise, where the 3RD went into a camp composed of Adrian and Nissen huts for the officers and men, and sheds for the horses. The brigade was quartered about Devise, with its Headquarters in the village. The 2nd Cavalry Division was concentrated around Athies. Divisional Headquarters were in Athies.

Before going further, let us knock off for a space and look at the situation as it appeared at the beginning of 1918.

That the Germans contemplated a great, and they hoped a final, effort at an unknown date was within everybody's knowledge.

The disappearance of Russia from the war had set free the German and Austrian divisions on the eastern front. Already at the beginning of November last the transfer of German divisions from the Russian to the western front had begun. The enemy would attain a numerical superiority in the west, and a large number of Russian guns and munitions had no doubt fallen into his hands.

On the British front our own and the French Governments had arranged for the extension of the British line, and by the end of January an additional twenty-eight miles had been taken over, French troops being relieved on the British right as far as the village of Barisis, three miles south of the river Oise. This gave the British Armies an active front of some 125 miles.

Again, to look at the adverse side of the picture, the year 1917 had been a strenuous one for the British as regards

fighting, and had left the Army at a low ebb, both as regards man-power and training.

It was decided to turn from the offensive to the defensive, and preparations were made, in the short time available, to meet a strong and sustained hostile offensive. Much work had to be done on the British line, especially so south of Arras, in the country which the enemy had devastated in his retirement last year, and on the Somme battle-fields, and in the area recently taken over from the French. All this work left but little opportunity for training, for every fighting unit was busy at it as well as the labour battalions.

The indications of the coming storm were that, from November, thirty-four enemy divisions had been transferred to the western front, that more were coming, that his heavy artillery in the west had greatly increased, and that his communications opposite us had been and were being vastly improved. By the end of February all these, and other, indications had become very marked opposite the Third and Fifth British Armies in the south. An attack against this portion of the line would obviously have for its object the separation of the French and British Armies, and the capture of Amiens. To meet this more than half of the available British troops were allocated to the defence of this sector, together with the whole of the cavalry. When the storm actually broke the German infantry divisions in the west numbered 192, an increase of 42 since November.

The front of the Fifth Army, the most southern army and that which covered Amiens, was forty-two miles, and the number of its divisions only allowed of an average of one division to about 6,750 yards of front. The line General Gough's Fifth Army held was from north of Gouzeaucourt to the junction with the French just south of Barisis. To the north of the Fifth, the Third Army held a front of twenty-seven miles, the front of each division being 4,700 yards.

On the 21st March, the first day of battle in the German offensive, at least 64 German divisions took part in the operations, a number considerably exceeding the entire British Army in France. Of these no less than 40 German divisions

were set in motion against the Fifth Army on the first day. To meet this assault the Fifth Army stood at 14 divisions and 3 cavalry divisions, while the Third Army had 8 divisions in line and 7 divisions in reserve.

The general principle of the defence was the distribution of the troops in depth. First came the lightly held outpost line. Then the battle line. Finally the line upon which the fate of the British Empire was to be decided, and with the British Empire that of Europe. All three lines in the south were swept away by the German flood, but, it needs no historian to tell, the British Army stood at bay in front of Amiens, as it had done in front of Ypres, and once again saved its country and Europe.

We will now turn to a paper published in the Fifth Army on the 25th January by its Commander, General Sir H. de la P. Gough, which in the light of after-events is of interest. In a covering letter he said: "I enclose a paper I wrote by way of showing our young officers and our men what the general situation now is, and the necessity for a renewal of our Courage and our Resolution. I particularly wanted to point out, also, how everyone can help by maintaining a cheerful spirit all round. . . ."

In his paper he wrote:

"Having at their disposal a large number of divisions released from the Russian front, there is a probability that the Germans will employ them in striking a blow at the Allies on the western front in the hope of gaining a decisive victory.

"They are openly stating that blood must be spilt like water, but that it will be worth it, as the coming battle will be the last battle of the war, and after that will come the longed-for German peace, with all the world under their heel, including, and, more particularly, our own beloved Country and People.

"A great deal of this is being said to raise the hopes and moral of their men, who are war-weary, and to stiffen their resolution. . . .

"Should such an attack come on us, I am confident that it will find us all, and our neighbours, ready and united in their resolve to defeat it; but this, in itself, is not enough

to ensure success, unless all have striven to the utmost beforehand to render success certain by concentrating all their endeavours on making our defences such that, however sudden or strong the attack may be, it will, without fail, be broken by the efficiency of our defences as well as by the gallantry of our troops. In view of the uncertainty as to when this attack may be launched, each day is of importance and should be taken full advantage of; every trench dug, machine gun emplaced, length of wire put out, may prove of vital importance in holding up the enemy.

"There is no doubt that this attack, if it should come, will be the climax of the German effort, and if all the necessary preparations have been made to meet it, and each officer and man welcomes it, as all German counter-attacks have been welcomed in the past, then it will cause them as heavy sacrifices and as bitter a defeat as they suffered in any of their great attacks, such as the first battle of Ypres, or Verdun, and such a blow may be given to the German Power that Peace will indeed come; but the Peace which is the only acceptable one to the Allies, a Peace which, as the result of victory, will ensure our women and children security.

"What is now required is gallant and cheerful hearts, putting our utmost energy into all work for improving our defences, and, when the time comes, showing a grit, determination, and pluck which will inflict bloody losses in the Bosche ranks and give their troops a shattering blow. . . ."

To resume our narrative. We left the Regiment, having arrived at Devise on the 8th. The 2nd Cavalry Division was in mobile reserve to the Cavalry Corps, which was holding the front-line trenches east of Vendelles and Bihécourt. The brigades in turn were duty brigades for nine days standing to and ready to turn out at short notice, and having a duty regiment ready to turn out at once, regiments being on duty for three days. Meanwhile, strenuous work on the camp went on. The huts and stables had to be made splinter proof, and the camp generally protected from hostile aircraft attack, while Hotchkiss rifles were mounted on anti-aircraft mountings. Reconnaissance of the brown line about Bihécourt and Vendelles by all officers was also carried out. Such was the life for the remainder of the month.



## Strength of the Regiment on the 28th February :

	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
With the Regiment	18	413	466
On courses, etc.	17	92	52
Total	35	505	518

On the morning of the 1st March the Regiment marched to St. Christ, between Athies and the Somme. Here it doubled up with the Carabiniers. The camps of the brigade at Devise were taken over by units of the 24th Infantry Division.

On the 3rd the division went into the trenches, relieving the 1st Cavalry Division. The 4th Dismounted Battalion was under the command of Captain J. Jardine Dobie, 3RD Hussars. The company from the 3RD numbered 5 officers and 194 other ranks. The battalion assembled at Ennemain and marched mounted by Tertry to Vermand, where it spent the night, the horses being brought back to St. Christ by a led horse party. At 7 p.m. on the 4th the battalion marched to the trenches north-east of Vadencourt in relief of the 1st Dismounted Battalion. The 3RD Hussars took over the trenches of the 5th Dragoon Guards, the right resting on the river l'Omignon. The Oxford Hussars relieved the 11th Hussars on the left, and the Carabiniers were in reserve. Each regimental company had a squadron in the outpost line, where a series of small posts were held, and two squadrons in the Red, or support line. The reserve company was at Vadencourt Château, which stood on a slight rise, and was arranged for all-round defence and was being made into a strong point. No Man's Land here was some thousand yards wide, and every night a patrol of an officer and twenty other ranks was sent out by each regiment to reconnoitre and control it. Nothing of great interest occurred during the stay of the battalion in these trenches, and the time was devoted to improving them, much hard work being put in. On the 7th the 3RD and Carabiniers changed places, and on the 11th the battalion handed the trenches over to the 8th Battalion of the Royal West Kent Regiment (72nd

Brigade, 24th Division). The 24th Division took over this portion of the line from the Cavalry Corps, and it was in these trenches that that division, a few days later, fought so gallantly against the German advance. The line on either side of it had been broken, but the 24th Division held on until the danger of being surrounded forced it to fight its way back. By the evening of the 11th the units of the dismounted battalion had rejoined their regiments; the battalion had come back in motor-lorries.

On the 12th the 2nd Cavalry Division was under orders to march to the III Corps area to act as a mobile reserve to that corps. Next day the brigade assembled at Croix-Molignaux at 9 a.m., and marched via Matigny, Ham, and Guiscard to Grandru, a few miles north-east of Noyan. Here the horses were picketed in the woods, and the men were in tents in the woods, great precautions being taken to avoid discovery by hostile aircraft. The country was hilly and well wooded. The III Corps held the line south of St. Quentin from Itancourt to Basse Forêt, on the right of the British line. In the event of the enemy breaking the line and capturing certain strong points behind it, the probable rôle of the division was to at once counter-attack against those points. The dismounted parties in the brigades were formed in readiness. Appilly, south of Grandru, was the spot selected for the dismounted 4th Cavalry Brigade to board its lorries. Various reconnaissances by officers of the Regiment were carried out, amongst them that of a strong point in the vicinity of Essigny, south of St. Quentin with a view to a possible counter-attack.

The advent of spring, the 21st March, was at hand. The German, with his usual arrogance, had encouraged his war-worn soldiery with the promise that with spring they would drive the hated "Englander" to the sea.

On the 19th it was known that the final stages of the enemy's preparations on the Arras-St. Quentin front were approaching completion, and information pointed to the fact that his attack would be launched on the 20th or 21st.

On the British side the dispositions to meet the German

onslaught were as complete as the troops available could make them in the time.

The British Army waited with the utmost confidence.

At 4.30 a.m. on the 21st March the storm broke. With the accompaniment of an intense bombardment the German flood was set in motion. The god of war was not on our side that morning, for a very thick white fog prevailed everywhere along that devoted British front line. S.O.S. signals sent up by the outpost lines were not seen behind. Telephone lines cut by the bombardment were useless for communication. So thick was the fog that the front lines were robbed of the help and support of the guns. Masses of German infantry appearing out of that thick mist, and only a few yards away, meant hand-to-hand fighting, and nothing else—and our men did fight.

A glance at Sir Douglas Haig's despatch will give a general idea of the course of the battle :

“ Shortly before 5 a.m. on the 21st March a bombardment of great intensity with gas and high explosive shell from all natures of artillery and trench mortars was opened against practically the whole fronts of the Fifth and Third Armies from the Oise to the Scarpe River, while road centres and railways as far back as St. Pol were engaged by high velocity guns. Violent bombardments were opened also on the French front in wide sectors east and north-east of Reims, and on portions of the British front between the Scarpe River and Lens. Our positions from south of the La Bassée Canal to the river Lys were heavily shelled with gas, and battery areas between the Scarpe and the Ypres-Comines Canal were actively engaged. Dunkirk was bombarded from the sea.

“ The hour of the enemy's assault varied in different sectors, but by 9.45 a.m. a general attack had been launched on a battle front of fifty-four miles between the Oise and the Sensée Rivers. Later in the day, as visibility improved, large numbers of low-flying aeroplanes attacked our troops and batteries.

“ Favoured by a thick white fog, which hid from our artillery and machine gunners the S.O.S. signals sent up by our outpost line, and in numbers which made loss of

direction impossible, the attacking German infantry forced their way into our foremost defensive zone. Until 1 p.m. the fog made it impossible to see more than 50 yards in any direction, and the machine guns and forward field guns which had been disposed so as to cover this zone with their fire were robbed almost entirely of their effect. The detachments holding the outpost positions were consequently overwhelmed or surrounded, in many cases before they were able to pass back information concerning the enemy's attack.

"The attack being expected, reserves had been brought forward, and battle stations manned. On all parts of the battle front garrisons of redoubts and strong points in the forward zone held out with the utmost gallantry for many hours. From some of them wireless messages were received up to a late hour in the day, giving information of much value. The losses which they were able to inflict upon the enemy were undoubtedly very great, and materially delayed his advance. The prolonged defence of these different localities, under conditions which left little hope of any relief, deserve to rank among the most heroic actions in the history of the British Army.

"So intense was the enemy's bombardment that at an early hour our communications were severed, and so swift was his advance, under the covering blanket of the mist, that certain of our more advanced batteries found the German infantry close upon them before they had received warning from their own infantry that the expected attack had been launched. Many gallant deeds were performed by the personnel of such batteries, and on numerous occasions heavy losses were inflicted on bodies of hostile troops by guns firing over open sights at point-blank range.

"Fighting in and in front of our battle positions continued with the greatest intensity throughout the afternoon and evening. Except for certain small gains, the enemy was held by our defence, and even driven back in places by our counter-attacks. Reports received from all parts of the front testified to the unusual severity of his losses.

"The most serious progress made by the enemy during this part of the struggle was on the right, south of St. Quentin. From the eastern portion of the village of Fargnier the enemy pressed on and captured Quessy." North of this point the 18th Division, reinforced by troops

of the 2nd Cavalry Division, still held their battle positions intact, though threatened on both flanks by the enemy's progress at Quessy and at Benay, and successfully restored the situation in the neighbourhood of Ly Fontaine by a counter-attack. Many of the strong points in the forward zone on the front of this division were also holding out, though surrounded. Wireless messages from their gallant defenders were received as late as 8.30 p.m., and rifle-fire was heard in their vicinity until midnight.

"Between the neighbourhood of Benay and the Somme canal the enemy, by the evening, had forced back our troops, after heavy fighting, to the rear line of their battle positions. Parties of our infantry, however, were still holding out east and north-east of Essigny, and certain of our troops in front of this line were still intact."

On the remainder of the Fifth Army front our battle positions still held.

On the Third Army front, although the enemy had made some advance, he had not gained as much ground as he had in the more thinly held line south of St. Quentin.

"At the end of the first day, therefore, the enemy had made very considerable progress, but he was still firmly held in the battle-zone in which it had been anticipated that the real struggle would take place. Nowhere had he effected that immediate break-through for which his troops had been training for many weeks, and such progress as he had made had been bought at a cost which had already greatly reduced his chances of carrying out his ultimate purpose.

"On the morning of the 22nd March (the second day of the battle) the ground was again enveloped in thick mist, under cover of which the enemy renewed his attacks in great strength all along the line. Fighting was again very heavy, and short-range fire from guns, rifles, and machine guns caused enormous losses to the enemy's troops. The weight of his attack, however, combined with the impossibility of observing beforehand and engaging with artillery the massing of his troops, enabled him to press forward."

The fight for the Crozat canal in the south is of interest to this story.

"The enemy advanced during the morning as far as the line of the canal at Jussy, and a fierce struggle commenced for the passage of the canal, his troops bringing up trench mortars and machine guns, and endeavouring to cross on rafts under cover of their fire. At 1 p.m. he succeeded in effecting a crossing at Quessy, and made a progress during the afternoon on the direction of Vouel. His further advance in this sector, however, was delayed by the gallant resistance of troops of the 58th Division at Tergnier, and it was not until evening, after many costly attempts and much sanguinary fighting, that the enemy gained possession of this village. During the afternoon hostile infantry crossed the canal also at La Montagne and at Jussy, but in both cases were counter-attacked and driven back by troops of the 18th Division and 2nd Cavalry Division."

It should be noted that during the preceding night it had been decided to withdraw the divisions of the III Corps behind the Crozat canal. Other withdrawals farther north were also carried out during the night, but they do not immediately affect this story, which is with the III Corps. North of the Fifth Army the battle front of the Third Army was also the scene of desperate fighting, but without any great success for the German.

During the late afternoon and evening, taking advantage of a gap which had occurred, strong bodies of German troops broke through the third defensive line about Vaux and Beauvois west of St. Quentin. No further support was within reach of the fighting line, for all the available reserves at the disposal of the Fifth Army had been thrown into the fight. There was no other course open but to fall back upon the bridgehead positions east of the Somme, and orders to that effect were issued by the Fifth Army at 11 p.m. The withdrawals were carried out under constant pressure by the enemy, and continued to the west bank of the river. "On the Third Army front also, certain necessary readjustments of our line were carried out during the night."

In the south on the III Corps front the enemy had recommenced his attacks on the 23rd.

"The footing obtained by him on the west bank of the Crozat canal was gradually increased, in spite of counter-attacks by British and French troops at Tergnier and at other points. During the morning he forced the passage of the canal at Jussy, where he was reported to have employed tanks east of the canal. Shortly afterwards hostile infantry crossed at Mennessis. By midday our troops had been pressed back from the line of the canal to the wooded ground to the west, where fierce confused fighting continued throughout the afternoon about Noureux, Failleul and Cugny, infantry and cavalry offering a most resolute resistance to the enemy's advance, and performing many gallant actions.

"In the course of the withdrawal to the Somme on the previous night, a gap occurred in our line in the neighbourhood of Ham, and the enemy, following closely upon our troops, entered the town during the early morning.

"Farther north, the withdrawal to the west bank of the Somme was carried out successfully during the morning and early afternoon.

"On the Third Army front, where our resources were greater, the enemy was held in check.

"At the junction of the Third and Fifth Armies the situation was less satisfactory, and as the day wore on it became critical, as gaps occurred during the retreat—gaps which the enemy rapidly exploited.

Meanwhile, on the 23rd March, "arrangements were made for the French to take over as rapidly as possible the front held by the Fifth Army south of Péronne, and for the concentration of a strong force of French divisions on the southern portion of the battle front."

By nightfall on the 24th the enemy had succeeded in crossing the Somme at Pargny and had reached Morchain.

"In the area between the Somme and the Oise the enemy's attacks had recommenced at dawn (24th) in thick fog, and were pressed with great energy." "Throughout the whole of the fighting in this area very gallant work was done, both mounted and dismounted, by units of the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions, in support of our own and the French infantry. The work of the mounted troops, in particular,

was invaluable, demonstrating in marked fashion the importance of the part which cavalry have still to play in modern war. So urgent was the demand for more mounted men that arrangements were made during the progress of the battle to provide with horses several regiments of yeomanry, who had but recently been dismounted for employment with other arms. Without the assistance of mounted troops, skilfully handled and gallantly led, the enemy could scarcely have been prevented from breaking through the long and thinly held front of broken and wooded ground before the French reinforcements had had time to arrive. Though French troops were coming rapidly to the assistance of the III Corps, which on this day passed under the command of the 3rd French Army, the Allied forces were not yet in sufficient strength to hold up the enemy's advance. After heavy fighting throughout the morning to the east and north of Chauny, our line was gradually forced back to the south and west of that town. In the course of the night the French and British troops immediately north of the Oise were withdrawn to the ridge above Crépigny, whence the line ran across the high ground covering Noyan to the neighbourhood of Guiscard and Libermont.

"During the night (24th-25th) the enemy had gained possession of Guiscard, and in the early morning of the 25th March strongly attacked the Allied positions on the wooded spurs and ridges east and north-east of Noyan. The position of the French and English batteries north of the Oise canal became hazardous, and they were accordingly withdrawn across the canal at Appilly. Dismounted troops of the Canadian Cavalry Brigade actively assisted in covering this withdrawal, which was successfully completed at 1 p.m. Shortly afterwards another heavy attack developed in this sector, and was checked after hard fighting.

"Meanwhile, the enemy's progress south and west of Guiscard had continued, and that night his troops entered Noyan. The French and British troops to the east of the town were therefore ordered to withdraw southwards across the Oise, and by the morning of the 26th March this had been successfully accomplished. After this date the troops of the III Corps were gradually relieved by the French reinforcements and sent north to rejoin the Fifth Army.

"By the 27th the enemy's advance north of the Somme



was checked, and on the arrival of fresh troops our line became stable.

"South of the Somme the retreat continued, until by nightfall on the 28th we held approximately the Amiens defence line from Mezières to Hamel."

The foregoing abstract of the German offensive is written with a view to showing the operations which were more closely connected with this history—those of the III Corps in the south. The retirement of the remainder of the Fifth Army, and that of the Third Army on the northern battle front, is scarcely touched upon. The loss of Epéhy and of the Péronne bridgehead are not mentioned. The retreat across the Somme battle-field, the crossing of the Ancre, the loss of Albert, the fight for the Rosières line, and the attack on Arras find no place. We confine ourselves to the events in the south, and we will delay glancing at the final fighting in the valleys of the Avre and Luce until the Regiment arrives upon the scene.

In order to glance at the general course of the battle we left the Regiment with the 4th Cavalry Brigade at Grandru, the 2nd Cavalry Division being in mobile reserve to the III Corps.

On the 20th March the dismounted parties of the 4th Cavalry Brigade were ordered to be ready to rendezvous at the embussing point at fifty minutes' notice.

On the 21st March, at 4.30 a.m., the Germans opened a heavy bombardment all along the III Corps front. The dismounted regiments of the 4th Cavalry Brigade were ordered to be at the cross-roads north of Appilly at 11 a.m. There they boarded lorries and went by Chauny to a forward position in the vicinity of Viry-Noureuil. Lieutenant-Colonel F. Dugdale, Oxford Hussars, was in command of the party. The Dismounted Regiment of the 3RD Hussars consisted of 214 of all ranks, and was under the command of Captain R. A. Bagnell.

At 7.30 p.m. the dismounted 3RD Hussars received orders to cover the retirement of detachments of The Queen's Regiment and of the Buffs near the Fort of Liez. Owing

to the dark, and there being no guides, and no possibility of reconnaissance, the 3RD were taken into position by the general conducting the operation—that officer's name remains a blank in the general confusion prevailing at the moment, as also does the certainty of his rank. When the retirement of the infantry was completed the 3RD fell back on Liez, each squadron taking it in turn to cover the retirement of the other two. Thanks to the fog of war, vastly increased by the dark night, made extra dark by fog, the 3RD were mistaken for Germans, and fired on by The Queen's. The Regiment moved up to its position near the fort in a column of half-sections, held its position in line, and retired by squadrons with each squadron in line. |

No sooner had the 3RD got back to Liez than orders were given it to make a counter-attack on Fort Liez, because it was thought that some infantry had been left in the fort. After that the 3RD were to form a defensive flank to enable detachments of infantry to retire from their positions near the Bois Vivier.

These orders were issued verbally by the brigade major of the 84th Infantry Brigade—at least it was said to have been the 84th Brigade, but there appears to have been a doubt. As the 3RD had arrived in the dark, no one knew the ground, and no reconnaissance of the position to be attacked could be made. The brigade major had, therefore, been ordered to lead the Regiment in person along the road running from the southern exit of Liez to the Bois de Verger. His instructions were that the Regiment was to be told off in parties of six men at such a distance that each party could just see the next. The whole Regiment was to be along the road with its head near the Bois de Verger, when the command "Right turn" would be given, and each man would turn to the right, and the line would advance to the attack of the fort of Liez. This operation was counter-manded, and luckily so, for, had the attack been launched, it was doomed to failure—all direction would have been lost, for only one man had any idea of what the country was like or what the objectives of attack were—the brigade major,

and the parties of six men would never have kept touch with each other owing to the fog. The Regiment remained on this road (Liez-Vendeuil road), and, forming a defensive flank facing south-east, covered the retirement until all the infantry had crossed the Crozat canal at Liez, when the squadrons fell back over the canal.

At 6 a.m., on the 22nd, the 3RD was ordered to the wood just south of Frières-Faillouel. On arriving there it was ordered to relieve infantry holding a line north of Tergnier. While marching to this position a strong force of Germans which had crossed the Crozat canal attacked our infantry already retiring from Tergnier. The Regiment took up a position east of a wood and engaged the enemy, and with the infantry met the German attack and for the time being held it. In this action the Hotchkiss rifles did some excellent work.

Next day, the 23rd, increasing Germans forced the 3RD back, and during its retirement the Regiment was ordered to take up a position east of Faillouel with the object of defending that village and covering the retirement of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade and infantry. Here the 6th Dragoon Guards took up a position on the right of the 3RD Hussars, and some parties of infantry formed into line on the left. The position was held until late in the day, when the orders for the 3RD were, to fall back on Ugny-le-Gay. During its march the Regiment came under heavy artillery and machine-gun fire.

In the early hours of the 24th the 3RD marched to Neuville-en-Beine to escort a brigade of artillery, which was retiring from that place to Guivry ; the batteries and the 3RD were shelled during the greater part of the retirement.

At Guivry the 3RD was ordered to les Hezettes in support of French infantry. Arriving there during the afternoon, it reported to the French 82nd Regiment of Infantry, which was heavily engaged with a superior force of the enemy. The squadrons took up a position covering the approaches to the village with French infantry on either flank. Soon after, the main French force at Guivry retired from that

place, and was followed by the 82nd Regiment. The 3RD hung on to its position until 6.30 p.m. The Germans worked round both flanks through the woods, and, bringing machine-gun fire to bear on the rear of the squadrons, and at the same time making a frontal attack, forced the Regiment to retire. The Regiment fell back by squadrons through heavy artillery and machine-gun fire to the high ground near Buchoire, which was held by the French. During the course of this action German cavalry patrols had been seen in the distance.

Next day the dismounted Regiment rejoined the led horses.

Meanwhile, the led horses of all three regiments of the brigade, together with the brigade Headquarters, remained in Grandru until the 23rd. On the morning of the 23rd it was reported that the Germans were in Ham. A mounted composite regiment was formed in the 2nd Cavalry Division by order of the III Corps, and was sent to Guiscard for further orders. The three brigades each found a composite squadron of 100 men, and each regiment produced a troop to form its brigade squadron. Lieutenant R. A. Kettle was in command of the troop from the 3RD. The troop paraded at 11.30 a.m., and the men rode off, delighted at the prospect of being employed mounted at last. Many a saddle in the troop was to return empty, including that of its gallant young commander. "Keep galloping, Ulu!" called an officer, as Kettle rode away with his troop, addressing him by his nickname. "Rather," replied the boy. The last heard of him was lying wounded in a ploughed field, which German infantry were entering, and there is but little doubt that, with his revolver, and wounded as he lay, young Kettle sold his life dearly. This composite squadron was put under command of Major Bonham of the Scots Greys, and was employed in the country south of Ham; on the 26th March it was merged into Cook's Force, and the troops rejoined their regiments on the 27th.

At 2.30 p.m. the led horses and transport of the brigade were ordered to the south of the river rise. Crossing the river just south of Babœuf, the column went by Pontoise,

and into bivouac, concealed amongst the trees in the Bois de Carlepont. All the band instruments belonging to the Regiment, which had been collected with some difficulty to form an improvised band, had to be left in Grandru for want of transport, together with, alas, a case of bottled beer.

At three in the afternoon of the next day the brigade marched to les Cloyes on the southern side of the Bois de Carlepont, and orders arrived to send eighty-four horses per regiment for the dismounted parties, which Major H. W. Clinch went in charge of. At les Cloyes, too, a warning order arrived for the brigade to march to Lassigny, but this was changed to Bailly. For Bailly we marched at 6.55 p.m., and, riding through the forest, reached our bivouac at 9.30. A German aeroplane dropped half a dozen bombs about us on the march, and a few more at midnight without doing any damage.

On the 25th, at 4.30 a.m., orders were received to be ready to move at any time after 7 o'clock, and immediately after another order to form a mounted fighting brigade from the led horses, every possible man to be taken. At about the same time most of the dismounted Regiment rejoined. Sent on ahead, the first to arrive at Regimental Headquarters was Lieutenant Huggins—at a glance one could see what had been happening about the Crozat canal. They all wanted to be taken in the brigade being formed, but they were stone cold. For four days and nights they had been continuously on the move, with but little to eat, and fighting all the time, going to the help of British and French alike, and delaying and holding up the German onslaught—veterans nearly all of them, men of Mons and First Ypres, and it was lucky the Army had them.

Taking every available man, the strength of the brigade being formed was as follows :

	Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
6th Dragoon Guards	5	122	130
3rd Hussars	9	142	155
Oxford Hussars	4	71	79
Total	18	335	364
Transport	8 limbers.		

At 11 a.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade marched to Couarcy and there joined similar reduced brigades from the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades; the whole division numbered some 1,100 sabres.

Major-General Greenly had previously been ordered to take over command of the 14th Division, and Brigadier-General Pitman took over command of the 2nd Cavalry Division, and the brigades were commanded by: 3rd, Lieutenant-Colonel Brooke (16th Lancers); 4th, Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox (3rd Hussars); 5th, Lieutenant-Colonel Fane (12th Lancers). Brigadier-General Bell-Smythe was left at Bailly in command of all the led horses and transport of the division.

The division took up positions at Pontoise and Couarcy, patrols were sent out, and the bridge at Pontoise prepared for demolition, while standing patrols were established on the bridges over the Oise at Sempigny, Morlincourt, and Pontoise. At 8 p.m. the division marched for Chiry, crossing the Oise at Ourscamp, and went into bivouac at 10 p.m., with the exception of the 5th Cavalry Brigade, which was ordered to proceed at once and hold Mont Renaud.

Day broke on the 26th with a violent snow-storm. The division was ordered to secure the high wooded ridge west of Noyon called Mont de Porquericourt, and to endeavour to establish connection with the right of the French 10th Division about Beaurains, and, having done so, to hold this position until it could be secured by French infantry. At 10.30 a.m. the 5th Brigade moved off, followed by the 3rd and 4th Brigades in support. On reaching the high ground just north of Dives le Franc, Germans could be seen already in possession of the ridge, while a weak line of French infantry was holding the high ground north and north-west of Dives le Franc. The 5th Brigade then took up a line along the edge of the Bois de la Reserve, overlooking the Suzoy Valley, and the 4th Brigade on the ridge north of Dives le Franc, looking down on Suzoy, the 3rd Hussars being placed east of the cross-roads and the Oxfords west of them in touch with the 5th Brigade on the left, the Carabiniers being in

reserve in Dives le Franc. As the 4th Brigade took up its line the Germans commenced an advance against Dives le Franc. The village was very soon being rattled by the enemy machine guns. There was considerable congestion in the place, for it held the French Headquarters, as well as that of our own division, the led horses of the 4th Brigade, and a fair amount of French transport, and the German machine gunners caused some commotion. The advance, however, was stopped, though a number of Germans got into Suzoy; but there they perforce remained. Soon after, the Carabiniers, under Major Saddler, were sent to fill a gap that was said to exist on the left between the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions. The Carabiniers reported that there was no gap, and they also reported that our 3rd Brigade had filled a gap between the left of the Canadian Cavalry Brigade and Colonel Cook's Composite Regiment on its left, and that the Canadian Cavalry Brigade was attacking the enemy in the Bois des Essarts. Upon the departure of the Carabiniers the 3rd Hussars had been withdrawn into reserve and replaced by French infantry.

At 1.30 p.m. the 3rd Hussars, under Captain Clarke, were sent to support the Canadian attack in the Bois des Essarts, with the further instructions that, should the Canadian attack succeed, the 3rd was to attack Suzoy from that wood. Cantering along in a line of troop columns behind the Bois de la Reserve, they reached a point on the Cuy-Suzoy road near the château, where a runner from the Canadians was met with the information that the Germans had been driven out of the château, and that the Canadian line in the wood ran along the Sceaucourt-Suzoy road. The 3rd dismounted and left the led horses. The Regiment, it will be remembered, was the strength of a squadron, and it was divided into three sections, one from each of the three squadrons. The "A" Squadron section was ordered to get in touch with the right flank of the Canadians, and it had "C" Squadron on its right, "B" being in support. The two leading squadrons moved forward through the wood in extended order, with scouts in front of them. A runner

from the Canadians brought word that they were retiring and were taking up "the line of the château." The squadrons then fell back to the château, and held a line from it to the Cuy-Suzoy road, and machine-gun and rifle fire was opened on them from the edge of the wood north of the château.

Continuing the narrative from Captain Clarke's report, we read :

" I then endeavoured to get into touch with the Canadians, but without success. A party of the 4th Hussars then approached us from the direction of the Bois des Essarts, also stray men from other units ; from none of these could any definite information be obtained, and the situation seemed to be generally obscure. Just then machine-gun and rifle fire was opened on us from the wood north of the château. I was then ordered by a major in a Canadian regiment to hold the portion of the Cuy-Suzoy road just south of the château."

" The 4th Hussars and men of other units now fell back to a position in some old trenches on the forward slope of the high ground between point 125 and the western edge of the Bois de la Reserve. We were then rather heavily shelled, and I saw our ' B ' and ' C ' Squadrons retiring to a position on the right of the 4th Hussars. I therefore waited until they had got into position, and then retired, and got on their right. We were subjected to heavy shell, machine-gun, and rifle fire.

" The enemy was now seen advancing in small parties towards the château, but they were driven back by our fire. Word came in that some of the French had been seen retiring on our right, and ' C ' Squadron had failed to get into touch with the Scots Greys on that flank. No information could be obtained as to the doings of the units on our left, and judging by the sound of firing, fighting seemed to be taking place on our left rear."

" The units on our left fell back, the 3RD Hussars covering their retirement. ' B ' and ' C ' Squadrons followed, covered by the fire of ' A. ' A line about 500 yards back, with wire in front of it, was taken up. At that moment parties of horsemen were seen galloping towards Divette from a north-easterly direction. Orders were received to



mount, and the whole party fell back, and later took up a line of trenches across the river, just south of Epinoy."

Meanwhile, the French were arranging to attack Suzoy from the south-west at 5.30 p.m. It was in co-operation with this attack that the 3RD had been told to attack the village from the Bois des Essarts, should the Canadians succeed in driving the Germans out of the wood. The French attack never came off, as a false report arrived that British cavalry were in the village, and the French artillery preparation was cancelled.

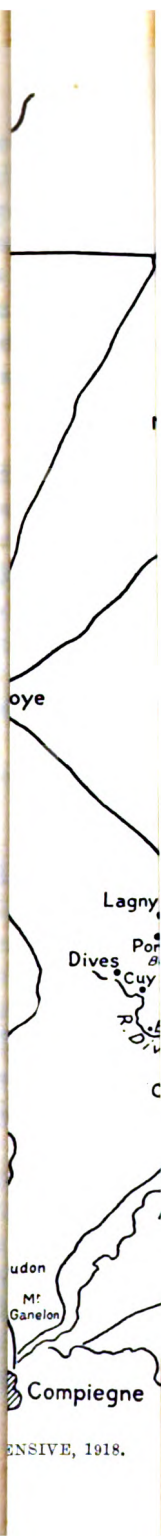
About 5.30 p.m. the Germans attacked the French west of Lagny, and also the British in the Bois des Essarts, forcing them back, as we have already seen. The French on the left having retired, Cook's force fell back on Dives, followed in turn by the Canadians. This left the left flank of the 3rd Brigade, with whom were the 3RD Hussars, in the air. With the enemy in the Bois des Essarts, the 5th Brigade in the Bois de la Reserve were taken in enfilade, and forced to retire from the wood to a line just south of it.

At 7 p.m. General Pitman was called to the French 35th Division Headquarters in Chiry, and handed over the line of the 2nd Cavalry Division to Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox for the night. All the horses were sent back to Chiry, which became the divisional Headquarters. The Headquarters of the British cavalry in the line, and those of the French infantry, occupied the same house in the village.

After a comparatively quiet night, the British cavalry were relieved by French infantry about 11 a.m. on the 27th, the regiments marching on foot to the led horses in Chiry. An urgent call had arrived for the 2nd Cavalry Division to join the Fifth Army in front of Amiens.

From Chiry the three brigades started for Compiègne with the thanks of the French General, who was understood to have said that the presence of the British horsemen had put heart into his French infantry.

This history would not be complete without a reference to the disappearance of Crapaud. Crapaud was a little French dog which had attached himself to the 3RD Hussars



ENSIVE, 1918.



Headquarters in a village some two years previously. His name did not belie him, for he was as like a toad as a dog could possibly be ; his eyes, head, and other parts of his anatomy were large out of all proportion to his small body. As the 3RD were moving off a shell burst close to the head-quarter limber on which Crapaud generally rode, and the last seen of him was going *ventre-à-terre* into the countryside. Always in trouble, he was really missed.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade was the last to leave Chiry at 12.45 p.m. with the Carabiniers forming the rear-guard. Our second retreat in this country. A short four miles up the Divette stream from Dives le Franc stood the village of Dives, where the 3RD Hussars billeted on the night of 29th and 30th August 1914, during the retreat from Mons. To-day, too, we rode round that wooded hill, Mont Ganelon, on whose northern slopes the 3RD fought the 3rd Ziethen Hussars of Prussia in the Great Retreat.

From Compiègne the march was continued to Jonquières, where the led horses and the various missing portions of the regiments were found, and the brigades were concentrated.

At 6 on the morning of the 28th news arrived that the Germans had broken through the French between Montdidier and Rollot, and half an hour later the division was making for the Bois de Légantiers. Here it was found that the advance of the Boche had been held, and that the line was intact at Ayencourt, which was the junction of the First and Third French Armies. The 2nd Cavalry Division, to which had been added the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, was at the disposal of the First French Army. The Germans were said to be attacking from the north of le Cardonnais. The 3rd, 4th, and 5th Cavalry Brigades were ordered to Chepoix, and the Canadians to Welles, the rôle of the division being that, on the defeat of the German attack, it was to endeavour to cut off their retreat. At Chepoix, however, at 3.30 p.m., the brigades were ordered to various villages to put them in a state of defence, and to prepare dismounted parties. The 3RD and Oxfords were ordered to Gannes, and the 4th

Cavalry Brigade Headquarters and the Carabiniers to Ansanvillers ; French infantry were in these villages. At 10.30 p.m. the dismounted party of the brigade was ordered to Broyes, and rode there by Plainville, the horses being brought back by a led horse party. The detachment consisted of 100 men per regiment, the 3rd's party being commanded by Captain Bagnell. At Broyes they found a divisional Headquarters of the French I Corps. The 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades were similarly sent to le Mesnil and Plainville.

On the 29th, there being no further need for the division to remain with the French, it continued its march north to rejoin the British.

On leaving the French the division received the following letter from General Pelle, commanding the French V Corps :

“ At the moment when the English 2nd Cavalry Division and the Canadian Cavalry Brigade leave the French V Army Corps, I make a point of expressing to them my gratitude. The conduct of these splendid troops during the day of 26th March has compelled universal admiration.”

At 2 p.m. the brigade was on the move, a led horse party being sent to Broyes to bring along the dismounted detachment, which caught up the brigade on the march. Riding via Paillart, the brigade reached Estrées-sur-Noye, where it had been ordered to billet, at dusk, and there found the British 39th Division in possession. The brigade, therefore, went on and bivouacked in the Bois de Boves.

The division was located as follows :

Divisional troops . . . .	Boves.
3rd Cavalry Brigade . . . .	Cottenchy.
4th Cavalry Brigade . . . .	Bois de Boves.
5th Cavalry Brigade . . . .	Boutillerie and Cagny.
Canadian Cavalry Brigade . . . .	Guyencourt.

At 4.15 a.m. on the 30th orders arrived for the brigade to march to the Bois de Blangy, starting-point at le Paraclet at 7 a.m. ; but at 6 o'clock the time was changed to 9 a.m.

When about to start, rations arrived, and had to be hurriedly distributed. When across the river Avre, the regiments quickly ascended the high ground in open column of troops to the Bois de Gentelles, and from there rode to the Bois de Blangy, arriving at the wood at 10.30 a.m. The reason for this operation was that the XIX Corps had ordered the 2nd Cavalry Division to concentrate for mounted action.

We will now cry a brief halt in our story to consider the situation in the Avre and Luce valleys. The quotations from the official despatches are shown as such :

“ Profiting by the great weariness of our troops, the enemy was making progress by local attacks rather than by general attacks in force, and there is little doubt that, had it been possible to put in fresh troops a few days earlier, the enemy’s advance could have been stopped, and even turned back, without much difficulty.”

It will be remembered that on the night of the 28th—

“ We held approximately the Amiens defence line on the whole front south of the Somme from Mezières to Ignancourt and Hamel.”

This line was held in its northern portion by the mixed force called Carey’s Force, and south of them the 1st Cavalry Division, while on the southern portion of the line were the tired-out infantry. The 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions, both of which had been heavily engaged throughout the German offensive, were hurrying to the help of the exhausted infantry who alone stood between the Germans and Amiens.

“ Hostile pressure recommenced on the morning of 29th March from Demuin southwards, and, in spite of vigorous counter-attacks, our troops and the French were forced back from Mezières.

“ During the night the enemy established a footing in Moreuil Wood, and on the following morning attacked on both sides of the river Luce. Our line in Moreuil Wood was restored by a brilliant counter-attack carried out by the Canadian Brigade, supported by the 3rd Cavalry Brigade,

but the enemy gained possession of Demuin. North of the Luce also the enemy made some progress, but in the afternoon was held up, and finally driven back into Aubercourt by counter-attacks carried out by troops of the 61st Division and the 3rd Australian Division. In this operation a squadron of the 2nd Cavalry Division (12th Lancers) co-operated very finely. In the evening a most successful counter-attack by troops of the 20th and 50th Divisions re-established our line south of the Luce and captured a number of prisoners."

"Other hostile attacks on both banks of the Somme were repulsed with heavy loss to the enemy by the 1st Cavalry Division and the 3rd Australian Division."

"The fighting between the Avre and the Luce continued during the evening of this day, and in the afternoon of 31st March developed into strong attacks between Moreuil and Demuin. Powerful assaults were delivered also on the French front as far south as Montdidier. In both cases the enemy made progress after heavy fighting, at the close of which troops of the 8th Division carried out a successful counter-attack, thereby considerably improving the situation west of Moreuil Wood. At the end of the day our line ran from Moreuil Station to Hangard, and thence to our old line west of Warfusee-Abancourt."

Next morning, the 1st April, the 2nd Cavalry Division counter-attacked the enemy in Rifle Wood, and, as the result of a very gallant action which recaptured the wood, effected an improvement of great importance.

"On the 2nd April, for the first time since the opening of the enemy's offensive, no attack took place on the British front south of the Somme."

To go back to our story. The 4th Cavalry Brigade had arrived in the Bois de Blangy at 10.30 a.m. on the 30th.

Meanwhile, at about 7 a.m., the XIX Corps had reported the enemy in Moreuil Wood, on the right of the 20th Division, and ordered the 2nd Cavalry Division to cross the river Avre at once and move south-east across the river Luce, to clear up the whole situation in the wood, and secure the line as far as Moreuil. The 3rd and Canadian Cavalry

Brigades were closest to the scene of action, and were ordered to Moreuil Wood, while the 4th and 5th Cavalry Brigades would be in reserve in the Bois de Blangy. After very heavy fighting the 3rd and Canadian Cavalry Brigades drove the enemy out of the wood, some of the fighting being mounted; it was not until about 4 in the afternoon that the line was consolidated. The cavalry were relieved by the 8th Division during the night.

At 9.30 a.m. one regiment of the 5th Cavalry Brigade (Scots Greys) supported an attack by the 61st Division in the neighbourhood of the Bois de Hangard. At 2 p.m. another regiment of that brigade (12th Lancers) was ordered to support the 9th Australian Brigade in its counter-attack. The 12th attacked on the left of the Australian line. It was in this action that a squadron of the 12th especially distinguished itself by its gallantry.

At 7.30 a.m. the brigade was ordered to remain the night in the Bois l'Abbé, and a wet night too, for it rained heavily and steadily; a certain number of men not on duty got some shelter in a deserted aeroplane hangar near by. A troop of the 3rd, under Lieutenant Waterlow, remained out on outpost duty on the eastern side of the wood, and a cossack post under Second-Lieutenant Marsh stood at the cross-roads north-west of Villers-Bretonneux throughout the night.

On the 31st the situation south of the river Luce was anything but satisfactory. The 8th and 20th Divisions were driven back off the line which the 3rd and Canadian Cavalry Brigades had re-established for them. They had been dribbling back in small parties throughout the day, and by the evening the Germans had taken the whole of Moreuil and Rifle woods, except the north-western corner of the former, where stood the 3rd Cavalry Brigade.

On the 31st, at 6 a.m., the 4th Cavalry Brigade was saddled up in the Bois l'Abbé, but it was not until 3 in the afternoon that it was ordered to move via the Bois de Gentelles, with "J" Battery, R.H.A., to a valley just north of Thèzy, where they halted. Here the 6th Dragoon Guards and



"C" Squadron of the 3rd Hussars (Captain Dobie) were ordered to fill up the gap between the left of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade and the infantry of the 20th Division, which had been driven back to Hourges. The remainder of the brigade was dismounted and marched under Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox by Domart, being shelled *en route*, to a farm a little under a mile north of that village, to act as a reserve in the event of an attack from the Hangard direction. The led horses were taken back to the Bois de Gentelles.

The 5th Cavalry Brigade remained in the Bois l'Abbé, and the Canadian Cavalry Brigade spent the night in the Bois de Sencat.

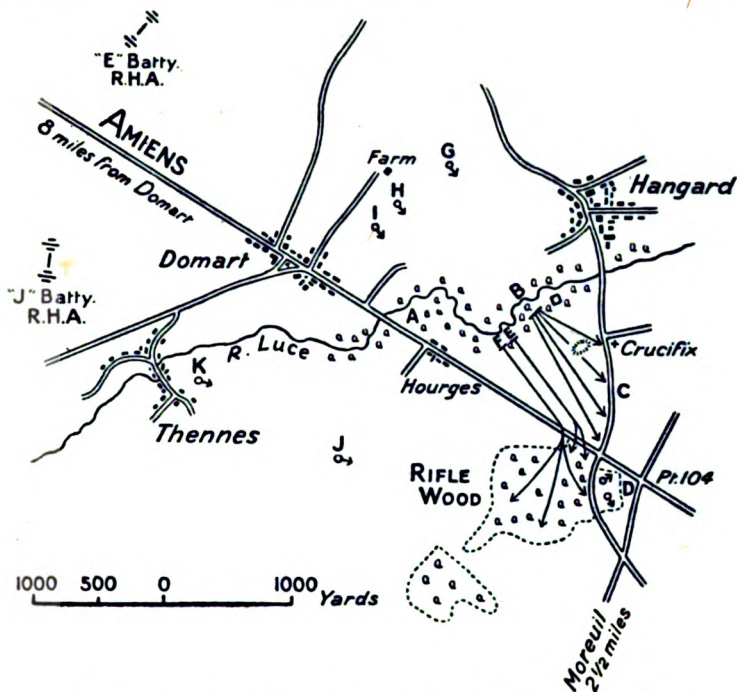
The general situation in front of Amiens on the night of the 31st may be briefly described as follows : The 1st Cavalry Division had dug itself in on a strong line running north and south in front of Hamel. South of that division came the 9th Australian Brigade, holding the line to the Hangard Wood. South of the Australians, in the more threatened portion of the line, were the remains of two infantry divisions, tired out, and with but little fight left in them, and the 2nd Cavalry Division. Against this southern portion, between the Luce and Moreuil Wood, the Germans were advancing in large numbers.

On the night 31st March to 1st April the 2nd Cavalry Division was located as follows :

Divisional Headquarters and Divisional Troops	.	.	.	Boves.
Advanced Report Centre	.	.	.	Gentelles.
3rd Cavalry Brigade	.	.	.	} Holding line between Moreuil Wood and Hourges.
6th Dragoon Guards	.	.	.	
One squadron ("C") 3rd Hussars	.	.	.	
4th Cavalry Brigade (less 6th Dragoon Guards and "C" Squadron 3rd Hussars)	.	.	.	Farm about a mile north of Domart.
5th Cavalry Brigade	.	.	.	Bois l'Abbé.
Canadian Cavalry Brigade	.	.	.	Bois de Sencat.

At 3 a.m. on the 1st April the division issued the following order :

"The 2nd Cavalry Division has been ordered to establish



CAPTURE OF RIFLE WOOD BY THE 2ND CAVALRY DIVISION, 1ST APRIL 1918.

- A 1st Wave, 4th Cavalry Brigade, Assembly Point.
- B 1st Wave, 4th Cavalry Brigade, Jumping-off Point.
- C 1st Wave, 4th Cavalry Brigade, Objective.
- D 1st Wave, 4th Cavalry Brigade, Machine Gun Squadron.
- E 2nd Wave, 5th Cavalry Brigade, Jumping-off Point.
- F 3rd Wave, Canadian Cavalry Brigade, Jumping-off Point.
- G Five Guns, 5th Machine Gun Squadron.
- H Five Guns, 5th Machine Gun Squadron.
- I Eight Guns, Canadian Machine Gun Squadron.
- K Three Guns, Canadian Machine Gun Squadron.

this morning the line C. 15 central—C. 16 central—S.E. corner of wood C. 17.a.5.9—Eastern edge of wood to C.11. 6.3.—thence north along road to Hangard exclusive.”<sup>1</sup>

The XIX Corps arranged for the artillery preparation on the area involved, and the neighbouring areas, in which the artillery of the French 29th Division co-operated. This bombardment from 8.52 a.m. to 9 a.m. was to be as intense as possible.

<sup>1</sup> References to large-scale map, not reproduced.

The German dispositions, which were of course only discovered after the action, and are taken from a divisional narrative, appear to have been as follows :

“The Domart-Beaucourt road formed the boundary between the 208th and 19th Divisions, with the 208th on the right (north) and the 19th on the left (south). The 108th Infantry Regiment was the left Regiment of the 208th Division.

“The 74th Infantry Regiment of the 19th Division held the line southwards from the Domart-Beaucourt road, inclusive. The wood (Rifle Wood) was held by the 1st and 2nd Battalions, with the 1st Battalion in reserve. The other two regiments of the 19th Division were stated by prisoners to be present, but not in the line.

“South of the 74th Regiment, prisoners believed, was the 237th Reserve Regiment of the 199th Division.”

The position to be attacked was an open grassy ridge rising out of the valley of the Luce immediately south of Hangard, and running south to the higher point of Rifle Wood.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade (less the 6th Dragoon Guards and “C” Squadron of the 3rd Hussars already holding the line with the 3rd Cavalry Brigade), and the 5th and Canadian Cavalry Brigades were to assemble under cover in the valley of the Luce between Hourges and Thennes at 6 a.m. on the 1st April. “D,” “E,” and “J” Batteries, Royal Horse Artillery, were to be in the positions from which they were to cover the attack, before dawn.

The wood was to be attacked from the north, and the attack was to be delivered in three waves :

*Leading Wave.*—The 4th Cavalry Brigade was to seize the ridge from the T roads at the north-eastern corner of Rifle Wood to the road at C.5. central.

*2nd Wave.*—One regiment of the 5th Cavalry Brigade (20th Hussars) was to seize the north-eastern edge of the wood along the main road, where it was to establish itself in the wood, forming strong points at the two northern corners.

*3rd Wave.*—The Canadian Cavalry Brigade was to pass through the 2nd Wave and establish itself round the perimeter of the wood, sending standing patrols to point 104 if possible.

The Scots Greys and the 12th Lancers were in reserve near Hourges, and the 2nd Field Squadron, Royal Engineers, was to enter the wood as soon as possible after it had been cleared to assist in its consolidation. As soon as the Canadians had taken the wood the 3rd Cavalry Brigade was to link up from its present position to the south-eastern corner of the wood, and the 6th Dragoon Guards was to advance from its present position west of the wood and take over the eastern edge from the Canadians. Brigadier-General Seely, of the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, was placed in command of the attack.

It was a little before 4 in the morning that the Regiment was roused from its comfortable bed of straw in that crowded farm to receive its orders, and at 5 the 3RD and the Oxfords marched to their assembly point in a meadow by the bridge over the Luce south-east of Domart. Meanwhile, the Commanding Officer and the squadron leaders met General Seely in an inn in Domart. All the senior officers of the troops enumerated above attended the conference, as also did three cows, which had entered by a gap made in the wall by a shell—they stood behind the officers gathered around the billiard-table, and behaved admirably.

At 7 a.m., leaving their spare officers, and "British Warm" greatcoats at the assembly point, the 3RD and Oxfords worked their way east through the trees south of the river to near a walled garden, just west of which was selected the jumping-off point. The advance up to this point was screened from the Germans in the wood. The going was very boggy. Along the edge of the trees in the neighbourhood of Hourges were a few tired infantry. At the jumping-off point, reconnaissance showed that from the edge of the trees the ground sloped gradually up to the Leading Wave's objective, and, being devoid of cover, except at one point—a bank—the advance was in full view of the north-eastern

face of the wood, and commanded throughout its approach. The configuration of the ground did not lend itself to any covering fire. As the hostile fire was expected to be chiefly in enfilade from the wood, and not from the objective in front, it was decided to make one continuous advance—and not a succession of rushes, covering fire to the flank not being practicable. Then, again, the operation of the Leading Wave was the outflanking of the wood, and a bold, steady and determined advance without a check would undoubtedly rattle the Germans in the wood.

It was at about 8 o'clock that the troops got under the cover of a bank on the edge of the trees at the jumping-off point.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade in the Leading Wave consisted of "A" and "B" Squadrons of the 3RD Hussars, and all three squadrons of the Oxford Hussars, both regiments being under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox of the 3RD. All the squadrons were woefully weak, both regiments numbering some 225 men all told.

The attack of the Leading Wave was also organized in three waves, two hundred yards distance between waves :

*1st Wave.*—A line of riflemen with a few scouts in front.

*2nd Wave.*—A few riflemen in the centre, with Hotchkiss rifles on the flanks.

*3rd Wave.*—The consolidating party consisting of riflemen carrying picks and shovels.

Four Vickers guns of the 4th Machine Gun Squadron followed behind the right of the third wave.

The 3RD Hussars advanced on the left, and the Oxford Hussars on the right ; each regiment on a front of 150 yards.

The points of advance were :

"The left of the left Regiment on the Crucifix at the T roads on the left of the objective.

"The right of the right regiment on the north-eastern corner of the wood."

Before commencing the attack it was ordered that the troops were to be told that the Commander-in-Chief laid

the utmost importance on the recapture of this wooded hill, as its possession by the Germans would give them the northern point of the high ground north of Moreuil, with direct observation on to the Paris railway down the Avre Valley to Amiens. "The Commander-in-Chief expected the 2nd Cavalry Division to recapture the wood."

The zero hour of attack was 9 o'clock, but the Commander of the leading wave had been told that he could start at any time after 8.45, the actual moment depending upon what advantage the ground gave him in the approach to the objective.

At 8.56 a.m. the attack jumped off. As the leading line sprang into the open a heavy machine-gun fire opened, especially from the north-eastern side of the wood, and a German S.O.S. signal went up from the wood. Men fell fast as wave followed wave. Lieutenant Dilberoglue, of the 3RD, who was acting as adjutant, was killed half-way to the bank, Captain Clarke and others fell wounded or dead. After passing the bank rifle-fire was opened on the two regiments from the front and left front; but it was those murderous machine guns in the wood that mowed the men down, as the attack moved on, in direct enfilade from the right. The advance went steadily on without a halt or check of any sort, and when nearly at the objective the Germans were seen streaming away from the wood.

At 9.10 a.m. the 3RD Hussars and the Oxford Hussars reached the objective. Not a shot had been fired by the attackers during their advance; not a momentary check on the part of any individual who had lived through. An advance resolute, unflinching, and undaunted. Fourteen minutes of indescribable hell up that sloping glacia, faced with the courage and discipline, self-sacrifice and devotion which can best be taught by that *esprit de corps* for which the regiments of the British Army are so famous.

On reaching the objective, Hotchkiss and rifle-fire were let loose at ranges varying from close quarters to Germans retiring at 500 yards distance, the Hotchkiss rifles doing great execution, and some hand-to-hand fighting, while the four

Vickers guns of the Machine Gun Squadron performed great feats of valour in getting into action. They took a heavy toll of Germans, but the 3RD lost a young officer in Lieutenant C. R. P. Brooks, who was attached to that squadron. The position was at once consolidated, the 3RD having the advantage of a sunken road. Communication was obtained with infantry on the left about Hangard, and a message that the brigade had seized its objective was sent by runner to the attack Headquarters in Hourges.

The second wave, consisting of the 20th Hussars of the 5th Cavalry Brigade, now reached its objective, having also suffered from the hostile machine guns. Following the second came the third wave, the Canadian Cavalry Brigade, which, passing through the second, fought its way to its objective on the perimeter of the wood.

A message was received from Headquarters in Hourges to the effect that "The 4th Cavalry Brigade has done splendidly."

About 9.45 a.m. the Scots Greys (5th Cavalry Brigade) from reserve, moved out from Hourges, and prolonged the right flank of the Canadians.

At about 10.45 a.m. the 12th Lancers (5th Cavalry Brigade) from reserve relieved the 6th Dragoon Guards in their line on the left of the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, and by 11 a.m. the latter regiment had relieved the Canadians on the eastern edge of the wood.

At 11.30 a.m. the Germans were seen concentrating on the ridge east of the 3RD Hussars, and a report was at once sent to Hourges. The concentration was very soon broken up by the artillery and machine guns. The enemy was seen massing for counter-attack several times on the eastern side of the wood, but each time our gunners and machine gunners took a heavy toll and dispersed the German troops. A concentration at 2.30 p.m. looked like being the most serious attempt, for heavy columns were seen marching along the roads—they must have suffered severely. After 3 p.m. they gave it up.

At 11.10 a.m. the 7th Cavalry Brigade of the 3rd Cavalry Division was placed under the orders of the Commander of the 2nd Cavalry Division—made necessary by the extensive front to be held against counter-attack, and the heavy losses amongst the attacking troops. About noon the Inniskilling Dragoons reinforced the troops holding Rifle Wood; they were followed later by the 7th Dragoon Guards; both regiments belonged to that brigade.

The 12th Lancers, on relieving the 6th Dragoon Guards on the western side of the wood, had also taken over the line held by "C" Squadron of the 3rd Hussars, and by noon the squadron had rejoined the Regiment, having suffered many casualties while crossing an open fire-swept space on the north-eastern side of Rifle Wood. The squadron reinforced the thinly held front line.

Rifle Wood and all the positions were heavily shelled by the enemy throughout the day, and the 3rd were visited at intervals by low-flying German aeroplanes, whose shooting was so indifferent that they caused no casualties.

The cavalry were relieved during the night by the British 14th Division and the French 133rd Division, the 7th Battalion of the Rifle Brigade, who put in 300 men in place of our 70, taking over the line of the 3rd Hussars. The relief of the 3rd was completed by 12.30 a.m. on the 2nd, and the Regiment marched, carrying the body of the gallant young Dilberoglu to Hourges, where he was left with the R.A.M.C. North of Domart the led horses were found, and the squadrons rode via Cachy to their old bivouacs in the Bois l'Abbé.

Of the German losses it is impossible to say, but our aeroplanes, flying over the wood the following morning, reported the whole country strewn with German dead; thirteen enemy machine guns were captured.

Writing of Rifle Wood, General Pitman, commanding the 2nd Cavalry Division, said :

"Our casualties were heavy; but when one considers the issue that was at stake, and the result gained, no price could have been called too high. The Germans had been



advancing steadily at an average of about five miles a day since the 21st March, and were within twelve miles of Amiens. Our action at Moreuil Wood on the 29th had steadied them, but the action of the 1st April settled them once and for all.

"The attack was carried through with great dash and gallantry," wrote an official report, "and reflected the greatest credit on all ranks, especially when it is considered that the division had been in action continuously since the 21st March, during which time they suffered heavy casualties, and had no time for rest or refitting." "It was a wonderful sight to see the waves go forward."

After the counter-attack on Rifle Wood the following telegrams were received by the 2nd Cavalry Division Commander :

From the XIX Corps Commander :

"My heartiest congratulations and thanks to you and all concerned in the fine achievement of your Division to-day. The great success attained has a most important bearing on the whole operations."

From the Army Commander (General Sir Henry Rawlinson) :

"I am anxious to express to the 2nd Cavalry Division my admiration and warmest thanks for their successful counter-attack this morning, and I congratulate all ranks most heartily on their brilliant achievement. I fear they have suffered heavily, but their victory has been invaluable at this critical juncture."

From the Commander-in-Chief :

"Convey my congratulations to the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Cavalry Divisions on the good work done during the recent operations. Please inform all ranks."

The casualties in the 3RD during this action were :

Killed	.	.	.	.	2 officers.
"	.	.	.	.	2 other ranks.
Wounded	.	.	.	.	2 officers.
"	.	.	.	.	36 other ranks.
Missing	.	.	.	.	3 " "
					<hr/> 45

About 50 per cent. of the number engaged.

The losses in the Oxford Hussars were much the same.

The strength of the Regiment engaged in the counter-attack as it went into action was :

Regimental Headquarters and the two squadrons who formed the leading wave :

(" A " and " B ")	.	.	83
" C " Squadron	.	.	20

---

103

---

Officers of the Regiment who took part in the action :

Headquarters :

Lieutenant-Colonel W. T. Willcox.

Lieutenant A. Dilberglue, Acting-Adjutant (killed).

Lieutenant H. M. Naylor.

Lieutenant H. V. Hart.

With " A " and " B " Squadrons :

Captain F. C. Clarke (wounded).

Lieutenant H. R. Barton.

Lieutenant L. W. Irons.

With " C " Squadron :

Captain J. J. Dobie.

Lieutenant J. K. Harvie (wounded).

Lieutenant F. Craig.

With 4th Machine Gun Squadron :

Lieutenant C. R. P. Brooks (killed).

The casualties in the 2nd Cavalry Division from the commencement of the German offensive on the 21st March to the 2nd April, when the division was withdrawn from the line, were, in killed, wounded and missing, 84 officers and 1,361 other ranks. In the 3rd the total losses during that time were 6 officers and 122 other ranks.

The following honours were awarded in the Regiment for the same period :

"The Field-Marshal Commanding-in-Chief has, under authority granted by His Majesty the King, awarded decorations to the officers and other ranks shown below.

“The recipients should be informed if possible. Their names will be published in *The London Gazette* in due course.”

No. H/10745, CORPORAL REGINALD DESBOROUGH, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal. For his gallantry and devotion to duty during the night of 22nd–23rd March near Terguier. He was in charge of a Hotchkiss rifle, and his courage and coolness, and the ability with which he manœuvred and fought his Hotchkiss, very greatly impeded the advance of the Germans. His conduct was a fine example, and undoubtedly helped tremendously in delaying the German advance.

No. H/26161, PRIVATE JAMES LAUDER, M.M. 3RD Hussars. A bar to the Military Medal. During the operations at Faillouel on the 23rd March, the Regiment was moving to a new position under heavy fire from machine guns and trench mortars. Private Lauder was a stretcher-bearer, and, seeing a wounded man, went back and got him into safety. He did this twice through the same heavy machine-gun fire.

No. H/15329, PRIVATE PERCY GEORGE PEERS, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal. During the operations at the Buttes des Minunes near Guivry on the 24th March, when the Regiment was under very heavy shell and machine-gun fire, Private Peers went back and brought a badly wounded corporal into safety, and took him to a French ambulance. During the same day he did very gallant work as a despatch runner under heavy fire.

CAPTAIN JAMES JARDINE DOBIE, 3RD Hussars. The Military Cross. This officer was in command of his squadron in the line during the night of the 31st March to 1st April. On the morning of 1st April, finding that he was no longer necessary in his position, he personally obtained from Brigadier-General Seely permission to rejoin his Regiment engaged in the counter-attack on Rifle Wood. Later he took command of the front line, and his energy and gallantry were a great incentive to the consolidation of the line after the objectives had been seized. His conduct was, as usual, a great example to those under his command.

LIEUTENANT FALCONER CRAIG, 3RD Hussars. The Military Cross. On the 1st April, at Rifle Wood, Lieutenant Craig, when temporarily in command of his squadron, which was on its way to reinforce the 3RD Hussar line, had to

cross an open space swept by machine-gun fire between the Oxford Hussars and the 3RD Hussars. While attempting the crossing they also came under very heavy artillery fire, and lost about 50 per cent. of the party. The squadron never faltered, led by the gallant example of their young officer.

No. H/1966, SERGEANT WILLIAM ROLAND JOHN WISTOW, 3RD Hussars. Distinguished Conduct Medal. Sergeant Wistow's work during the attack on Rifle Wood on the 1st April was of exceptional value. He displayed great courage, coolness, and ability in collecting and organizing his men at the objective, and in its consolidation, and was of the utmost value to the remaining officer of his squadron. His conduct in action has always been of the highest order, and a marked example to those under him.

No. H/4296, SERGEANT EDWARD WALKER, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal.

No. H/3, SERGEANT FRANK EGGLETON, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal. "C" Squadron of the 3RD Hussars was on its way to reinforce the 3RD Hussar line, and had to cross an open space swept by machine-gun fire between the Oxford and 3RD Hussars. While attempting the crossing the squadron also came under heavy artillery fire, and suffered about 50 per cent. in losses. Sergeants Walker and Eggleton displayed great courage and devotion in getting the survivors successfully across.

No. H/21745, LANCE-CORPORAL FREDERICK WILLIAM BLAKE, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal. This Lance-Corporal displayed great gallantry, coolness, and devotion to duty during the attack on 1st April. On two occasions during the advance he took messages to the Oxford Hussars on the right, across the open, under a murderous machine-gun fire, and on each occasion brought back valuable information. He also showed great courage and determination in guiding a squadron of his Regiment across a machine-gun swept zone.

No. H/45125, PRIVATE DAVID CUNNINGHAM, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal.

No. H/14792, PRIVATE BERNARD FURRIE, 3RD Hussars. Military Medal.

During the counter-attack on Rifle Wood on 1st April, Privates Cunningham and Furrie were acting as stretcher-bearers. Repeatedly they went through very heavy machine-

gun fire and shelling to the succour of wounded men whom they carried to places of safety. Their gallantry was magnificent.

CAPTAIN ROBERT ARMSTRONG BAGNELL, 3RD Hussars.  
Croix de Guerre (France).

(*Translation.*) "GENERAL ORDER NO. 53.

The General Commanding the V French Army Corps has mentioned in the Army Corps Despatches :

CAPTAIN R. A. BAGNELL, of the 3RD British Hussars Regiment.

On 24th March 1918, while commanding a group of dismounted cavalry, Captain Bagnell spontaneously put himself at the disposal of a French regiment of infantry ; he came into line side by side with units which were defending the outskirts of a village against German troops far superior in number, and raised the admiration of everyone by his coolness and personal bravery, as well as by the ardour and fighting spirit that he communicated to his dismounted horsemen.

(Signed) PELLE, *General Commanding the 5th Army Corps.*"

(It is worth remembering that the regiment of infantry was the 82nd Regiment, of the 9th Division.)

"For gallantry in action with the 4th Machine Gun Squadron at Rifle Wood, No. 41716, SERGEANT W. ROSE, 3RD Hussars, was promoted to Second-Lieutenant in the Regiment" (*London Gazette*, 4th May 1918).

We left the Regiment arriving in the Bois l'Abbé in the early hours of 2nd April. At 3 p.m. that day the brigade marched west, and, crossing the Somme, billeted in the village of Lamotte Brebière, where it halted for three days. On the 6th the brigade marched by the north of Amiens and St. Vaast, west to Eaucourt-sur-Somme, where the brigade was to halt some days and refit.

Brigadier-General C. Rankin, who had commanded a brigade in the 5th Indian Cavalry Division, was appointed to the 4th Cavalry Brigade in place of General Pitman, who was confirmed in his command of the 2nd Cavalry Division

*vice* General Greenly, invalided. The Indian regiments of the two Indian Cavalry Divisions had left France for Egypt some time before the German offensive.

Reinforcements of 128 other ranks reached the Regiment at Eaucourt. Ordnance stores began to arrive, and every effort was being made to refit and replace the losses in the recent hard fighting, when, at noon on the 10th, a bolt from the blue arrived in the shape of an order to pack our saddles and be ready to march at an hour's notice. Stayed in the south, the Germans had launched a heavy offensive in the north. In the early hours of the 9th the whole front from Lens to Armentières was heavily bombarded. This was followed by an attack upon the Portuguese, who were overwhelmed, and their line broken. The area of attack soon spread north and south, and by the evening of the 10th the German infantry were in Estaires. East of that town the enemy had already crossed the Lys in strength and forced back our line to a position north of Steenwerck, where for the time being the arrival of British reinforcements held up his advance. Meanwhile, the British line farther north was pressed back to Ploegsteert, Messines and Wytschaete, which made it necessary to withdraw from Armentières to the left bank of the river Lys.

Going back to the Regiment, we find it turning out at 2.30 p.m. on the 10th. "B" Echelon and any dismounted men were to remain at Eaucourt. At 5.30 p.m. the brigade passed through Ailly-le-Haut Clocher, and marching, via Domleger, reached le Ponchel at 8.40 p.m. Here the brigade remained standing to at one and a half hour's notice all day on the 11th. At noon on the 12th orders arrived to saddle up, but it was not until 2 p.m. that the Regiment passed the brigade starting-point at Qœux, and, marching by Wail and Lisbourg, reached Enquin-les-Mines at 8.30 p.m., where orders awaited us to be ready to turn out at any time—changed during the night to turn out at 6.30 the next morning. At 1.30 p.m. on the 13th the brigade marched via Roquetoire and Boeseghem for a position of readiness at la Belle Hôtesse, on the north-western side of the Forêt de

Nieppe, with "C" Squadron of the 3RD Hussars as right flank guard.

Meanwhile, in our immediate locality, Merville had fallen, but reinforcements in the shape of Australian divisions were arriving. North of Merville the situation was more serious ; in spite of very heavy fighting, in which the 4th Guards Brigade had especially distinguished itself, the enemy had gained Vieux Berquin on the morning of the 13th, but by the evening the 1st Australian Division had taken up its position east of Forêt de Nieppe, and the enemy's advance was for the moment held. Farther north again a terrible struggle was going on about Neuve Eglise.

The brigade reached the valley behind la Belle Hôtesse at 5 p.m., where the following order reached the Regiment :

"Two squadrons of 3RD Hussars will reconnoitre routes for 2nd Cavalry Division from Morbecque and Steenbecque through the Forêt de Nieppe to the front line. They will keep in touch with the situation all night, and be prepared to fill any gaps that the Germans may attempt to exploit."

"A" Squadron (Captain Bagnell) and "B" (Captain the Hon. Donald Howard) were despatched on this mission, "C" Squadron and Regimental Headquarters remaining at la Belle Hôtesse, while the remainder of the brigade moved to Sercus. The inn and all the cottages in the hamlet were crowded with refugees from the recently invaded territory ; their departure from home had been as sudden as the German onslaught—they were in a pitiable condition, without clothes or food, and mostly without money.

At 8.15 p.m. the route reports arrived from the advanced squadrons, whose Headquarters were near la Rue des Morts in the forest. Information from the front line came in steadily throughout the night. The line of the 5th Division ran from the canal west of Merville along the eastern edge of the forest across the river Bourre, whence it was carried on by the 4th Guards Brigade to Vieux Berquin, thence to just south of Merris by the 29th Division, and

northwards in front of that village by the 31st Division. During the night the Australians had completed their line along the eastern edge of the forest, and the tired-out divisions fell back upon them. The German divisions against our immediate front appeared to be the 10th Ers., 42nd, 117th, 35th, 1st Bav., and 8th.

At 3 a.m. on the 14th orders arrived for the brigade to concentrate near Tir Anglais, but this was subsequently cancelled. At 6 a.m. "C" Squadron and Regimental Headquarters moved to some farms on the Papote road, on the northern edge of the forest. Here were also a battalion of Australians and a brace of heavy guns. The former caused much interest and some amusement by donning the hats and coats of the absent owner of the ransacked farm, killing and cooking a pig, and endeavouring to milk a wretched cow, who jibbed at the operation. The remainder of the brigade moved down towards Papote; the 3rd and 5th Cavalry Brigades were in reserve. The division was at the disposal of the First Army, and, in the event of the right of the Second Army being pressed back, the division was to form a defensive flank facing north-east. The dividing line of the two armies ran through la Motte and l'Épinette. The two advanced squadrons remained out under the same orders as last night, but, owing to shelling, had to slightly shift their supports and Headquarters. Officers' patrols watched the situation in the front line east of the forest, and the Regiment was prepared to deny at once to the enemy any gap that might occur at the junction of the two armies, while all arrangements were made to hold the Bourre Canal north from la Motte if necessary. At 9 a.m. the Australians beat off a big German attack. In the evening the 5th Cavalry Brigade relieved the 4th as advanced brigade, the Scots Greys taking the place of the 3rd in the forest; the Regiment then rode back to Sercus, where it rejoined the brigade. A long, trying time for the horses—they had not had the saddles off their backs for thirty-six hours, and this after a long march. At Sercus reinforcements were found, which brought the fighting



strength of the Regiment up to 26 officers, 418 other ranks and 499 horses.

On the 15th Bailleul was captured by the enemy, and there was a withdrawal in the Ypres salient from the Passchendaele Ridge. In our immediate front nothing of great note occurred, and the brigade remained in reserve, standing to at one hour's notice. The same can be said of the 16th and 17th, the brigade remaining in support at three-quarters of an hour's notice, though heavy fighting was going on on the Wytschaete-Meteren front, where the enemy progressed sufficiently to threaten Kemmel Hill ; on the latter day the Australians beat off a German attack at Merris.

On the 18th the enemy made determined onslaughts on the southern flank of his attack from west of Merville south to Givenchy, but with no success. French troops were now coming north, and on this day the 3rd Cavalry Brigade was ordered to Flêtre in support of a certain section of them, while the 4th Cavalry Brigade became duty brigade, standing to at an hour's notice, with the Oxford Hussars about Papote and officers' patrols in touch with the front line. By the 21st the French had taken over the whole of the Kemmel sector, and relieved the tired British divisions, most of whom had been brought up to stem the enemy's advance on the Lys, after fighting through the German offensive on the Somme. For some days there was a lull in the heavy fighting on the Lys front, and it was not until the 25th that the Germans made a big attack, when they captured Kemmel Hill from the French by direct assault, and north of the French pressed back the British line ; the Allied line, however, was not broken, and reinforcements were hurrying up. Fierce fighting continued the following day, but, in spite of renewed attacks in strength and repeated efforts, and thanks to several gallant counter-attacks, the enemy was held. The capture of Kemmel Hill, however, seriously threatened the British positions in the Ypres salient. The communications, and also the southern defences, were under his direct observation, and a further withdrawal north of

Kemmel was necessary ; this was carried out during the night of the 26th-27th. The 28th saw another determined effort on the part of the enemy against the French and the British north of them, and, in conjunction with this effort, an attack against the Belgian troops. Everywhere was the enemy held in this, the last effort of the great German offensive. During this period the 2nd Cavalry Division continued in reserve.

Before leaving the German offensive the following quotation from the Commander-in-Chief's Despatches is of interest : " In the six weeks of almost constant fighting, from the 21st March to the 30th April, a total of 55 British infantry divisions and 3 cavalry divisions was employed on the battle fronts against a force of 109 different German divisions. During this period a total of 141 different German divisions were engaged against the combined British and French forces." In his appreciation of the conduct of the troops of the different arms, he wrote of the cavalry : " On the southern battle front, and particularly in the fighting about Noyon, cavalry were once more employed with great effect, and proved their extreme value in warfare of a more open nature. On more than one occasion they were able, by rapid and successful action, to restore a doubtful situation, while their appearance in the battle gave great encouragement to the infantry." One more quotation from the Commander-in-Chief : " The immense weight of the enemy's first and heaviest onslaughts in March and April, and the unprecedented masses of men and material employed by him, had called for practically the whole strength of the British Armies to withstand them, and had left our forces greatly weakened."

On the 29th the brigade marched via Théroutanne to billets on the river Lys. The Regiment's quarters were : Headquarters in Dennebrœucq, " A " Squadron in le Wamel, " B " in Lilette, and " C " in Audinethun. Here, standing to at three hours' notice, the Regiment remained until the 5th May, when it marched with the brigade by Maningham and Montcavrel to billets in Beussent and

Recques, and there the Regiment remained until the 14th July. This long period was devoted to training of every description, but more especially to mounted work.

## PART II

ON the 14th July the brigade marched to billets east of Hesdin, the Regiment being quartered in the village of St. Georges. The following day the march was continued by Frévent to Ambrines, where the Regiment went into billets with "B" Squadron in the neighbouring village of Villers.

The 2nd Cavalry Division had been brought up to behind the First Army. On the right of the army front stood the Canadian Corps, in the centre was the VIII Corps, and on the left the I Corps. The 5th Cavalry Brigade was behind the Canadians, the 4th behind the VIII Corps, and the 3rd Cavalry Brigade behind the I Corps. The VIII Corps front extended from Willerval to Loos. On the 19th a brigade party of six officers per regiment reconnoitred the front-line trenches in the corps area, and on the way back heard of the successful counter-attack of the day before by the French in the south: the great counter-offensive which Marshal Foch had been preparing on the front between Château Thierry and Soissons, which was to prove the turning-point in the Great War; from the defensive the Allies were about to turn to the offensive. Marshal Foch had given the signal with his counter-attack, and ere long the British Army was to commence at Amiens the great three months' battle, in which the armies of Germany were to be rolled back with ever-increasing swiftness to final defeat.

The stay with the First Army was not a long one, for on the 22nd sudden orders to march saw the brigade on the move west again, and by the evening the Regiment in its old billet of St. Georges. The march next day brought the Regiment back to Beussent.

On the 1st August the brigade moved to areas in the neighbourhood of St. Josse, with the exception of the Oxford Hussars, who remained at Attin. The 3rd marched by

squadrons and took over the billets of the 4th Hussars, that regiment moving into the Recques area. Regimental Headquarters and signal troop were in Basse Flaque, "A" and "B" Squadrons in Enocq, "C" Squadron in Betuin. Orders arrived on the 3rd to the effect that the 2nd Cavalry Division would move on the night of the 4th-5th.

Something was in the air, there could be no manner of doubt about it. The marches were to be by night. Individuals were to keep in the shelter of billets or bivouacs during daylight hours, as a precaution against enemy aeroplane observation. It was very evident that a "Gap" was coming off, but only the very few knew the when or the where, and the knowledge they kept to themselves. At 9 p.m. on the 4th August the Regiment started, and at 10.30 p.m. passed the brigade starting-point at the Beaucamp cross-roads. Riding through Nampont and Vron the Regiment reached Machy at 3.30 on the morning of the 5th and bivouacked in the shelter of the trees of the forest of Crécy. Slipping off saddles and quickly rubbing down their horses and feeding them, the men lay down, and the camp was soon asleep, anything in the shape of a fire being strictly prohibited. The long hours of daylight that followed, with enforced idleness, under the shelter of those trees which looked down upon the historic field of Crécy, were perhaps a trifle dull. There not being too much to think about, no doubt some fell to wondering what those archers of England, who won Crécy for the Black Prince against the chivalry of France, would say, could they but know that a division of the cavalry of England marching to battle was hidden around their own battle-field. Where are the gaudy tents and camps of armed men? where the gay trappings of chargers? where the leaders who would spend just such a day as this in friendly joust with lance in rest, and so pass the time? where all the excitement and movement of a host about to engage in battle? Sitting at the edge of those trees, immensely bored, one could easily imagine a brawny bowman contemplating the empty country-side and wondering. The khaki-clad host shows nothing of

itself. Not the sound of a trumpet, not the flutter of a flag, and the old forest looking so demure in its silence. At 10 o'clock to-night, however, familiar sounds of the long, long ago would reach the bowman :

“The ring of a bridle, the stamp of a hoof,”

in its thousands, as troop after troop, emerging from the friendly trees, clatter away to give battle to the Hun.

The early hours of the 6th found the brigade about St. Riquier, and 3 a.m. on the 7th in close billets in la Chaussée on the Somme. The battle was to open on the morrow east of Amiens.

Let us consider the situation. The Allies were about to enter upon a period of offensive action. Foch's successful counter-attack of the 18th July had made a great change in the military situation—for the German Army had made its final effort, and failed. The bulk of the reserves accumulated by the enemy during the winter had been used up in his great efforts which, commencing on the 21st March, had ended in final and definite collapse on the 18th July. The British Army, on the other hand, was once more ready to take the offensive. The reinforcements of the late spring and summer had been trained, and had taken their place in the ranks, while the American Army was rapidly growing.

The commencement of the Allied offensive was the disengagement of Amiens and the freeing of the Paris-Amiens railway by the British Army. The Fourth Army, reinforced by the Canadian Corps, was ordered to carry out this attack.

Elaborate precautions had been taken to deceive the enemy, and to mislead him as to our intentions. Every effort was made to make it appear that a British attack in Flanders was imminent. Canadian battalions were put into the line on the Kemmel front, casualty clearing-stations were there erected in conspicuous places, corps headquarters were prepared, and tanks and infantry carried out training operations in that area ; while no doubt the short visit of the cavalry to the north in July was part of the scheme.



These efforts to conceal our real purpose had the desired effect, for the rumour of a British offensive in Flanders quickly spread.

The plan of the battle of Amiens was to strike in an easterly and south-easterly direction, using the river Somme to cover the left flank of the advance, with the object of capturing the Amiens outer defences between le Quesnel and Morcourt-sur-Somme ; then to push on at once towards Roye, and by also capturing Chaumes railway junction cut the German communications.

The front of the attack of General Rawlinson's Fourth Army extended from Morlancourt in the north to just south of the Amiens-Roye road, a distance of eleven miles.

The troops employed were : On the right the Canadian Corps, with three divisions in line and one in close support, and a mobile force of machine-gun cars and cyclists moving on the right on the Roye road ; in the centre the Australian Corps, with two divisions in line and two divisions in support ; on the left, north of the Somme, the III Corps, with two divisions in line and one in support.

The front of attack of the French First Army extended from the right of the Canadians to Moreuil, and was timed to take place about an hour later than the opening of the British assault ; its right was to gradually extend southwards until it rested on Braches.

Behind the British front the British Cavalry Corps, consisting of the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Cavalry Divisions, was concentrated at zero hour east of Amiens.

The accompanying map shows the objectives in the battle. The first infantry objective was designated the Green Line, and their second objective the Red Line. On the capture of the Red Line by the infantry, the cavalry would pass through them and seize the (Blue) dotted line, the final objective of the day—the Amiens Outer Defences, whence squadrons would be boldly pushed forward to the villages in front of the line.

To return to our story. We left the Regiment billeted with the brigade in la Chaussée on the 7th. Eleven o'clock

that night saw the long columns of squadrons clattering over the cobble-stones in their half-sections as they led their horses to the appointed rendezvous. "Get Mounted!" The order no more than rippled through the darkness down the long line of waiting men, and once again we rode forth to battle. Passing the Picquigny level crossing at 11.30, the route lay through the villages of Ailly and Dreull to Amiens; the 5th Cavalry Brigade was leading and the 3rd Cavalry Brigade followed us. A slow march of necessity, for the whole of the Cavalry Corps was passing through Amiens on one road, the 3rd Cavalry Division leading, followed by the 1st and 2nd. A lovely night, and still. Would it remain so, or would a tornado of shell come hurtling about our ears at any moment from an agitated Hun? Anxiety as well as suspense was in the air. Anxiety, because the success or failure of the coming battle hung on the bravery of a few men. Last night the Germans had made a trench raid on a sector of the very line over which the British onslaught was to be delivered, and had captured a sergeant and some men of an Australian battalion. The fate of not only the coming battle, but of the course of the war was in the balance—would those few devoted prisoners keep their mouths shut? Men of courage are apt to lose their moral for a brief period in such circumstances, and to fall an easy victim to the scientific questioning of the Intelligence Officer.

Amiens had suffered since it had come within the range of German guns last March. The station, and many another landmark well known to the British officer, showed it. As the brigade left the eastern side of the city a long check occurred. In the spreading dawn could be seen masses of cavalry concentrating east of Longueau. It was now 4 a.m., and not yet the sound of a German gun. Four-fifteen, and the dawn as quiet as the midnight hour. Five minutes more to zero, for zero was at 4.20. Then suddenly, and everywhere at the same instant of time, were the heavens lit by the British massed artillery. And not the sound of a German shell. The surprise was complete. "Advance, Australia!" Her handful of shaken soldiers had played the



game. The division rode on by the cavalry track to its forward concentration area near Glisy, and there the horses were watered, the last drink they were likely to get until nightfall. Just to illustrate the vagaries of sound, with all that tremendous discharge of artillery, when one expected to hear a continuous roar, there was scarcely a sound.

The intense British fire completely crushed the enemy's batteries; some of them never succeeded in coming into action. Simultaneously with the barrage the attack was launched, the infantry following in the wake of the tanks and under cover of a heavy ground mist.

The cavalry advanced on a two-division front, the 3rd Cavalry Division on the right and the 1st on the left; while the 2nd followed in reserve. The two leading divisions were in the neighbourhood of Cachy at 5.30 a.m.

The infantry attack was going well, the casualties were practically *nil*, and the German shelling but slight. Hangard Wood was easily captured by the Canadians at the same time that the Australians had reached the C  risy Valley. Before 7 a.m. both the Canadian and Australian attacks had everywhere won the Green Line.

Meanwhile the 1st Cavalry Division was already moving forward, with its 1st Cavalry Brigade behind the 5th Australian Division north of the railway, and its 9th Cavalry Brigade south of the railway behind the 2nd Canadian Division. At 7 a.m. the 2nd Cavalry Division moved up to a position north-east of Boves, and later, on the advance of the two leading divisions, to Cachy, and from there to a position east of the Bois de Hangard. The 5th Cavalry Brigade was still leading, followed by the 4th and 3rd. Numerous parties of German prisoners were met being escorted back, some even without escort. Of British dead there were scarcely any; not so of the Germans, however, and more especially around the machine guns. Not a derelict gun but had its group of silent grey-clad figures who had fought their gun to a finish. It was the same at Cambrai; the same, too, throughout the great enemy offensive, and the same again now; brave fighters, those German machine

gunners. Gruesome reminders there were of that great offensive of last March, when Britain was up against it—many and many a shrunken khaki figure, some in grotesque posture, some flattened like a leaf by an avenging British tank in the present battle. Of aeroplanes, the British held the sky; scarce an enemy plane was to be seen. East of the Hangard Wood the brigade halted amidst the guns of a captured howitzer battery, the personnel of which seemed rather glad than otherwise at their position, and it was evident that they were very greatly impressed at the swiftness of the British advance—the unexpected and appalling barrage which had scarcely lifted before the battery was swarming with khaki, the khaki flood in turn giving place before their astonished eyes to the serried ranks of cavalry.

From the Green Line the advance went steadily forward. At 9.15 a.m. the leading squadrons of the 1st Cavalry Brigade had passed through the infantry advance and were in mounted action near Harbonnières. That brigade turned the village and sent a regiment (5th Dragoon Guards) to Framerville, near which place the regiment captured a train full of reinforcements, taking 600 prisoners, 3 batteries of guns, and a complete hospital staff. The whole of the 3rd Cavalry Division had passed through the infantry at 9.20 a.m. and its leading brigade had reached Ignaucourt.

Opposition was beginning to strengthen, more especially in the southern portion of the advance. At 12.30 p.m. the 3rd Cavalry Division was held up by the enemy in the woods east of Beaucourt-en-Santerre and beat off a strong hostile counter-attack. At 2.15 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to move east as rapidly as possible and cross the river Luce at Caix, and from there gain the spur running south from the village with a view to assisting the 3rd Cavalry Division. The brigade moved off with the Oxfords leading, followed by the Carabiniers, 3RD Hussars, 4th Machine Gun Squadron and "J" Battery. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade followed in close support, while the 5th Cavalry Brigade remained in corps reserve. With regiments well extended, a rapid advance of five miles at a trot and

canter, and the leading regiment took the ridge south of Caix at a gallop, meeting with no opposition. In the meantime the 3rd Cavalry Division had been able to continue its advance, and its leading brigade, the 7th, rode over the ridge as the Oxfords galloped up, and by 2.35 p.m. had reached the final objective the (Blue) dotted line on the Amiens Outer Defences. The 1st Cavalry Division had, shortly before, also reached its objective on the (Blue) dotted line with its left brigade on the railway. Before 3 p.m. the final objective of the day, the Amiens Outer Defences, had been taken on the whole front of attack, with the exception of le Quesnel.

At 4 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade was directed to concentrate just north of Caix and push on and take Rosières. The 3rd Hussars was leading regiment, and moved forward on a two-squadron front, "C" being on the right and "B" on the left, with "A" Squadron in support. On debouching from the eastern side of Caix the Regiment came under heavy machine-gun fire. An attempt was then made to get down towards Vrély, but it met with a similar fate. The advanced patrols reported that the Germans were in force on the line Rosières-Vrély, and that reinforcements of infantry were arriving in buses at the former. Eventually the 3rd fell back on to the 10th Canadian Infantry, who were holding the Amiens defence line east of Caix. That regiment had run short of ammunition, and "A" and "B" Squadrons of the 3rd dismounted and went into line with them, the led horses moving to the western side of Caix village; "C" Squadron remained mounted and sent forward patrols towards Vrély, and were in touch on the right with squadrons of the 9th Lancers and 4th Dragoon Guards and the 7th Canadian Infantry. The 4th Machine Gun Squadron was sent up to reinforce the 3rd. Memory brings back the look of astonishment on the face of a dead German officer, who had been bayoneted as he sat upon a table in a small farm-house. The enemy resistance was rapidly thickening; his guns now coming into action, there was considerable shelling, and it was evident that no further advance

could be made that night. Our infantry main bodies were coming up, and the line was consolidated for the night. An order at 7.30 p.m. for the 4th Cavalry Brigade to advance to Warvillers was countermanded as being impracticable, and at 9.30 p.m. the brigade was ordered to withdraw to the bivouac of the 2nd Cavalry Division in the valley south of Guillaucourt. The Regiment was not withdrawn until 11.30 p.m., and, meeting the led horses west of Caix, reached the bivouac of the brigade at 1.30 a.m.

Of this, the first day of the battle, the Commander-in-Chief wrote in his Despatches that the different arms worked in co-operation in the most admirable manner. Also, "East of the line of our advance the enemy at nightfall was blowing up dumps in all directions, while his transport and limbers were streaming eastwards towards the Somme, affording excellent targets to our airmen, who made full use of their opportunities. Over 13,000 prisoners, between 300 and 400 guns, and vast quantities of ammunition and stores of all kinds remained in our possession." Again: "The brilliant and predominating part taken by the Canadian and Australian Corps in this battle is worthy of the highest commendation. The skill and determination of these troops proved irresistible, and at all points met with rapid and complete success. The fine performance of the cavalry throughout all stages of the operation also deserves special mention. Having completed their assembly behind the battle-front by a series of night marches, on the first day of the attack they advanced twenty-three miles from their points of concentration, and by the dash and vigour of their action, both on this and subsequent days, rendered most valuable and gallant service."

North of the Somme the enemy had succeeded in maintaining himself in the village of Chipilly, while in the south the French had gained the line Pierrepont-Plessier-Fresnoy.

The attack was continued on the 9th August, but it was a day of considerable opposition and hard fighting. The objective was the line Roye-Chaulnes. The cavalry was to advance in the early morning; the 2nd Cavalry Division

on the right, the 1st on the left, and the 3rd Cavalry Division in reserve. At 4 a.m. patrols, supported by squadrons from the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, moved forward, and at 6.15 a.m. they reported that the line Vrély-Warvillers—Beaufort-le Quesnel was strongly held by the enemy. Dismounted patrols remained in the infantry line, with the 3rd Cavalry Brigade in close support. Patrols pushed forward by the 1st Cavalry Division to the north-east across the railway also reported that the opposition was too strong to permit of a cavalry advance.

At 7.30 a.m. the 2nd Cavalry Division received orders from Cavalry Corps countermanding the cavalry advance, and instructing the 2nd and 1st Cavalry Divisions to follow up an attack by the Canadian and Australian Corps respectively, and to exploit any success ; two battalions of whippet tanks were to move with the cavalry divisions. The dividing line between the two divisions was Vrély-Fouquescourt-Hattencourt, the 2nd being on the right. Behind the Canadians the division was to advance on a two-brigade front, the 5th Cavalry Brigade on the right, the 3rd on the left, and the 4th in reserve ; with each leading brigade was a company of whippets, the remaining company being in reserve. The leading brigades each worked on a front of two regiments—the object being to work upon as broad a front as possible, in order to take immediate advantage of any opportunity to push through. The division was concentrated south-west of Caix by 9.35 a.m.

At 1.30 p.m. the infantry attack started. The 5th Cavalry Brigade stood north-west of le Quesnel, the 3rd south of Caix, and the 4th in the valley south-west of Caix. In spite of stiff opposition and hard fighting, the Canadian advance progressed well. On the right and at other points small parties of cavalry pushed through the infantry advance, but no opportunity occurred for the leading brigades to take any real advantage of. The 4th Cavalry Brigade, moving across country, reached a point about three-quarters of a mile west of Warvillers at 5 p.m. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade and Canadians were fighting in that village, and, driving

the Germans before them, gained the outskirts of Rouvroy. As darkness fell cavalry and infantry were getting somewhat mixed up, and at 9.20 p.m. orders were issued that the leading cavalry brigades and infantry would hold an outpost line le Quesnoy-Rouvroy—in front of Méharicourt. The 4th Cavalry Brigade was to be ready to support the 3rd and 5th. The 4th was well bombed by enemy aeroplanes as the regiments were settling into bivouac round a near-by wood. The other two brigades withdrew to bivouacs close behind the line during the night on relief by infantry.

The following was the situation in the early hours of the 10th August: the 1st and 2nd Cavalry Divisions had been withdrawn into the Luce Valley between Caix and Cayeux. The 3rd Cavalry Division, with the 3rd Tank Brigade co-operating, was concentrated south of Caix to assist the advance of the infantry. That division, at 5 a.m., pushed out patrols along the whole front of the Canadian Corps from the Roye road to the Villers-Bretonneux-Chaulnes railway. The objective to be reached by the Canadian Corps was the general line Roye-Hattencourt-Hallu. The French were attacking south of the Roye road, and the Australians on the left were advancing on Lihons.

At 8.15 a.m. the 7th Cavalry Brigade (3rd Cavalry Division) reported that the Canadians could not advance until the Australians on their left had taken the high ground west of Lihons, and at 8.35 a.m. it was reported that the infantry were not in touch with the enemy. On the right the 6th Cavalry Brigade (3rd Cavalry Division) reported that the high ground north and south of le Quesnoy was in our hands. By 10.30 a.m. the infantry attack was going well, and the 6th Cavalry Brigade moved forward to the line Bouchoir-Folies-Beaufort. Shortly afterwards Cavalry Corps Headquarters received a report from the 32nd Division that the enemy resistance was weak, and that the Germans were retiring rapidly; the 6th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to push on as rapidly as possible.

The next information received by the Cavalry Corps was to the effect that the 32nd Division was reported to have

taken la Chavette and Fransart, and possibly Parvillers. Special patrols were immediately sent forward by the 6th and 7th Cavalry Brigades to report on the suitability of the ground for a rapid cavalry advance ; while the Canadian Cavalry Brigade (3rd Cavalry Division) was moved forward to near Parvillers. At 1 p.m. the 2nd Cavalry Division received orders to saddle up and be ready to move forward ; while the 1st Cavalry Division was not to saddle up, but was placed at an hour's notice. While waiting in our bivouac an enterprising Boche aeroplane visited us, and flew up and down the division, shooting with a machine gun at the lines of dismounted men and horses ; his valour was greater than his marksmanship, for he hit nothing—however, he helped to pass the time as he zigzagged about, a pheasant going down a line of guns was a fool compared to the flying Boche in the fusillade he drew : “ Let me have a go at the blighter,” said a captain, as he borrowed a man's rifle. “ Behind again, by gad ! I never do throw forward enough when they go down wind.” Away over the tree-tops flew the sporting airman, not a whit the worse, and doubtless crowing as loud as any old cock pheasant similarly placed. By 2 p.m. the patrols of the 3rd Cavalry Division had reported that the ground east of Méharicourt and Rouvroy was quite impassable for cavalry except in small numbers, and the tank commander reported the same ground impassable for whippet tanks. The 3rd Cavalry Division was moving forward through Warvillers on Rouvroy, the advanced troops being in touch with the infantry near Damery and Parvillers.

The 2nd Cavalry Division was now ordered to move up to a position of readiness west of Warvillers, the 4th Cavalry Brigade leading. During this movement a message from the 3rd Cavalry Division stated that the 32nd Division had reported that la Chavette and Parvillers were taken and probably Damery, and that the enemy was quite demoralized. In consequence of this and the former report the 3rd Cavalry Division was ordered to push on and seize the high ground north of Roye, and the 2nd Cavalry Division



NEAR ROUVROY, BATTLE OF AMIENS, 10TH AUGUST 1918.





was to move forward rapidly and occupy Nesle that night.

At 2.55 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade had arrived at a point a little south of Vrély, and was given the following verbal order by the Divisional Commander :

“ The 4th Cavalry Brigade will proceed to seize and hold Nesle ; it will proceed by a southerly route, Warvillers-Rouvroy-Parvillers-Fresnoy-Gruny. The latest information states Fresnoy, la Chavette, Fransart, and Hallu are in our hands, and that infantry are pushing on beyond those places.”

The brigade moved off immediately, the 3RD Hussars leading. Nesle, as the crow flies, was some eleven miles off. Just east of Warvillers the brigade was shelled, but halted as the 3RD pushed on to gain distance. We were now well into the old Somme battle-fields, and the whole country was a network of wire and hidden grass-grown trenches. The country was absolutely blind, with its two years' growth of rank grass, and quite unrideable, so perforce we had to stick to the roads. After picking our way through a maze of trenches and wire, with occasional shells dropping amongst the squadrons, the Regiment got on to the Vrély-Rouvroy-en-Santerre road, down which it trotted to Rouvroy, the advanced squadron, “ C,” getting its distance at a gallop. At Rouvroy Canadian infantry were passed taking cover in the ditches and trenches beside the road and looking with evident wonder at the long column of horsemen trotting down the road. From Rouvroy the advanced guard squadron had taken the road to Parvillers, and the Regiment followed. Up to now shrapnel had been bursting above the Regiment, but nothing out of the ordinary. Suddenly with the Regiment half-way to Parvillers and the advanced squadron almost there, a perfect hell arose. Machine-gun bullets from the front and flanks on to the head of the Regiment, and a tornado of shrapnel bursting close above our devoted heads. “ Good God ! ‘ C ’ will be wiped out ! ” Stout barbed-wire fences bounded each side of the road,

beyond wire entanglements ran at all sorts of angles across the country-side, and everywhere was that maze of the old Somme trenches. "No use cutting the damned wire to get off the road." "Must get back." "Files about! Regiment to halt when Headquarters reaches Rouvroy! Move at a slow trot!" Then above the infernal din the clatter of galloping hoofs and the message from the advanced guard, "From Captain Dobie. He is retiring. German infantry in front and on both flanks." The road was narrow, we had been moving in half sections, and horses lay all over it, imprisoning their riders beneath them, while in a tree, between its two lower branches, it is scarcely to be credited, the half of a horse had stuck. Shelled back to Rouvroy, the Regiment turned south, sending at the same time a message to the brigade that the 3RD Hussars would endeavour to carry out its mission by moving via le Quesnoy and Damery. At the former village a brigade of the 3rd Cavalry Division could be seen to the south, halted near the Roye road. It was difficult to discover the exact situation, there were so many conflicting reports; but between le Quesnoy and Parvillers trustworthy information was obtained that the 32nd Division was still attacking Parvillers and Fouquescourt. "C" Squadron, on rejoining, reported that as it had approached Parvillers the place was stiff with German infantry, and the right advanced party had not rejoined—this party rejoined before night; it had been nearly cut off by German infantry in Parvillers, but the non-commissioned officer in charge brought his men through without casualty. Meanwhile, a message was received from the 4th Cavalry Brigade for the 3RD to rejoin the brigade, which was moving towards Maucourt; going by Bouchoir and Warvillers, the Regiment joined the brigade west of Méharicourt.

The ordered route being too strongly held by the enemy, Brigadier-General Rankin decided to attempt to push the brigade through by a more northerly route by Chilly. The Oxford Hussars, leading, were unable to get beyond that village, owing to heavy shelling and machine-gun fire,

while the old battle-field of the Somme again prevented any movement across country. At 4.30 p.m. the brigade was thus disposed: 3RD Hussars and one squadron of Carabiniers in the little copse three-quarters of a mile south-west of Chilly; the remainder of the brigade just south of Méharicourt, with the exception of the Oxfords, who were a mile farther south.

"The latest information states Fresnoy, la Chavette, Fransart, and Hallu are in our hands, and that infantry are pushing on beyond those places"—and so had run our orders. The fog of war with a vengeance! That information was hopelessly inaccurate, to say the least, and, far from being demoralized and retiring rapidly, the Germans strongly held the whole front from the Roye road south of Damery, Damery itself, Parvillers, Fouquescourt, and Chilly.

Those few minutes on the Parvillers road had cost the 3RD, in officers, 3 wounded; in other ranks, 2 killed, 26 wounded, and 3 missing; in horses, 7 killed, 17 wounded, and 9 missing.

All three cavalry divisions were ordered to withdraw at 7.30 p.m., and bivouac behind the line; the 2nd Cavalry Division in the area Beaufort-Warvillers-Vrély. The brigade reached its bivouac just west of Vrély about 9 p.m. The 3RD had unsaddled, watered and fed their horses, distributed the rations, which had arrived by A echelon, and all hands were settling down, when someone stumbled through the darkness to Headquarters and drew the attention of the Commanding Officer to the fact that the field had been gassed, and did he smell it? "I smell it; I see you; and I'm damned if I shift the Regiment." A sleepy voice came through the gloom; "The Colonel's 'ipped!" it said.

The enemy aircraft had been busy during the night, but no bombs had dropped amongst the 3RD. Early on the 11th the 1st Cavalry Division was ordered to send out patrols to keep touch with the infantry attack, and to be ready to move forward at short notice, while the 2nd and 3rd Cavalry Divisions were to remain in their bivouacs at one hour's notice. The 3rd Tank Brigade was to be

ready to co-operate with the cavalry, if required. The infantry, at 12.30 p.m., had made no advance, and no attack seemed probable. Later the Fourth Army Commander ordered the withdrawal of the cavalry, and during the afternoon the divisions withdrew, the 1st to the area Vecquemont-Rivery, the 3RD to the area Boves-Ailly-sur-Noye, and the 2nd moved back to the area Cayeux-Ignaucourt with the 3rd Cavalry Brigade between Caix and Cayeux ready to operate with the Australian Corps. By 6 p.m. the 3RD was in bivouac just south of Démuin, with the remainder of the brigade between that place and Courcelles. The 2nd Cavalry Division remained in its bivouacs during the 12th, 13th and 14th, ready to co-operate with the infantry, should an opportunity occur. During these days men and horses enjoyed a well-earned rest in the delightfully hot sun, which the continual bombing by German aeroplanes in no ways disturbed.

The following extract was published in Regimental Orders on the 14th :

"The Cavalry Corps Commander, at his visit to the Regiment this morning, asked the Commanding Officer to let the men know that the Commander-in-Chief thanked the cavalry for the splendid and dashing work it has done during the recent operations, the success of which, the Commander-in-Chief says, is very largely due to the magnificent work of the Cavalry Corps. To this message the Commanding Officer adds: The discipline and steadiness shown by the men at the hot corner near Rouvroy on the 10th was what is to be expected in our Regiment."

Owing to the rapid advance of the cavalry on the first day of the battle it was quite impossible to obtain accurate numbers of the prisoners, booty, and guns that were captured or ridden over by the cavalry divisions. It was roughly estimated that on August 8th, 9th, and 10th the Cavalry Corps captured 3,000 prisoners in addition to two trains, and a large quantity of supplies and transport.

On the night of the 12th August the British advance had

reached the general line : West of Damery—east of Lihons—east of Proyart. Attacks carried out on the 13th showed that the enemy, heavily reinforced, was ready to give battle in positions made strong by the old trench lines of the German Somme defences of 1916, pitted with shell-holes, and crossed in all directions with tangled belts of wire. To quote from the Official Despatches : “ I therefore determined to break off the battle on this front, and transferred the front of attack from the Fourth Army to the sector north of the Somme, where an attack seemed unexpected by the enemy. My intention was for the Third Army to operate in the direction of Bapaume, so as to turn the line of the old Somme defences from the north.”

At the battle of Amiens that city and the railway centring upon it had been disengaged, and the British line was pushed forward to a depth of some twelve miles in a vital sector. Thirteen British divisions and three cavalry divisions, supported by some four hundred tanks, had defeated twenty German divisions, and had captured nearly 22,000 prisoners and over 400 guns.

“ The brilliant success of the Amiens attack was the prelude to a great series of battles, in which, throughout three months of continuous fighting, the British Armies advanced without a check from one victory to another ” (Official Despatches.)

Before leaving the battle-field it will not be out of place to take note of two letters :

The first was from Lord Rawlinson, who commanded the Fourth Army. It ran :

“ As the Cavalry Corps is now leaving the Fourth Army, I desire to place on record my high appreciation of the conspicuous and successful part they took in the battle of the 8th August. The fine leadership and bold tactics employed show that the Corps has reached a high standard of training, and I desire to express to all ranks my warm thanks for what was a very fine performance. The lessons to be learned from the operation will, I trust, be carefully studied and taken to heart for future occasions.”

The second was from Sir Charles Kavanagh, Commanding the Cavalry Corps, and it ran :

“ The Corps Commander wishes to congratulate all ranks of the Cavalry Corps on the successes they have obtained during the recent operations, for which they have already received commendation from the Commander-in-Chief and Army Commander.

“ Owing to the magnificent advance made by the Canadians and Australians, it was found possible, for the first time during the course of the war, to push cavalry through infantry advancing from a trench system, and full advantage was taken of the opportunity and substantial results obtained.

“ Similar opportunities are sure to occur this year, and the Corps Commander feels confident that they too will be taken advantage of, and, benefiting by the experience lately gained, that the cavalry will be able to obtain even greater and more far-reaching successes.”

And, finally, one more appreciation—a Canadian infantry officer said to our Divisional Commander :

“ Our men are astounded at the bravery of your cavalry, galloping about amongst all this shell-fire and machine guns. It is nothing to us, who can throw ourselves into the nearest hole when the shelling commences ; but to see you fellows galloping about and the shells falling amongst you is astounding.”

These words make one think of the horses. The Cavalry Corps lost about a thousand horses during the three days. But what better requiem could horses have than the battle which first threw back the German invader to his final defeat ? There is no doubt that at the battle of Amiens their moral effect on both friend and foe was very great encouragement to one and dismay to the other, and that they very materially helped to turn close upon four years of a war of trenches into a war of movement.

On the 15th August the 2nd Cavalry Division was withdrawn, and the brigade marched via Amiens to la Chaussée, where it went into close billets.

## PART III

At 9 p.m. on the 16th August the brigade started on another night march, and, going by Bernaville and Auxi-le-Château, reached Genne-Ivergny at 3.30 a.m. on the 17th. Yet another night march, commencing at 6 p.m., the brigade marching by regiments, brought the 3RD to Voisin, where Headquarters and "C" Squadron billeted; "B" finding quarters in Rapéchy, and "A" in Wadicourt. On the 19th and 20th the brigade halted.

The German was to be allowed no respite. The series of great battles which culminated in his final overthrow, and which had been made possible by the success of Amiens, were about to begin.

The first of these battles was that of Bapaume. The opening attacks to clear the way for the main operation commenced on the 21st August, when the IV and VI Corps of the Third Army attacked on a front of about nine miles from Miraumont to Moyenneville. Our troops, after much hard fighting, reached the general line of the Arras-Albert railway on practically the whole front. This attack was followed up by another the next day, when the III Corps of the Fourth Army forced the passage of the river Ancre and captured Albert.

To return to the Regiment. The brigade had been ordered to stand to at one hour's notice from 5 a.m. on the 21st, and by a night march, which commenced at 9.30 p.m., through Frohen-le-Grand and Bouquemaison, it went into close billets in Humbercourt at 4.30 a.m. on the 22nd, where it remained at two hours' notice. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade had moved to Coullemont.

. Following on the preliminary operations, the main attack was launched on the 23rd August by a series of strong assaults on practically the whole front of 33 miles from our junction with the French just north of Lihons to Mercatel, a few miles south of Arras.

Our story is with the VI Corps, for the 2nd Cavalry Division had been placed under the orders of the Third Army,



and had been moved into the VI Corps area to be ready to take advantage of any opportunity of exploitation which might arise. One regiment of the 5th Cavalry Brigade had been moved forward to Bailleulmont, with instructions to push out patrols to report on the infantry advance. These patrols were to be supported by troops and squadrons so placed as to be able to take immediate advantage of any opportunity of exploitation. The remainder of that brigade was to be ready to move at once, while the rest of the 2nd Cavalry Division was at two hours' notice.

The attack of the VI Corps had the following line as its objective: The enemy outpost line east of the Achiet-le-Grand-Arras railway to just south-west of Hamelincourt, Boyelles, Boiry-Bacquerelle. The attacking divisions were the Guards, 56th and 52nd, supported by the 2nd and 3rd Tank Brigades. Everywhere along the whole battle front the different assaults met with immediate success, and north of Bapaume the British were astride the Arras-Bapaume road.

At 4.45 p.m. the 4th Cavalry Brigade was ordered to saddle up and be ready to move. It was not until 6.15, however, that the brigade marched by la Herlie to Bailleuval and Basseux, the Regiment going into bivouac near the former village. On arrival the order was not to off-saddle, but subsequently the squadrons were allowed to do so.

At 1 a.m. on the night of the 23rd-24th the Third and Fourth Armies again attacked, and during the early morning the advance was resumed on the whole front from the Somme to Neuville-Vitasse.

The enemy's line in the sector which concerns us ran west of Sapignies and Behagnies, through Ervillers, and so north. The Third Army had ordered in the early hours of the 24th that no respite was to be given to the enemy. The line of advance of the IV Corps was le Transloy-Fins-Boursies, while that of the VI Corps was Quéant-Vis-en-Artois. The 1st Cavalry Division was to take advantage of any opportunity to push forward on the line Bapaume-Boucha-

vesnes-Ytres-Fins-and Cambrai. Similar orders were given to the 2nd Cavalry Division for the line Quéant-Marquion.

The VI Corps was attacking on the line Vaultx with the 2nd Division, and on the line Ecoust with the Guards Division. The 2nd Cavalry Division was, therefore, ordered to be in position as follows by 7 a.m.: the 3rd Cavalry Brigade about Ayette with its patrols in touch with the infantry advance, and the brigade to be ready to seize any opportunity of pushing through to advance towards Quéant; the 4th Cavalry Brigade and 2nd Field Squadron Royal Engineers to be about Adinfer. The 3RD marched at 5 a.m. and joined the brigade south of Bellacourt, where some time was spent, and the brigade watered. At 8.15 a.m., going by Ransart, the brigade reached Adinfer and there off-saddled. At 10.10 a.m. the brigade was ordered to Ayette, where it again off-saddled and remained, watering in Douchy, as the well in Courcelles was reported poisoned with arsenic. There was some slight shelling on the bivouacs, but no casualties. At 7 p.m. the brigade was ordered back to Bailleuval and Basseux, and during the night was bombed by enemy aeroplanes, five men and three horses being wounded in the 3RD. Although there had been no break through, the British attack had everywhere pushed steadily forward, with the capture of several thousand prisoners, many guns, and great quantities of material of every kind. The attack had reached the general line Bray-sur-Somme on the right, then north by Martinpuich, the western outskirts of Bapaume, St. Leger, Croiselles, Henin, to St. Martin-sur-Cojeul on the left.

At 6 a.m. on the 25th the brigade was ordered back to Humbercourt. That evening the Carabiniers and the Oxford Hussars were ordered to Contay and Douchy as corps cavalry; the 3RD Hussars, "J" Battery, and the machine-gun squadron remained in Humbercourt. The 3rd Cavalry Brigade was close by in Coullemont, but the 5th remained in the forward area.

During the next five days the British attack, in spite of increasing resistance on the part of the German rear-guards,

made a further deep advance. The progress of the infantry was only won by hard fighting, both in attack and in defeating determined counter-attack. Bapaume was evacuated by the Germans on the 29th August, and by the night of the 30th the line of the Fourth and Third Armies ran Cléry-sur-Somme north to Combles, Lesbœufs, Frémicourt, Ecooust, Bullecourt, and Hendecourt.

South of the Somme, too, there had been a general advance of the British and French forces between the Somme and the Oise. Allied infantry had reached the left bank of the Somme on the whole front from the neighbourhood of Nesle ; while farther south the French held Noyon. " During these days an increase in hostile artillery fire, and the frequency and strength of the German counter-attacks, indicated that our troops were approaching positions on which the enemy intended to stand, at any rate for a period " (Official Despatches). On the 1st September, as the result of a brilliant operation in the storming of Mont St. Quentin, the Australians captured Péronne ; while on the last day of August the Fourth and Third Armies held Sailly-Saillisel, Morval, Beaulencourt, Rencourt-les-Bapaume, and east of Bancourt, Frémicourt, Vaulx, and Longatte.

On the 3rd September the 3rd Hussars were ordered to relieve the Royal Scots Greys as Corps Cavalry to the IV Corps of the Third Army. The Regiment marched from Humbercourt at 10 a.m. via Hannescamps and Bucquoy to the Greys' headquarters at Achiet-le-Petit. They had, however, moved during the night to the western outskirts of Bapaume, where the 3rd were directed by orderlies from the Greys. The relief was complete by 9 p.m.

To break off for a moment and consider the general situation.

We have seen how the battle of Bapaume, and with it we include that of Albert, turned the flank of the German positions on the Somme and forced the enemy to withdraw to the east bank of that river. Other battles were, meanwhile, fought by the First Army from the 26th August to the 3rd September, with the result of extending the flank

of the British attack to the north. The success of the first of these operations in the neighbourhood of Arras, called the battle of the Scarpe, led to the second operation—that of storming the enemy's strong defensive position on the Drocourt-Quéant line, when the Germans were everywhere thrown from out of the maze of trenches into precipitate retreat; this gallant feat of arms lies to the credit of Canadian and English divisions.

Meanwhile, as a direct result of the great battles of Amiens, Bapaume, and Arras the enemy evacuated the Lys salient, leaving Lens, Bailleul, and Kemmel Hill in British hands, and, too, he further retreated in front of the right of the First Army, and on the whole front of the Third Army, until, by the 8th September, he had fallen back to the general line Vermand, Epéhy, Havrincourt, and thence along the eastern bank of the Canal-du-Nord. By the same date the French on the British right had reached the line of the Crozat Canal. Throughout his retreat the German was closely followed up, and suffered heavily in prisoners and guns.

We left the Regiment at Bapaume on the 3rd September, where it had arrived as Corps Cavalry to the IV Corps, and with that corps it remained until the armistice. The Corps was commanded by Lieutenant-General Sir G. M. Harper. The infantry divisions in the IV Corps were the 5th Division (Major-General J. Ponsonby), 37th Division (Major-General H. B. Williams), 42nd Division (Major-General A. Solly-Flood), and the New Zealand Division (Major-General Sir A. H. Russell).

The IV Corps operation orders for the 4th September reached the Regiment in the early hours of that day. The following are extracts from them:

“ 1. Divisions will make good the line Ytres-Bertincourt-Vélu to-day, with advanced troops on the line Neuville-Bourjonval-Ruyaulcourt-J. 28 central (1½ miles east of Vélu).

“ 2. Artillery will be moved forward to cover the Ytres—

Vélu line, with advanced batteries covering the Ruyaulcourt line.

"4. 3RD Hussars will allot 2 troops to each of 37th New Zealand, and 42nd Divisions as Divisional Cavalry. Remainder of Regiment will be concentrated about square H 32 south-west of Bapaume. Officer-in-Command 3RD Hussars will detail a liaison officer with orderlies to remain at Headquarters New Zealand Division.

"5. Headquarters of Divisions will be established to-morrow as follows :

42nd Division . . . .	Reincourt-les-Bapaume.
New Zealand . . . .	Frémicourt.
37th Division . . . .	Favreuil.
5th Division . . . .	To remain at Bihucourt.

"6. Corps Headquarters and Headquarters Corps Heavy Artillery will move to-morrow to Gréville.

"7. Touch will be maintained with the enemy.

"Divisions will be prepared to-morrow to make good the trench line east of Metz-en-Coûtüre, Havrincourt Wood, and Canal-du-Nord."

The 42nd Division was on the right of the advance, the New Zealand in the centre, and the 37th on the left, the 5th Division being in reserve.

2 troops of "A" Squadron were allotted to the 42nd Division.

2 troops of "A" Squadron were allotted to the New Zealand Division.

2 troops of "B" Squadron were allotted to the 37th Division.

During the day's advance these troops were employed in finding patrols, in liaison work, and in despatch riding.

The General Commanding the 37th Division made the following report on the exploit of a 3RD Hussars patrol during the advance of his division on the 4th : A troop of "B" Squadron was divided into three patrols in front of the 112th Brigade, which was acting as advanced guard to the division. The centre patrol, under Second-Lieutenant J. W. Sutherland, was stopped at the Canal-du-Nord by machine-gun fire from Havrincourt Wood. The patrol dismounted, and the officer, accompanied by No. H/8342

Lance-Corporal T. H. Hawkins, climbed down into the dry bed of the canal, and ran up it to the bend just north of the wood, where they saw a slag-heap on the eastern bank. Climbing cautiously up, they found themselves within 200 yards of a German machine-gun post, and some riflemen who were in action against our infantry and holding them up. Leaving the corporal in observation, the officer went back to the nearest infantry and brought up a Lewis gun, with which he knocked out the German post, and the infantry were able to continue their advance.

On the 5th the two troops with the 42nd Division rejoined Headquarters ; that division had been withdrawn into reserve, as the line was to be held by two divisions. Nothing of note occurred during the next few days. The forward troops were periodically relieved, the Headquarters of the Regiment remained at Bapaume, and, beyond some bombing by Boche aeroplanes and slight shelling by a high velocity gun, there was no excitement.

The battle of Havrincourt was fought on the 12th September by the 37th and New Zealand Divisions of the IV Corps and two divisions of the VI Corps north of them, the villages of Trescault and Havrincourt being taken. It was followed on the 18th by the battle of Epéhy, in which, however, the IV Corps had no share. Both these battles were fought in order to advance the British line to within assaulting distance of the enemy's main line of resistance—the redoubtable Hindenburg Line.

The Allied plan which finally threw back the German invader was the launching of four great simultaneous offensives : Converging attacks towards Mezières by French and American Armies ; an attack by British Armies on the St. Quentin-Cambrai front in the general direction of Maubeuge ; an attack by Belgian and Allied forces in Flanders in the direction of Ghent. The French and American Armies would press the opposing Germans back upon the difficult country of the Ardennes, while the British attack “ would strike directly at the vital lateral communications running through Maubeuge to Mezières, by

which alone the German forces on the Champagne front could be supplied and maintained" (Official Despatches). The attack in Flanders would clear the Belgian coast.

A battle was about to open in which millions of soldiers would take part, a battle unprecedented in history, a battle so stupendous that nothing but absolute victory could bring success in its train. The War Cabinet hesitated. The British attack was the essential point in the battle, and in front of the British Armies lay the great fortified zone known as the Hindenburg Line, which the Germans and others considered impregnable. Douglas Haig never hesitated. He was confident in himself, and he was confident in his men. This is what he wrote :

"The results to be obtained in these different attacks depended in a peculiarly large degree upon the British attack in the centre. It was here that the enemy's defences were most highly organized. If these were broken the threat directed at his vital systems of lateral communication would, of necessity, react upon his defence elsewhere.

"On the other hand, the long period of sustained offensive action through which the British Armies had already passed had made large demands both upon the troops themselves and upon my available reserves. Throughout our attacks from the 8th August onwards, our losses, in proportion to the results achieved, and the numbers of prisoners taken, had been consistently and remarkably small. In the aggregate, however, they were considerable, and in the face of them an attack upon so formidably organised a position as that which now confronted us could not be lightly undertaken. Moreover, the political effect of an unsuccessful attack upon a position so well-known as the Hindenburg Line would be large, and would go far to revive the declining moral, not only of the German Army but of the German people.

"These different considerations were present to my mind. The probable results of a costly failure, or, indeed, of anything short of a decided success, in any attempt upon the main defences of the Hindenburg Line, were obvious ; but I was convinced that the British attack was the essential part of the general scheme, and that the moment was favourable.

"Accordingly, I decided to proceed with the attack, and

all preparatory measures, including the preliminary operations already recounted, were carried out as rapidly and as thoroughly as possible." (Official Despatches.)

On the evening of the 26th September the line of the Fourth, Third, and First Armies ran in the order named, "from the village of Selency (west of St. Quentin) to Gricourt and Pontruet, and thence east of Villeret and Lempire to Villers-Guislain and Gouzeaucourt, both exclusive. Thereafter the line continued northwards to Havrincourt and Mœuvres, and thence along the west side of the Canal-du-Nord to the floods of the Sensée at Ecourt St. Quentin" (Official Despatch). A very heavy bombardment was to open on the night of the 26th-27th along the whole front of all three armies, to be followed on the morning of the 27th by the attack of the First and Third Armies only, that of the Fourth Army being held back in order to deceive the enemy as to the main point of attack.

Meanwhile, on the 25th the orders for the battle issued by the IV Corps had reached the Regiment. The following extracts are from them :

"In conjunction with operations by the First Army, the Third Army will resume the advance.

"2. The VI and XVII Corps will advance with objectives the general line Flesquières-Cantaing-Fontaine Notre-Dame, and if successful will exploit with objectives to gain the Canal-de-l'Escaut and secure a bridgehead across the canal in the direction of Rumilly.

"3. In conjunction with these attacks the IV Corps will capture Beaucamp Ridge and Highland Ridge, and will clear the Hindenburg front system as far as the Couillet Valley. If the advance of the VI Corps on Marcoing is successful, the IV Corps will advance to Welsh Ridge to cover the flank of the VI Corps.

"4. The V Corps will advance in conjunction with the right of the IV Corps.

"13. The Officer Commanding 3RD Hussars will increase the cavalry allotted to the 5th and 42nd Divisions to one squadron to each division by evening of 25th inst.

"The remainder of the Regiment will be ready to move at short notice on Zero Day."



The IV Corps was to attack on a two-division front, the 5th Division being on the right, and the 42nd on the left. On the evening of the 25th "B" Squadron reported to the 5th Division and "A" Squadron to the 42nd Division. The two troops already with each of those divisions were withdrawn to the Regiment.

The battle opened on the morning of the 26th September with the French and American attacks on both sides of the Argonne.

On the British front the attack commenced with a hurricane bombardment during the night of the 26th-27th September. "At 5.20 a.m. on the 27th the Third and First British Armies attacked with the IV, VI, XVII, and Canadian Corps in the direction of Cambrai on a front of about thirteen miles from Gouzeaucourt to the neighbourhood of Sauchy-Lestrée" (Official Despatches). The infantry attack, assisted by some sixty-five tanks, was everywhere successful. On the right strong resistance was encountered in front of the IV Corps at Beaucamp, but the 5th and 42nd Divisions drove off all counter-attacks, and established the line between Beaucamp and Ribécourt. By the end of the day the attack had reached the general line running north from those two places to Fontaine Notre-Dame-east of Haynecourt-Oisy-le-Verger.

The advance was continued on the 28th. At 8 a.m. "A" Squadron (Captain Bagnell) was ordered by the 42nd Division to report to the 127th Infantry Brigade with a view to exploiting the line Crèvecœur-Bois-Lateau. A patrol was sent to move with the attack of the 1/10th Manchester Regiment to keep touch with the situation, and especially to report any opportunity of cavalry exploit, and also to report on the country for cavalry movement. At 1 p.m. the squadron was ordered forward by the Brigadier-General of the 126th Brigade, and moved to the Ribécourt-Villers Plouich road. The squadron was then ordered to pass through the infantry on to Welsh Ridge, and exploit to the east of the Masnières-Bois-Lateau road. Moving south of Bois Couillet, the squadron got on to the northern end

of Welsh Ridge, where it was stopped by machine-gun fire. The squadron then worked north by Marcoing, where the infantry were found in action just east of that place, and the squadron could get no farther. Patrols were sent forward to discover the situation, and touch was obtained with the 187th Brigade, 62nd Division, VI Corps. The information was sent back to the 126th Brigade. At 8.30 p.m. the squadron was ordered back to that brigade, and from there was ordered to rejoin the Regiment at Trescault, and to send one troop to the Signals of the 42nd Division Headquarters. The squadron rejoined the Regiment at 10.15 p.m.

Meanwhile, the IV Corps telephoned to the 3RD's Headquarters at Bapaume, saying that the 42nd Division was moving forward with a squadron ("A" Squadron) of 3RD Hussars operating in front, and ordered the Regimental Headquarters and the remaining squadron to report forthwith to 42nd Division Headquarters. Those Headquarters were found at 3.45 p.m. just south of the Canal-du-Nord, and west of the northern portion of Havrincourt Wood. From there the Regiment was ordered to Trescault and to report *en route* to the 127th Brigade, which was reserve brigade. Trescault was reached at 7 p.m., and the Regiment bivouacked on the edge of the wood west of the village, the 127th Brigade being just north of the 3RD.

"B" Squadron, meanwhile, had been divided between the two leading brigades of the 5th Division, and had been employed in finding patrols to Villers-Plouich, and in communicating with the divisions on the flanks.

By evening "Gouzeaucourt, Marcoing, Noyelles-sur-l'Escaut, Fontaine Notre-Dame, Saily, and Palleul were taken. At Marcoing our troops established themselves on the east bank of the Scheldt Canal, and on the northern flank entered Aubencheul-au-Bac" (Official Despatches).

The following extracts are from telegrams received by the Regiment from the IV Corps on the 28th :

"Headquarters and two squadrons 3RD Hussars will be transferred from command of 42nd Division to command

of New Zealand Division on New Zealand Division taking over 42nd Divisional front."

"New Zealand and 5th Divisions will push on to the Canal-de-l'Escaut (to-morrow). 3RD Hussars will cross at Vaucelles, Vinchy Lock and Crèvecœur, and will push on with objectives the line Bonne Enfance Farm-Lesdain and high ground in H 25 and 26 (north-east of Lesdain), the New Zealand Division taking over the corps front."

On the 29th, at 1.15 a.m., the New Zealand Division telegraphed to the Regiment: "3RD Hussars will detail two troops to report to 1st and 2nd New Zealand Brigades respectively at 8 a.m. to-day."

At 4.15 p.m. a message was received by the Regiment from the New Zealand Division; it was timed 3.30 p.m. and ran: "You will move one squadron forthwith to 1st New Zealand Brigade. The squadron will be required to operate towards Crèvecœur, and will come under command of G.O.C. 1st New Zealand Infantry Brigade."

It should be noted that situations explained in orders by map references to the large-scale map are omitted, unless they are of sufficient importance to localise by adjacent names in the map attached to this book.

To continue: The remainder of "C" Squadron (Captain Dobie) reported to the 1st New Zealand Brigade west of Welsh Ridge, and was ordered to bivouac for the night near Ribécourt, where the two troops already out with 1st and 2nd New Zealand Brigades rejoined the squadron, "B" Squadron had spent the day concentrated with the 15th Infantry Brigade. Meanwhile, Regimental Headquarters and "A" Squadron were ordered three and a half miles back to Ruyaulcourt, as there was no nearer water for the horses.

The Hindenburg Line had been broken. To quote from the Official Despatches: "The heavy and continuous bombardment opened on the morning of the 27th September had been maintained by the Fourth Army along its whole front without intermission for two days. The intensity of our fire drove the enemy's garrisons to take refuge in their

deep dugouts and tunnels, and made it impossible for his carrying parties to bring up food and ammunition."

During the 29th the Fourth Army, under an intense artillery barrage, had made its attack on a front of twelve miles. On its right the French First Army attacked in the St. Quentin sector. On its left the Third Army had continued its advance, and had attacked with the V and IV Corps between Vendhuile and Marcoing, and had heavy fighting about Villers-Ghuislain, Gonnellieu, and Welsh Ridge. By the evening the Third Army had captured Mesnières, and north-west of Cambrai the Canadian Corps had taken Sancourt.

Turning to the Regiment: The following telegram was received at 7.30 p.m. on the 29th from the New Zealand Division, "To-morrow, 30th September, advance will be continued eastwards with the object of crossing and establishing bridge-heads over the Canal-du-St. Quentin, and to secure the high ground north of Esnes. 1st Brigade group will advance under cover of darkness and first secure Crèveœur and Lesdain, establishing crossing places over the canal and river, and, secondly, seize and consolidate that high ground. 2nd Brigade group will also establish bridge-heads from Vaucelles northwards to inter-brigade boundary, and form a defensive flank facing south on the line Bel Aise-Pelu Wood, where junction with 1st Brigade will be effected. Should enemy be found to be retreating, constant pressure will be maintained and contact established. Visual signal-stations will be established with Esnes Mill, and thence eastwards. One squadron 3rd Hussars and Auckland Machine Gun Company will be at disposal of 1st Brigade."

Early on the morning of the 30th the British advance continued on all fronts.

On the IV Corps sector the leading battalions of the 1st Brigade of the New Zealand Division and "C" Squadron of the 3rd Hussars moved on Crèveœur in the early hours of the morning, and found that place strongly held by the Germans. While the infantry crossed the St. Quentin

Canal, and attacked Crèvecœur, the 3RD's squadron closely followed the attacking battalions in order to push on at the first available opportunity, and seize the high ground north-east of the village. The enemy opposition was strong, and the infantry attack, soon after crossing the canal, was held, and had eventually to fall back to the western bank of the canal. It was here, while withdrawing his squadron, that Captain Dobie was killed and Lieutenant Petherick wounded. The gallant Dobie had been already three times wounded during the war—it was bad luck to be knocked out at the very end. A *beau sabreur*, a fine soldier, the best of sportsmen, and a gallant gentleman beloved of his men, he was a very great loss to the Regiment he loved so well. Captain the Hon. Donald Howard took over the command of the squadron. As the infantry attack was unable to get on, the squadron was eventually withdrawn to the 1st New Zealand Brigade Headquarters.

“B” Squadron was with the 15th Brigade throughout the day, and was employed in furnishing patrols, amongst them being one under Second-Lieutenant Blumenfeld on a reconnaissance to Gonnellieu, and another reconnaissance under Lieutenant Huggins to the canal crossing at Banteux, which village was found strongly held by the enemy, and also communicating patrols to the 21st Division of the V Corps. At 6 p.m. the squadron was transferred to the 111th Infantry Brigade on relief of the 5th Division by the 37th Division, and it remained in Fifteen Ravine for the night.

On this day, the 30th, the Fourth Army enlarged its gap in the Hindenburg Line by the capture of Thorigny, and of the le Tronquoy tunnel, through which ran the St. Quentin Canal, while in front of the 5th and 21st Divisions of the Third Army the enemy abandoned Villers-Ghuislain and Gonnellieu, and withdrew behind the Scheldt Canal.

The Germans now retired from St. Quentin, and that place was occupied by the French First Army on the 1st October. During the next few days the Fourth Army continued its advance, and captured the Beaufort Line, the

last line of the Hindenburg defences ; while the right of the Third Army crossed the Scheldt Canal, and occupied the Hindenburg Line east of it. Crèvecœur was taken by the New Zealanders, and on the left of the Third Army the 3rd Division captured Rumilly. North of Cambrai the Canadian Corps of the First Army advanced to Blécourt. By the 6th October the British Armies had captured the whole of the Hindenburg defences.

Meanwhile, in the Regiment during these days, " B " Squadron had rejoined Headquarters from the 37th Division, having been relieved by " A " Squadron. " C " Squadron rejoined on the 3rd October, and a troop of that squadron made a track for the Regiment between Masnières and Crèvecœur in twenty-four hours. On the 5th " B " Squadron was ordered forward, as infantry patrols had reported that the enemy had retired. By the same evening the squadron reported the enemy to be in his original line opposite Crèvecœur, but that he had retired from the Scheldt Canal on the southern portion of the IV Corps front. The squadron spent the night near Masnières.

Of the results of breaking the Hindenburg Line we will quote from Sir Douglas Haig's despatches :

" The great and critical assaults in which, during these nine days of battle, the First, Third, and Fourth Armies stormed the line of the Canal-du-Nord and broke the Hindenburg Line mark the close of the first phase of the British offensive. The enemy's defence in the last and strongest of his prepared positions had been shattered. The whole of the main Hindenburg defences had passed into our possession, and a wide gap had been driven through such rear trench systems as had existed behind them. The effect of the victory upon the subsequent course of the campaign was decisive. The threat to the enemy's communications was now direct and instant, for nothing but the natural obstacles of a wooded and well-watered countryside lay between our armies and Maubeuge."

While these great events had been taking place on the front of the main advance, in the north the Second Army

had attacked on the 28th September on a front of four and a half miles south of the Ypres-Zonnebeke road, and on the left of the Second Army the Belgian Army had continued the line of attack as far as Dixmude. The Germans were everywhere driven rapidly from their positions. The defeated enemy was followed up with the utmost vigour by the Second Army and the Belgians. By the evening of the 1st October the British "had cleared the left bank of the Lys from Commines southwards, while north of that town they were close up to Wervicq, Gheluwe, and Ledeghem. On their left the Belgian Army had passed the general line Moorslede-Staden-Dixmude" (Official Despatch). The forces engaged consisted of the Belgian Army, some French divisions, and all the artillery and a certain number of divisions of the British Second Army, the whole being under the command of the King of the Belgians. This attack in Flanders was followed by the withdrawal of the Germans from Lens and Armentières.

The second and concluding phase of the British offensive was now to commence.

The Fourth and Third Armies, and the right of the First Army, were to move forward "with their left flank on the canal line which runs from Cambrai to Mons, and their right covered by the French First Army" (Official Despatch). This advance was to realise to the full the plan of the Allied strategy. The capture of Maubeuge, the total disruption of the enemy's main communications and his consequent falling back to the line of the Meuse.

The battle was to open on the 8th, the Third Army attacking at 4.30 a.m., and the Fourth Army at 5.10 a.m. Farther south, east of the Meuse, and in Champagne French and American Armies were also attacking.

On the IV Corps front the New Zealand Division advanced on the left, and the 37th Division on the right. On the left of the New Zealanders was the 3rd Division of the VI Corps, and on the right of the 37th was the 21st Division of the V Corps.

The objective of the New Zealand Division was a line

west of Esnes, and running roughly south from Esnes Mill, and, if opportunity offered, the division was ordered to exploit success to a north and south line just east of Esnes in conjunction with the 3rd Division, while the 37th Division was to protect the right flank of the New Zealanders. The attack of the New Zealand Division was to be carried out by the 2nd New Zealand Infantry Brigade on the right, and the 3rd New Zealand (Rifle) Brigade on the left.

The orders of the New Zealand Division directed that "One squadron 3rd Hussars will be in position east of les Rues Vertes in readiness to cross the canal at zero plus one hour and thirty minutes; 3rd Hussars, less two squadrons, will remain in present bivouac in readiness to move at half an hour's notice from zero plus two hours." "B" Squadron was detailed to move with the New Zealand attack, and Headquarters and "C" Squadron remained under the orders of that division, while "A" Squadron continued with the 37th Division. Throughout the day both the advanced squadrons moved with the leading brigades of the two attacking divisions, being chiefly employed in patrol and liaison work. At 11.45 a.m. a telegram was received by Regimental Headquarters from the New Zealand Division to the effect that the division had captured all its objectives, and that "B" Squadron had been ordered to push through the infantry, and move on the line Esnes Mill, Longsart, and Caudry. In the same telegram, Headquarters and "C" Squadron were ordered to be at les Rues Vertes by 4 p.m. The Regiment reached the appointed spot at 3.45, and found the New Zealand Divisional Headquarters a mile to the south of them.

By evening the general line reached by the British advance ran from Brancourt on the right northwards to Prémont, Serain, Malincourt, Esnes, Seranvillers, Forenville, Niergnies, the southern outskirts of Cambrai, while during the night the Canadian Corps captured Ramillies, north of Cambrai.

At 11.30 p.m. "B" Squadron was withdrawn, and spent the night just west of Esnes.

At 5.30 a.m. on the 9th, the Third and Fourth Armies



resumed their advance, being preceded on most parts of the front by cavalry patrols.

In the 3RD, "C" Squadron relieved "B" with the advanced New Zealand Brigades at daylight, the latter rejoining Regimental Headquarters. "A" Squadron continued with the 37th Division.

At 7 a.m. "C" Squadron was ordered forward in the direction of Beauvois-en-Cambr sis, and was to be ready to cross the main line railway at 9 o'clock. Moving forward in front of the left advanced New Zealand Brigade, the squadron reached the railway. From here Lieutenant Craig's troop was sent at a gallop to get possession of a knoll just south-west of Fontaine-au-Pire, a village adjoining Beauvois. The troop drew heavy machine-gun fire from Fontaine, but, putting the horses in a quarry on its southern side, stuck to their position. Meanwhile, other patrols from the squadron moving on Caudry similarly ascertained that that place was held by the enemy, while the main body of the squadron on the railway was shelled. On the arrival of the infantry the advanced posts of the squadron were withdrawn. The losses in Craig's troop were 3 killed and 7 wounded (including himself), and amongst the horses 12 killed, 2 wounded, and 15 missing.

In the meantime, "A" Squadron with the 37th Division had reached St. Aubert Farm, while Regimental Headquarters and "B" Squadron spent the night at le Grand Pont on the western side of Esnes, the New Zealand Divisional Headquarters moving to Lesdain.

By nightfall the British advance had captured Bohain and was within two miles of Le Cateau. In this latter success the 3rd Cavalry Division, concentrated as a division, had very materially helped; Caudry was being attacked, and Cambrai was in our hands, with our troops some three miles east of the town.

On the 10th the advance continued. At 5.15 a.m. "B" Squadron relieved "C" with the advanced New Zealand Brigades; "A" Squadron remained with the 37th Division. Both squadrons had out many patrols in advance of the

infantry during the day, but the only casualties were a man killed and a man and a horse wounded with "A" Squadron. Passing Caudry, the pursuit met with but little opposition until, moving down to the river Selle, on the far bank of which the enemy was in some force, and it was evident that he intended making a stand, and there the advance stopped. "A" Squadron bivouacked for the night at Audencourt and "C" at Beauvois. The British line at nightfall ran north from east of Bohain to the Selle River at Viesly, and thence past St. Hilaire and Avesnes to the Scheldt at Thun-St. Martin.

From the 11th October the British advance halted. The rear communications had to be improved, captured railways repaired, and delay action mines which the Germans had most thoughtfully left in bridges, on roads, in buildings, and in other places where they could do damage, had to be found and removed. The IV Corps front was on the Selle about Briastre with an outpost line on the high ground west of the river. The whole of the Regiment was concentrated in Caudry, all the horses and men being in billets, with the exception of a troop of "B" Squadron with the advanced New Zealand Brigade Headquarters in Prayelle.

The Regiment was now back in country through which it had moved during the retreat from Mons in 1914, on the evening and night before the battle of Le Cateau. It was in Solesmes that Uhlans fell back before the advance of the 3RD, and it was there that a "B" Squadron patrol swam the Selle River in the face of the Uhlans' fire. Then a short rest in Viesly, a sudden move to Inchy, another rest in the streets of that village, followed by a ride to Ligny and the battle of Le Cateau.

We will now check a moment to see how the tide of battle has rolled on the other fronts of "Armageddon."

From the 6th to the 12th October the French First Army on the British right advanced from the east of St. Quentin to Bernot, clearing the west bank of the Oise-Sambre Canal as it went.

From the 7th to the 13th October, from the neighbourhood

of Lens, the British advanced to the western suburbs of Douai, and were close up to the Sensée and Haute-Deule canals from Arleux to Vendin-le-Vieil.

“During this period also our Allies had been pushing forward steadily on both sides of the Argonne. Held by their attacks on his southern flank, while to the north the British offensive was driving forward rapidly behind his right, the enemy was forced to evacuate his positions in the Laon salient. Signs of a wide-spread German withdrawal were reported on the 11th October, and by the evening of the 13th October Laon was in French hands.” (Official Despatch.)

Meanwhile, in the north the Allies had worked hard at a system of communications across the devastated country of the old Ypres battle-fields, and “on the 14th October, the British, Belgian, and French forces under the command of His Majesty the King of the Belgians attacked on the whole front between the Lys River at Commines and Dixmude” (Official Despatch). By the 16th October the British Second Army held the north bank of the Lys from Frélinghenin to opposite Harlebeke. Farther north by night-fall on the 15th, our Allies had surrounded Thourout, and on the 17th Ostend had fallen, and by the 20th the northern flank of the Allied line rested on the Dutch frontier.

This advance north of the Lys had brought the British to the east of the Lille defences on the northern side, while the advance of the Third and Fourth Armies on the Le Cateau front had turned the Lille defences from the south. In consequence, the Germans between the Sensée and the Lys were once more compelled to withdraw. They commenced their retirement on the 15th October, their rear-guards being closely pressed, and by the 22nd the British “had reached the general line of Scheldt on the whole front from Valenciennes to the neighbourhood of Avelghem” (Official Despatch).

In the meantime, on the Selle front local operations had, by the 13th October, brought the Third and Fourth Armies at all points south of Haspres to that river.

To turn to the battle now commencing on the Selle. The opening operation was an attack on the 17th by the Fourth Army on a ten-mile front south from Le Cateau, the French First Army also advancing on the right. In this attack, by the evening of the 19th, the enemy had been driven across the Sambre and Oise Canal at practically all points south of Catillon, whence the British line followed the valley of the Richemont by the east and north of Le Cateau to the Selle.

This operation was followed on the 20th October by an attack on the line of the Selle north of Le Cateau by the Third Army, and on its left the right division of the First Army. Again, after heavy fighting, in which they were aided by tanks, the infantry gained all their objectives on the high ground east of the Selle, and pushed out patrols to the Harpies River. North of Haspres other troops of the First Army occupied Denain.

To hark back to the Regiment, which was concentrated in Caudry when the 4th Corps halted in front of the Selle on the 11th October. On the 12th the 42nd Division relieved the New Zealand, and the 5th Division relieved the 37th; Headquarters and "B" and "C" Squadrons of the 3rd Hussars were placed at the disposal of the 42nd Division, and "A" Squadron was at the disposal of the 5th Division, and next morning the "B" Squadron troop rejoined its squadron. Caudry was a busy place during the week the IV Corps halted there. In it were Corps and Divisional Headquarters, with the exception of the 42nd Division, whose Headquarters were in the neighbouring village of Beauvois. Crowded with soldiery, every theatre and hall taken up with cinemas and divisional concerts, regimental bands playing in the square—there was no lack of amusement, while the townspeople were delighted at the arrival of the British troops after four years of German rule. And a bad time they had had of it under the iron rule of the Hun, and but little to eat. On the 14th an observation post consisting of an officer and six men from "B" and "C" Squadrons was posted on the high ground just north of

Viesly, with their horses in the west end of the village. The post was in position daily from dawn till dusk, and its duty was to at once report any enemy movement direct to 42nd Division Headquarters in Beauvois. On the same day the 5th Division ordered "A" Squadron forward on a report that the Germans were about to continue their retreat; nothing came of it, and the squadron returned to Caudry. On the night of the 17th-18th, and for most of the day on the 18th, the town was shelled. During the night, at about 9 o'clock, a direct hit on the shed occupied by a troop of "A" Squadron horses killed eighteen horses and wounded five, the men luckily escaping with but one wounded. The shed, a perfect shambles, was very soon besieged by a large crowd of the townsfolk—men, women, and children—piteously asking for the dead horses, as they had not tasted meat "for very many days," poor devils!

The attack on the German positions east of the river Selle commenced at 2 a.m. on the 20th. "A" Squadron moved to Bethencourt to the 5th Division, while Regimental Headquarters and "B" and "C" Squadrons remained in Caudry standing to. The observation post was withdrawn and liaison patrols with the leading infantry were found by all the squadrons. A patrol from "B" Squadron, under Lieutenant Dalrymple, was ordered to reconnoitre the crossings of the river at Belle Vue. On leaving Briastre they at once came under heavy machine-gun fire from the opposite bank; they galloped forward to cover and accurately located the positions of the German machine guns, which information was of great value to the attacking infantry. All the objectives necessary for the resumption of the main advance were seized, and two quiet days followed. "A" Squadron withdrew to Caudry, leaving one troop at Clermont Château.

The Fourth, Third, and First Armies resumed their advance on the 23rd October, with a general attack on a front of fifteen miles between the Sambre and Oise Canal and the Scheldt. The Fourth Army opened its assault at 1.20 a.m.

In the Third Army zero hour was at 2 a.m. for a preliminary operation by the V Corps on the right ; while the IV Corps, and the 3rd Division of the VI Corps on its left, advanced at 3.20 a.m. On the IV Corps front the 5th Division (13th Infantry Brigade) attacked on the right, and the 42nd Division (125th Infantry Brigade) on the left. On the right of the IV Corps was the 21st Division of the V Corps.

The first objective in front of the IV Corps was the high ground running south from the west of Vertigneul over Grand Champs to the north-west of Owillers. The second objective ran south-east from Vertigneul, following the high ground north and east of Beaurain.

On the attack reaching the second objective the New Zealand Division (2nd New Zealand Infantry Brigade) passed through the 42nd Division and continued the advance. Similarly, on the second objective, the 37th Division (111th Infantry Brigade) passed through the 5th Division.

In conjunction with these arrangements, Headquarters and " B " and " C " Squadrons of the 3rd Hussars passed from the command of the 42nd Division to that of the New Zealanders, while " A " Squadron passed from the 5th Division to the command of the 37th.

At 11 a.m. " C " Squadron was ordered forward with the advanced New Zealand Brigade, and at 4 p.m. " A " Squadron had reached Beaurain with the leading brigade of the 37th Division. Regimental Headquarters and two troops of " B " Squadron remained in Caudry, the other two troops of that squadron being employed in conducting German prisoners from the attacking line to Neuville and Troisvilles.

The fighting was severe. The Germans were making a desperate effort. If their infantry were useless, their machine gunners fought magnificently ; the picked veterans of the war, they were adepts at the tactical handling of machine guns, and they invariably fought them to the death. In artillery, too, the enemy was still to be reckoned with. The holding off of the British attack on the Selle was Ludendorff's only hope of a deliberate withdrawal to the

Meuse. It was the forlorn hope, and failure meant disaster to the German armies.

The battle continued on the 24th. "C" Squadron was in Vertigneul at 3 a.m., and remained in its vicinity throughout the day, being heavily shelled at intervals. At the end of the day the British attack had reached the western outskirts of the Forêt-de-Mormal and the New Zealanders were within a mile of le Quesnoy, while to the north-west the villages of Ruesnes and Maing had been captured.

The 25th saw the attack still going on. At 11 a.m. "C" Squadron was ordered back to just east of Solesmes, and at 1 p.m. the squadron was ordered forward again to Pont-à-Pierres, about a mile south-west of Beaudignies, where it bivouacked for the night. The objectives had been reached, and the battle drew to its close, though during the next two days local operations on the general front gave us Englefontaine, on the edge of the Mormal Forest, and from the outskirts of le Quesnoy a line running east of the Valenciennes railway past Sepmeries and Artres to Famars.

Meanwhile, Regimental Headquarters and the two troops of "B" Squadron had moved to Viesly, where the two advanced squadrons, less one troop of "A," left at Beaurain, rejoined on the 28th, followed next day by the other two troops of "B." During the days of the battle the two advanced squadrons had been employed in finding patrols, liaison work, and despatch riders for the advanced infantry. The movements of the "C" Squadron Headquarters we have followed, while that of "A" was the most of the time in the neighbourhood of Beaurain—both the squadron Headquarters were continually shelled.

The advance had once more come to a halt, while preparations were being made for the next battle. The Regiment remained in Viesly, and on the 31st a troop of "B" Squadron relieved the troop of "A" with the 37th Division in Beaurain. Taking advantage of the halt, a IV Corps race meeting was advertised to take place at Beaurain on the 2nd November, and a number of keen spirits got busy about arranging a course, fences, paddocks and all the other attendant

delights necessary to the "sport of kings." On the appointed day crowds of horses of all shapes, and crowds of soldiery of all descriptions, from generals to privates, were to be seen all over the country-side, wending their way to the course just outside Beaurain. The opening event of the afternoon's sport was a five-furlong scurry, and the starters for this first race were being led in the paddock amidst the usual criticism of the crowd, and the eager shouts of the amateur bookmakers. "Good show this," remarked someone. "Yes, wonder what Fritz thinks about it. Ha! ha!" "Evens the field," yells a strident voice from amongst the fraternity, followed by a babel of similar voices, suddenly let loose. If one had not been so intent upon backing one's own opinion and suffering the pleasant agony which so often accompanies that condition, one might have—Whiz-z-z-z-z-z-z-z-z CR-R-R-UMP. "Gosh! it's by the open ditch." Whiz-z-z-z-z-z-z-z-z CR-R-R-UMP. "There goes the winning-post. Begob!" as the said post soared heavenwards. Another crash close to the paddock, and in less time than it takes to tell there was not a horse of any shape, neither was there a soldier of any description, from general to private, to be seen in the vicinity of the course. It does not do to advertise a battle-field race meeting too extensively.

Before entering upon what was to prove the final battle of the war, a glance at the position of the enemy at the end of October is of interest, and again we cannot do better than quote from the Commander-in-Chief's Despatches :

"By this time the rapid succession of heavy blows dealt by the British forces had had a cumulative effect, both moral and material, upon the German Armies. The difficulty of replacing the enemy's enormous losses in guns, machine guns, and ammunition had increased with every fresh attack, and his reserves of men were exhausted.

"The capitulation of Turkey and Bulgaria and the imminent collapse of Austria—consequent upon Allied successes, which the desperate position of her own armies on the western front had rendered her powerless to pre-



vent—had made Germany's military situation ultimately impossible. If her armies were allowed to withdraw undisturbed to shorter lines, the struggle might still be protracted over the winter. The British Armies, however, were now in a position to prevent this by a direct attack upon a vital centre, which should anticipate the enemy's withdrawal and force an immediate conclusion."

On the 1st November the French and Americans were again attacking on the Argonne-Meuse front.

On the 1st and 2nd November was fought the battle of Valenciennes as a necessary preliminary to the battle of the Sambre. In the two days the XVII Corps of the Third Army and the XXII and Canadian Corps of the First Army inflicted a severe defeat on the enemy, in which the line of the Scheldt was turned from the south and the Canadian Corps entered Valenciennes.

Everything was now ready for the decisive battle which was to end the war. There was no time to lose if the enemy was to be prevented from making good his retreat to the Meuse, and of this there were indications both in the Tournai salient and to the south, where the enemy's positions were equally threatened by the British advance.

This decisive attack was to be delivered by the Fourth, Third, and First Armies on a thirty-mile front extending from the Sambre, north of Oisy, to Valenciennes. It was a difficult country. In the south the river which had to be crossed at the outset of the battle was a formidable obstacle. In the centre was the great forest of Mormal, which in 1914, during the retreat from Mons, had cut the British Expeditionary Force in two. In the north the fortified town of le Quesnoy, and several streams running parallel to the line of advance, offered opportunities for successful defence.

These three British Armies were now about to fight on the very ground on which the original little British Army of this great war—not even called an army, but an Expeditionary Force—first assembled in France, before it advanced to Mons to stem the tide of the German invasion. And there three British Imperial Armies, with two other Armies

of the British Empire immediately north of them, were about to take complete revenge for the trials of the Old Contemptibles of the British Expeditionary Force of 1914. Is it too much to say that these five great armies of the Empire were fighting over hallowed ground—ground in which lay many a Briton who had died for his Empire in its days of stress.

The hour of attack for the Third Army was 5.30 a.m. on the 4th November. The first bound of the Third Army was to be a general line from the high ground between Landrecies and Locquignol, thence east of Jolimetz to the high ground north-west of Gommegnies, thence along the spur from Wargnies-le-Grand to Eth. As soon as this line had been made good, the advance was to be pressed energetically to the line of the St. Remy road—Pont-sur-Sambre—Bavais—Montignies-sur-Roo road. The greatest secrecy was ordered.

In the IV Corps the 37th Division attacked on the right and the New Zealand on the left. On the right of the corps was the 17th Division of the V Corps, and on the left the 62nd Division of the VI Corps.

In the 3RD Hussars, Headquarters and "C" Squadron were attached to the New Zealand Division, "B" Squadron to the 37th Division, "A" Squadron to the V Corps. The squadrons marched to their respective destinations during the night.

At the appointed moment a dense artillery barrage rolled forward, and behind it, accompanied by tanks wherever they could be used, pressed the infantry. Very soon on the whole thirty miles of the battle front they had broken into German positions and were everywhere driving the enemy before them.

On our own front of the attack the V Corps pushed far into the forest of Mormal. By dawn next morning its 38th Division on the right had reached the eastern edge of the forest, while its 17th Division on the left at the same time was a mile to the east of Locquignol. In the IV Corps a counter-attack north of Ghissignies upon the 37th and New Zealand Divisions was repulsed early in the advance, with

great loss to the enemy. The 37th, pushing on, took Louvignies and Jolimetz, and by the evening had reached the centre of the forest. Meanwhile, the New Zealanders, sweeping by le Quesnoy on its north and south, did not stop to take the town by direct assault, according to order ; and before nightfall had captured Herbignies, well to the east of it. While the New Zealand brigades swept past le Quesnoy, that fortified town had directed upon its ramparts smoke-shells, oil-drums and similar methods of coercion, and at 4 p.m. its garrison of over a thousand men surrendered at discretion.

The movements of the 3RD's squadrons during the day were ; "A's" Headquarters were in the vicinity of Poix-du-Nord, with patrols and despatch-riders with the leading infantry of the 17th and 38th Divisions of the V Corps ; "B" Squadron was at Neuville at 5.30 a.m. and at 7 a.m. moved to Ghissignies ; at 2.30 p.m. the squadron moved forward to Louvignies, and at 6.30 p.m. returned to Ghissignies for the night—the squadron found patrols for the 37th Division of the IV Corps, one patrol under Lieutenant Waterlow getting into a hot corner and having five horses killed and two men and one horse wounded ; "C," with the New Zealand Division, remained with its Headquarters in the vicinity of Vertigneul, and had one troop with the 1st New Zealand Infantry Brigade, and two troops with the 2nd New Zealand Infantry Brigade, all of which found the patrols and despatch-riders with the leading infantry.

By the evening the attack "had advanced to a depth of five miles, reaching the general line Fesmy-Landrecies—centre of Forêt-de-Mormal-Wargnies-le-Grand—five miles east of Valenciennes—Onnaing-Scheldt Canal opposite Thiers" (Official Despatch).

It was a great victory. The three British armies had utterly defeated thirty-two German divisions, and had captured 19,000 prisoners and 460 guns.

"By this great victory the enemy's resistance was definitely broken. On the night 4th to 5th November his

troops began to fall back on practically the whole battle front. Throughout the following days, despite continuous rain, which imposed great hardships on our troops, infantry and cavalry pressed forward with scarcely a check, maintaining close touch with the rapidly retreating Germans." (Official Despatch.)

At dawn on the 5th November the 5th Division passed through the 37th and "B" Squadron passed to the command of the former division. Soon after daylight the advance was resumed by the 5th and New Zealand Divisions on the IV Corps front. On the right in the V Corps the 21st Division had taken the place of the 17th, while on the left was the 62nd Division of the VI Corps. The day's objective for the corps was the line of the Pont-sur-Sambre-Bavai road.

In the 3RD, "A" Squadron advanced with the 21st Division. A patrol under Lieutenant Dunn, reconnoitring in front of the advancing infantry, had been ordered to Berlaimont and Sassegnies to report upon the crossings over the river Sambre in those places. He succeeded in his mission, and got valuable information back to the infantry; but near Berlaimont the enemy laid an ambush to capture the patrol. Cunning, however, surpasses strength, and the Germans were overreached by the cunning and bold riding of the English horsemen. It was Ruskin who wrote something to the effect that "cunning is a gift of overreaching, accompanied with enjoyment and a sense of superiority." Ruskin was right, judging by the report of the patrol on this escapade. "B" Squadron moved with the 5th Division Headquarters, and had a troop with each of its leading brigades, the 15th and 95th Infantry Brigades. "C" Squadron was with the 2nd New Zealand Infantry Brigade, the leading brigade of the division.

By evening a line running roughly south from Bavai and along the eastern side of the Mormal Forest and thence east of Maroilles and Prisches had been reached by the Third and Fourth Armies. On the left, the First Army had reached the line of the Honnelle River.

The advance was resumed at daylight on the 6th, and on the IV Corps front the 5th and 42nd Divisions, the latter having passed through the New Zealanders during the night, were ordered to capture the crossings over the Sambre between Pont-sur-Sambre and Hautmont, and to establish bridge-heads on the farther side of the river. With the exception of Regimental Headquarters and "C" Squadron coming under the command of the 42nd Division—the squadron advancing with the leading brigade of that division at 6 a.m.—there was no change in the dispositions of the squadrons of the Regiment. Regimental Headquarters moved to the Old Mill at Villereau. On arriving at the mill a battalion of New Zealand Infantry was found already snugly billeted. After some discussion, during which it appeared that both units had been ordered to billet in the mill for the same period of time, and that the mill would only hold about a quarter of the numbers allotted to it, it was agreed—after the usual abuse of the long-suffering Staff—to bed down together, some of the infantry turning out of sheds to get our horses under cover from the continuous rain.

There was considerable opposition during the day on the front of the First Army, and also in front of the left of the Third Army, and the crossings of the Sambre ordered by the IV Corps were not gained. It was not the opposition of the enemy that delayed the pursuit; it was the difficulty of getting up supplies to the troops. Roads, bridges, railways were destroyed; while the heavy rain made any temporary stretch of road round a mine crater, or any similar destruction, a perfect quagmire and very nearly impassable for motor transport. "Work on roads will be pressed forward with the utmost vigour." "Divisions will arrange that repairs to roads and bridges are pushed on as rapidly as possible." These two instructions are taken at random from IV Corps orders, and will tend to show the difficulties of supply and transport during the last few days of the pursuit.

For the 7th, the IV Corps ordered the 42nd and 5th

Divisions to push on, keeping close touch with the troops of the V and VI Corps on the right and left respectively. The 5th Division was to secure the bridges south and east of Pont-sur-Sambre, while the 42nd Division was to time its advance on the left with the troops of the VI Corps, but was to bring forward its right with the 5th Division and to endeavour to gain the high ground north of Boussières.

The squadrons of the 3RD remained with the same divisions. "A" Squadron was ordered to send two troops through the advanced infantry of the 21st Division of the V Corps, but, as they were setting forth, the order was cancelled. "B" Squadron had two troops throughout the day, acting as advanced guard to the 95th Brigade of the 5th Division, and an officer's patrol under Lieutenant Robinson reconnoitring the Avesnes-Maubeuge road did some useful work in locating enemy machine-gun posts. "C" Squadron, with the 42nd Division, which was checking its advance on the left to keep in line with VI Corps, was most of the day at la Haute Rue with a few patrols out. This day the Guards captured Bavai.

Meanwhile the success of the British advance was beginning to bear fruit in the north; the enemy was beginning to retire, and the Fifth and Second British Armies moved forward.

On the southern flank of the main advance the Fourth Army occupied Avesnes on the 8th, and in the centre the Third Army captured Hautmont and reached the outskirts of Maubeuge.

Each squadron of the 3RD Hussars was concentrated: "A" Squadron with the 21st Division at Aymeries; "B," leaving Pont-sur-Sambre at 5.55 a.m., formed the advanced guard to the 95th Brigade of the 5th Division, and its reconnoitring patrols found enemy machine-gun posts in Fort Hautmont and German rear-guards at various points on the Avesnes-Maubeuge road—the squadron lost seven horses killed, and four men and two horses wounded; "C" Squadron, with the 125th Brigade of the 42nd Division, was at Hoisies Farm, south of Hargnies. Regimental

Headquarters were at la Haute Rue with the Headquarters of the 42nd Division.

It is not with any idea of grumbling that one mentions here that the Regiment was short of food—"C'est la Guerre," as our Allies say—but we revert to the question of supply to illustrate its difficulties even in a small unit. The 3RD Hussars were fed by the Corps Troops of the IV Corps. Two motor-lorries brought the Regiment's rations and forage from Viesly to Jolimetz, where they were dumped. The Regimental Headquarters, wherever they were, had to send four horse-wagons back to Jolimetz to bring up the supplies, which were apportioned at Headquarters and sent on to the advanced squadrons, often many miles away and along roads which the repairing units had not reached. "To-day," to quote from a diary, "the wagons have done thirty miles going to Jolimetz, over most appalling roads—the mine craters through the Mormal Forest causing endless blocks and congestion. Added to this, they have to go on any distance to their squadrons."

On the 9th November the Germans were in general retreat along the whole front of the five British armies. The fortress of Maubeuge was entered by the Guards and 62nd Divisions of the VI Corps, while the Canadian Corps was approaching Mons.

The movements of the Third's squadrons on the 9th were: "A" Squadron was with the 52nd Brigade at Limont-Fontaine and found officers' patrols to (1) Damousies, Obrechies, Choisies, and Bois-de-Mesnil; (2) Wattignies (the reader is referred back to the 19th August of 1914), la Victoire, Dimechaux, Solrinnes. The squadron moved up to Damousies, but was ordered to withdraw to Beaufort at night.

"B" Squadron. The squadron, at 9 a.m., was ordered to regain touch with the retreating Germans who had slipped away from the infantry outposts during the night. The enemy was found on the river Thure, and a report to that effect was sent to the 5th Division at 5.15 p.m. The squadron spent the night in Obrechies, with patrols in touch with the enemy through the night.

"C" Squadron. The enemy having also slipped away from the leading brigade of the 42nd Division during the night, two troops of the squadron at 6 a.m. were ordered to regain touch. With the remainder of the squadron in support, the two troops moved forward via Hautmont, Fort-du-Bourdiau and Ferrière-la-Petite and found the enemy in Colletet, and to the south of that village, the village itself being defended with machine guns, while the bridges over the river Solre were found destroyed. The squadron spent the night in Ferrière-la-Petite, with its patrols in constant and close touch with the enemy.

Regimental Headquarters joined the 125th Infantry Brigade Headquarters in Boussières during the afternoon.

On the 10th the enemy was in rapid retreat along the whole front of the five British armies, with cavalry and cyclists starting in pursuit. At 9 a.m. Regimental Headquarters were ordered to Hautmont. There it was found that the squadrons with the 5th Division and the V Corps had been ordered to rejoin the Regiment by order of the IV Corps, and that the 3RD had been placed under the orders of the 42nd Division. In an order (42nd Divisional Order, No. 92) issued by that division were the following instructions: "The division has been ordered to halt; the pursuit will be taken up by the force as under. Commander Lieutenant-Colonel Willcox, 3RD Hussars. Force: 3RD Hussars, 1 Battalion, IV Corps Cyclists, 1 Battery R.H.A., 2 D.R.'s of 42nd Div. (attached). Boundaries: Left on line, Ferrière-Cousolre-Beaumont-Walcourt. Right on line, Aymerie-Beaufort-Solrannes-Grandrieu-Renlies-Soumoy." The final bounds and objectives given were: "(4) Fourbechies-Erpion-Castillon. (5) The stream L'Eau D'Heure." The advanced brigades of the division had reached the Avesnes-Maubeuge road, east of Hautmont, which position was being consolidated in depth. The above force was ordered to assemble at Ferrière-la-Petite at noon.

Meanwhile "A" Squadron had rejoined Regimental Headquarters in Hautmont. "B" Squadron was at Damousies, with patrols on the river Thure, who had found the



enemy in the woods south and south-west of Consolre. The squadron was ordered to Ferrière-la-Petite. "C" Squadron at 5.30 a.m. was in the wood south-west of Colletet. Its advanced guard reported Colletet to be clear of the enemy, and the squadron moved up to the railway station. The advanced guard, moving on east, was held up at the cross-roads east of Colletet, and the squadron rode round south of the railway to the level crossing just north of Aibes, capturing two prisoners on the way. The Germans then left their positions at the farm on the cross-roads, and the advance east continued until stopped by enemy machine gun nests along the line of the Thure River, the squadron being also shelled from the north-east of Consolre. The squadron reported its touch with the enemy and remained in contact, losing a man and horse wounded and a horse killed. The squadron was ordered to remain out in contact.

In the meantime, before the pursuing force could concentrate at Ferrière-la-Petite the following telegram was received from the IV Corps: "3RD Hussars was transferred to command of VI Corps from 11 a.m. to-day 10th inst." The pursuing force was thereupon cancelled. This telegram was also, in its turn, cancelled, and the Regiment once again came under the command of the 4th Cavalry Brigade with the arrival of the following order (4th Cavalry Brigade, Order No. 42 of 10th November).

"1. The 4th Cavalry Brigade, Advance Guard of the Third Army, will continue the advance to-morrow. Touch with the enemy is to be maintained on the whole army front.

"2. The Brigade will move as under:

"3RD Hussars on the right.

"Oxford Hussars in the centre.

"The Carabiniers on the left.

"Northumberland Hussars in reserve with Brigade Headquarters.

"3. Boundaries. The Third Army boundaries are: Southern boundary.—Floursies (exclusive), Beaumont (exclusive), Beaumont-Marche-au-Pont road (exclusive).

"Northern boundary.—Bavai-Binche road (inclusive).

"Dividing lines between units.

"Between right regiment and centre regiment, the river Sambre.

"Between centre regiment and left regiment, Marieux, Vieux Reng, Peissant, Merbes, Ste. Marie Mont Ste. Geneviève (all inclusive to Oxford Hussars).

"4. Flank regiments will endeavour to get touch with 5th Cavalry Brigade on the right and 3rd Cavalry Brigade on the left.

"5. Regiments will move forward to-morrow so as to reach the line of the road from Beaumont to Givry by 12 noon. When this line is reached regiments will send patrols beyond it to keep touch with the enemy, main bodies of regiments remaining about this line.

"6. . . . .

"7. Starting-point (for the Brigade Headquarters) la Longueville (west of Maubeuge) at 8.45 a.m.

"8. Officer Commanding 4th Machine Gun Squadron will detail one section to report to Officer Commanding 3rd Hussars at Colletret at 10 a.m. to-morrow."

In accordance with these orders the right squadron of the Regiment was to be "C" and the left "A," with "B" following in support behind the centre with Headquarters.

The situation in the 3rd Hussars on the night of the 10th was: "C" Squadron north-east of Aibes with patrols in contact with the Germans on the line of the river Thure, north from the woods south of Consolre, "B" Squadron in Ferrière-la-Petite, and "A" Squadron with Regimental Headquarters in Hautmont.

On the 11th November, while swallowing a hurried breakfast, a message arrived from the 42nd Division to the effect that the German plenipotentiaries had signed the Allied terms for an armistice at 6 o'clock that morning, and that hostilities were to cease at 11 a.m., when all troops would stand fast in their positions. Very soon after a motor despatch rider rode up with similar information from the 4th Cavalry Brigade, and with instructions to carry on with the original orders, but to avoid hostilities after 11 o'clock.

Riding out of Hautmont, one pondered upon the extraordinary coincidence that it was in this border town that the

3RD Hussars arrived by train from Rouen on the 19th August 1914, and had ridden away to Belgium and war. Four long years and more, full of the vicissitudes of a bloody war—and again the Regiment, those who are left of it, marching out of that border town, and by the very same road. But to victory.

Headquarters joined “B” Squadron in Ferrière-la-Petite, while “C” and “A” Squadrons moved on towards the Beaumont-Givry road, eventually coming to a halt to the west of it, with German rear-guards in the Bois-de-Beaumont, the Bois-de-Jeumont, and in the woods west of Montignies. In the evening the Regiment was ordered to stand fast and not move east, and with a line of outposts the squadrons remained in the positions they had reached.

For the next five days there was no further advance. “C” Squadron moved back to Aibes, “A” to Ostergnies, and “B” and Headquarters remained in Ferrière-la-Petite.

At 11 a.m. on the 11th November the British line stood thus: “The right of the Fourth Army was east of the Franco-Belgian frontier, and thence northwards our troops had reached the general line Sivry-Erquelines-Boussu-Jurbise-Herghies-Ghislenghien-Lessines-Grammont” (Official Despatches).

The enemy’s retreat along the whole front of the British armies had been followed in the north by his evacuation of the Tournai salient.

In the south, where the French had pushed forward in conjunction with the British attack, the French line ran, at the same hour: “Along the south bank of the Meuse from Wadelincourt-Revin-Neuve Forge-Cul-des-Sarts-Riezes-Bailleux-Robechies-Range” (*VI Corps Intelligence Summary*, No. 965, of 12th November, 1918), where it joined hands with the right of the British.

“The strategic plan of the Allies had been realized with a completeness rarely seen in war” (Official Despatch).

The defeat of the Germans was complete. “We are under no illusions as to the extent of our defeat, and the degree of our want of power. We know that the power of

the German Army is broken," so said von Brockdorff-Rantzau at the Peace Conference in Versailles.

" And with such a victory, why did the Allies not pursue, even into Germany ? " asks the critic. Let the critic criticize. The soldier can but answer with the one word, " Food." Food for the huge armies of the Allies. Food for the starving provinces of Belgium and France. Food for the enormous numbers of the liberated prisoners of war. And a country behind the armies, as they move forward, practically destroyed in its communications by road and rail.

In contemplation of the great battles which led to the Armistice, led us read the Official Despatches. The Commander-in-Chief wrote :

" The annals of war hold record of no more wonderful recovery than that which, three months after the tremendous blows showered upon them on the Somme and on the Lys, saw the undefeated British armies advancing from victory to victory, driving their erstwhile triumphant enemy back to and far beyond the line from which he started, and finally forcing him to acknowledge unconditional defeat.

" The great series of victories won by the British forces between the 8th August and the 11th November is the outstanding feature of the events described in this Despatch. At Amiens and Bapaume, in the breaking of the Drocourt-Quéant and Hindenburg systems, before Le Cateau, and on the Selle, in Flanders and on the Sambre, the enemy was again and again brought to battle and defeated.

" In the decisive contests of this period the strongest and most vital parts of the enemy's front were attacked by the British, his lateral communications were cut, and his best divisions were fought to a standstill. On the different battle fronts 187,000 prisoners and 2,850 guns were captured by us, bringing the total of our prisoners for the present year to over 201,000. Immense numbers of machine guns and trench mortars were taken also, the figures of those actually counted exceeding 29,000 machine guns, and some 3,000 trench mortars. These results were achieved by fifty-nine fighting British divisions, which in the course of three months of battle engaged and defeated ninety-nine German divisions."

## THE BATTLES AND THEIR EFFECTS

8th August–11th August, 1918.  
Army 4th.

13 Infantry and 3 Cavalry divisions defeated 20 German divisions.

Captures—21,850 prisoners, 400 guns.

21st August–3rd September, 1918.  
Armies 3rd, 4th.

23 divisions (Corps Cavalry attached) defeated 35 German divisions.

Captures—34,250 prisoners, 270 guns.

26th August–3rd September, 1918.  
Army 1st.

7 divisions defeated 13 German divisions.

Captures—18,850 prisoners, 200 guns.

12th September–10th October, 1918.  
Armies 3rd, 4th, 1st.

12th and 18th September, 1918.  
15 divisions defeated 20 German divisions.

Captures—12,000 prisoners, 100 guns.

27th September–10th October, 1918.  
35 Infantry, 3 Cavalry and 2 American divisions defeated 45 German divisions.

Captures—48,600 prisoners, 630 guns.

28th–29th September, 1918.  
Army 2nd.

9 divisions defeated 5 German divisions.

Captures—4,800 prisoners, 100 guns.

The Battle of AMIENS disengaged Amiens, until then within range of German guns, and freed the Paris-Amiens railway. Our attack was then transferred to the north in

The Battles of The SOMME, 1918 (ALBERT, 1918, BAPAUME, 1918), which, turning the flank of the German positions on the Somme, compelled the enemy to withdraw to the east bank of the river. His new positions were then turned from the north by

The Battles of ARRAS, 1918 (SCARPE, 1918, DROCOURT-QUÉANT) by which the Drocourt-Quéant Line was broken and the enemy was forced to fall back on the outer defences of the Hindenburg Line. As the direct result of these battles,

The Lys salient was evacuated by the enemy from 15th Aug.–20th Sept., and we regained Lens, Merville, Bailleul, Kemmel Hill, and freed Hazebrouck and the important railways there. Then came

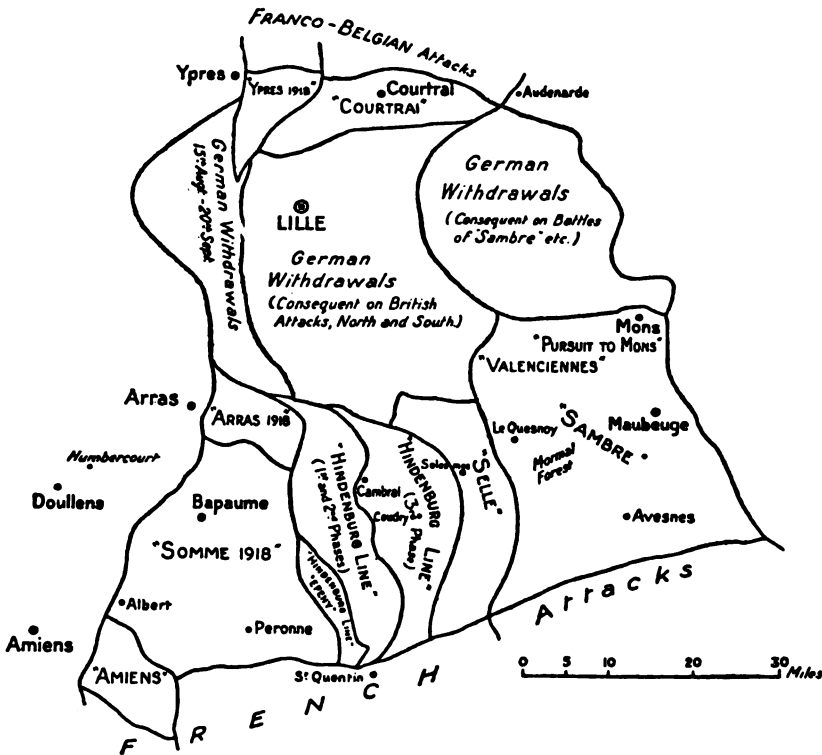
## The Battles of the HINDENBURG LINE.

While the Battle of HAVRINCOURT prepared the way, the Battle of ÉPÉHY broke through the outer Hindenburg defences, and brought us into position for attacking the main line.

Then followed ten days of victorious fighting which broke through the last and strongest of the enemy's fully prepared positions, opening the way to a war of movement and an advance on the German main lines of communication. These great assaults fell into three phases:

1. The Battle of the CANAL DU NORD on the left of our attack and the advance on Cambrai, followed immediately by
2. The Battle of the St. QUENTIN CANAL, which shattered the Hindenburg Line and turned the defences of St. Quentin.
3. The development of these successes by a general attack on the whole front which broke through the last of the German defences in the rear of the Hindenburg Line, forcing the enemy to evacuate Cambrai and St. Quentin, and to fall back on the line of the river Selle. These battles, striking at vital enemy communications, created a huge salient in his lines. Meanwhile farther north in

The Battle of YPRES, British and Belgians forced the enemy back from Ypres, and drove a salient into his line which endangered his positions on the Belgian coast. This success was extended by



BRITISH BATTLES DURING THE ADVANCE TO VICTORY.

14th-31st October, 1918.

Army 2nd.

7 British divisions defeated 6 German divisions.

Captures—6,000 prisoners, 200 guns.

The Battle of COURTRAI, which widened and deepened this salient, and resulted in the capture of Halluin, Menin, and Courtrai. This series of battles north and south had as their immediate result, in the south,

The evacuation of Leen, and the retreat of the enemy to the line of the Aisne and, in the centre,

The withdrawal to the Scheldt in which Lille and the great industrial district of France there were freed, and, in the north, The clearing of the Belgian Coast, whereby the enemy was deprived of his important submarine bases at Ostend, Zeebrugge, and Bruges. The enemy was now back on the line of the Selle and Scheldt rivers.

17th-25th October, 1918.

Armies 3rd, 4th, 1st.

26 divisions (Corps Cavalry attached) defeated 31 German divisions.

Captures—21,000 prisoners, 475 guns.

The Battle of the SELLE forced him from the line of that river, and drove still another salient into his defences. It was followed by the final blow—

1st November—11th November, 1918.  
 Armies 1st, 3rd, 4th.  
 20 Infantry, 3 Cavalry divisions,  
 defeated 32 German divisions.  
 Captures—19,000 prisoners, 460  
 guns.

The Battle of The SAMBRE to which the Battle of VALENCIENNES was a necessary preliminary, and the PURSUIT TO MONS the conclusion.

These operations struck at and broke the enemy's last important lateral communications, turned his positions on the Scheldt, and forced him to retreat rapidly from Courtrai. This

Victory completed the great strategic aim of the whole series of battles by dividing, in effect, the enemy's forces into two parts, one on each side of the great natural barrier of the Ardennes. The pursuit of the beaten enemy all along the Allied line was only stopped by the Armistice.<sup>1</sup>

#### CAPTURES BY BRITISH AND ALLIED ARMIES FROM 18TH JULY TO 11TH NOVEMBER, 1918

	Prisoners.	Guns.
Captures by British Armies . . .	188,700	2,840
"    "    French Armies . . .	139,000	1,880
"    "    American Armies . . .	43,300	1,421
"    "    Belgian Armies . . .	14,500	474

To return to the Regiment in Ferrière-la-Petite. Some British prisoners of war reached our outposts—poor devils, they were in bad plight, starving and in rags in this bitter weather, and the story they told of their treatment by the Huns made the men regret the Armistice.

On the 13th came the following warning order :

"The Second Army and the Fourth Army will march to the Rhine.

"The Second Army will be covered by the Cavalry Corps, less 2nd Cavalry Division.

"The Fourth Army will be covered by the 2nd Cavalry Division."

"Great Scot!" "To the Rhine!"

The sudden cessation of the infernal din of the artillery barrage, of the bursting shells, and of all the other noisy accompaniments of battle had made the days of the Armistice a bit unreal, but this settled it—"To the Rhine!" "It's all over, bar the shouting, and the — Boche is done in!" The next few days were spent by the squadrons in untiring efforts at cleaning and furbishing.

<sup>1</sup> The battles and their effects is taken from a map issued by General Headquarters after the Armistice.

•Binche

nes  
pont  
•Montignies  
•Beaumont  
Conscience  
•Sivry  
•Rance  
Robechies  
Chimay •Bailleux  
Riezes •Cul des Sarts  
Revin  
R. Meuse  
Miles

Meuse  
MÉZIÈRES





## PART IV

THE following Special Regimental Order was published on the 16th November :

“ The Allied Armies commence their march to Germany and the Rhine to-morrow.

“ On the British front the 2nd Cavalry Division will cover the front of the Fourth Army, which will be on the right, and the 1st and 3rd Cavalry Divisions will cover the front of the Second Army on the left.

“ Composition of the Fourth Army :

## 2ND CAVALRY DIVISION

*VI Corps*, on the left.  
62nd Division, on the right.  
3rd Division, on the left.  
Guards Division, in reserve.  
2nd Division, in reserve.

*IX Corps*, on the right.  
66th Division, on the right.  
32nd Division, on the left.  
1st Division, in reserve.  
6th Division, in reserve.

*IV Corps*, in reserve.  
5th Division.  
37th Division.  
42nd Division.  
New Zealand Division.

*Australian Corps*, in reserve.  
1st Australian Division.  
2nd Australian Division.  
4th Australian Division.  
5th Australian Division.

The Commanding Officer wishes to impress upon the officers, the non-commissioned officers, and the private Soldiers of the Regiment the great historical significance of this march. Before the war the Army of the German Empire was the most magnificent army the world has ever seen. For nearly four and a half years the Armies of Great Britain and France, helped by other Allied nations, have struggled with Germany and her Allied Armies, through the most gigantic and most bloody war that has ever been waged. During this long time the fortunes of war have swayed to either side, and at last, owing to the gallantry of our armies, the Germans are beaten. The German Army is not only beaten, but it is brought to its knees, and the Armies of Great Britain, France, and America are starting upon a March of Victory of the greatest historical importance, for it completes the final overthrow of a tyrant nation.

“ The portion of the march will be through tortured Belgium, and it is unnecessary to remind you of what the Belgians have suffered. The last part of the march will be

in Germany. We cannot forget the cruelties that defeated Germany has perpetrated, but the Regiment will play the game, and, while not being friendly with the inhabitants, will respect both persons and property, and by so doing will show the Germans that Englishmen in victory are as gallant GENTLEMEN as they were in times of stress.

“ Every officer, non-commissioned officer and private soldier, by his bearing, his discipline, and the turn-out of himself and his horse, will take pride in his Regiment, and impress upon the defeated Germans the gallantry and renown of the 3RD King's Own Hussars.”

Before starting on the march to Germany we will look at three Special Orders in the sequence of their receipt by the armies :

The first is a Special Order of the Day by Marshal Foch :

“ OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, AND SOLDIERS OF THE ALLIED ARMIES,—

“ After bringing the enemy's attack to a stand by your stubborn defence, you attacked him without respite for several months, with inexhaustible energy and unwavering faith.

“ You have won the greatest battle in history, and have saved the most sacred of all causes, the Liberty of the World.

“ Well may you be proud !

“ You have covered your standards with immortal glory, and the gratitude of posterity will ever be yours.

(Signed) F. FOCH,  
*Marshal of France, Commander-in-Chief of the Allied Armies.*”

The Special Order of the Day by Field-Marshal Sir Douglas Haig ran :

“ After more than four years of war, the enemy has been forced to ask for an armistice, and has accepted the terms dictated by the Allies. Hostilities have been suspended, and we may look forward to the early conclusion of a just and honourable peace.

“ At the moment of the definite triumph of those principles of liberty and right for which we entered the war,

I desire to thank all ranks of all services of the British armies under my command for the noble share they have taken in bringing about this great and glorious result.

"My thanks are due to the officers, non-commissioned officers, and men of the fighting forces (including the R.A.F.) who have served under my command in the prolonged struggle which has worn down and broken the strength of our opponents. Winter and summer, the fierce strain has never ceased, has never for a moment been relaxed. Long and trying periods of trench fighting, countless raids and minor operations have bridged the gaps between the great battles on the Somme, at Arras, Messines, Ypres, Cambrai, and finally the tremendous conflicts of the present year, now crowned by victory.

"In action you have been magnificent, equal to all changes of fortune, facing all dangers and surmounting all difficulties, your gallantry never failing, your courage most resolute, your devotion to duty unquestioning. Out of action, your time has been devoted, with a cheerfulness and energy undiminished by dangers and hardships undergone, to constant training and the effort to make yourselves still more efficient. On such occasions your consistent good conduct and soldier-like behaviour have won for the British Army the esteem and lasting good-will of the Allied peoples amongst whom you have lived.

"To the non-combatant and auxiliary services, including the many thousands of women who, by devoted work in so many capacities, have assisted in the victory of our arms, I desire to express my deep gratitude for the essential service you have rendered.

"No General has been given more loyal and whole-hearted support by all ranks of the Commanders, Staffs, Departments and services under him. No General ever yet commanded an Army of which he had greater reason to be proud.

"By your efforts and those of the gallant armies of our Allies, the nations of the world have been saved from a great danger. You have fought for the sanctity of your homes, and for the liberties of those who will come after you. Generations of free peoples, both of your own race and of all countries, will thank you for what you have done.

"We do not forget those who have fallen, and by their sacrifice have made our triumph possible. The memory

of those who fought in the early battles of the war, few, indeed in number, but unconquerable in spirit, and the thought of all the brave men who have since died, live in our hearts to-day.

“ Our task is not yet finished, though the end is in sight. Until such time as the terms of Armistice have been complied with and the conclusion of peace allows us to return once more to our homes, I rely confidently upon you to maintain on all occasions the same high standard of discipline, efficiency, and good conduct which has always distinguished the British Army.”

And, lastly, the message from His Majesty the King through the Secretary of State for War :

“ I desire to express at once, through you, to all ranks of the Army of the British Empire, Home, Dominion, Colonial, and Indian troops, my heartfelt pride and gratitude at the brilliant success which has crowned more than four years of effort and endurance. Germany, our most formidable enemy, who planned the war to gain the supremacy of the world, full of pride in her armed strength and of contempt for the small British Army of that day, has now been forced to acknowledge defeat. I rejoice that in this achievement the British Forces, now grown from small beginnings to the finest Army in our history, have borne so gallant and so distinguished a part. Soldiers of the British Army, in France and Belgium, the prowess of your arms, as great in retreat as in victory, has won the admiration alike of friend and foe, and has now, by a happy and historic fate, enabled you to conclude the campaign by capturing Mons, where your predecessors of 1914 shed the first British blood. Between that date and this you have traversed a long and weary road, defeat has more than once stared you in the face, your ranks have been thinned again and again by wounds, sickness, and death ; but your faith has never faltered, your courage has never failed, your hearts have never known defeat. With your Allied comrades you have won the day. Others of you have fought in more distant fields, in the mountains and plains of Italy, in the rugged Balkan ranges, under the burning sun of Palestine, Mesopotamia, and Africa, amid the snows of Russia and Siberia, and by the shores of the Dardanelles. Men of the British

race who have shared these successes felt in their veins the call of the blood and joined eagerly with the Mother Country in the fight against tyranny and wrong. Equally those of the ancient historic peoples of India and Africa, who have learnt to trust the flag of England, hastened to discharge their debt of loyalty to the Crown.

"I desire to thank every officer, soldier, and woman of our Army for services nobly rendered, for sacrifices cheerfully given, and I pray that God, who has been pleased to grant a victorious end to this great crusade for justice and right, will prosper and bless our efforts in the immediate future to secure for generations to come the hard-won blessings of freedom and peace."

On the 17th November the advance commenced to the German frontier, the three cavalry divisions crossing the line that had been reached on the 11th. The leading infantry divisions marched on the following day, and followed their covering cavalry at some ten miles' distance.

"The advance was carried out under active service conditions, cavalry leading and all military precautions being taken. Among all arms, the general bearing, smartness and march discipline of the troops were of a high order, reflecting credit on the Army and the nation. All traces of the desperate fighting and forced marches of the previous months had been removed, and men, horses, guns, and vehicles appeared as though turned out for parade" (Official Despatches).

The Regiment concentrated at Consolre, and, leaving that village at 9.30 a.m., marched via Beaumont, Bartençon, and Boussu to Fontenelle and Rognée, being followed by both A and B Echelons. The 4th Cavalry Brigade was marching on a front of the three regiments, the 3RD being on the right. Many released French, and some Italian, prisoners of war were met, while a couple of German deserters were found hiding and passed back. In every village the squadrons were received with the utmost enthusiasm. A very cold day and hard frost. Outposts at night.

After a comfortable night in excellent billets, the Regiment paraded at 9.30 a.m., and marched by Berzée, Thy-le-Château, Somzée, Tancienne, and Gerpinnes to Biesme, south-east of Charleroi. Biesme was reached at noon, and the squadrons went into billets in the town and neighbouring hamlets of Guy and Prée. During the march a reconnaissance of the roads in the area of the Regiment was carried out, and the reports of the officers sent back for the information of the divisions of the Fourth Army. Another frosty, cold day, and some snow. The friendly welcome as the Regiment rode along reminded one of the first days of the war. "Vive l'Angleterre!" "Tank you, Inglisman!" All the villages were decorated with flags, and at Somzée the Burgomaster, halting the Regiment, presented the Colonel with a bouquet of chrysanthemums and a long address. At Biesme a triumphal arch decorated with flags and flowers and the legend "Vive les Anglais" met the Regiment—also an enormous crowd which accompanied the squadrons to their billets. During the afternoon the Burgomaster of Biesme headed a procession of all the children of the town, who, after marshalling in the *place*, wended their way to the billet of Regimental Headquarters. The youngsters having been lined up, girls on one side and boys on the other, the Burgomaster, in stentorian tones, demanded the appearance of "Monsieur le Colonel." That officer diffidently emerging from the front door of his billet, a buzz of excitement, perhaps of admiration, went around the ranks of the children. The Burgomaster, calling for silence, advanced bareheaded and read an address. Then an interval of subdued excitement and another call for silence on the part of the Burgomaster, and a very small girl decked out in white and half the size of the bundle of chrysanthemums she carried, shyly stepped forth and delivered a written address. "Monsieur le Colonel," having suitably replied in a language which neither he nor his hearers understood, the quaint little ceremony ended. The following are the translations of the addresses :

That of the Burgomaster ran :

“ MONSIEUR LE COLONEL,—

“ In the name of the inhabitants of Biesme and of the French *évacués*, who have received here the most friendly welcome, I have the pleasure of offering you these flowers.

“ After four years of terrible anguish we salute you as our liberators. We will never forget your immense sacrifices and your wonderful Courage.

“ Vive les Alliés ! ”

The address of the little lady in white was somewhat longer and to the following effect :

“ EXCELLENCY,—

“ Monday, the 11th November 1916, saw the dawn of peace and recovered liberty rise over our country. Four years ago Germany declared war against Belgium, and inflicted a most unexpected, cruel, and deceitful attack on the Belgians, who, up to that time, had had confidence in its signature, in its promises, in the many protestations of its sovereign and of its ministers of State—because Belgium would not consent to betray her promises not to allow the passage of the troops of the barbarian. From that momentous hour all Belgians, from one end of our land to the other, were united in heart and soul to defend the honour and existence of their country.

“ Admiring our heroic efforts, our friends from over the sea took the defence of our Belgium into their hands, and declared themselves protectors of our land. Our English benefactors have once more proved to our enemies how much cause we had to put our trust in their protection, and they have acquired among us gratitude which nothing can extinguish.

“ Vive l'Angleterre ! Vivent les Alliés ! Vive la Belgique libérée ! ”

A troop of “ A ” Squadron was sent on to Mettet to receive over sixty German guns.

The advance was being carried out in three stages, each followed by a halt, to permit of the enemy withdrawing his troops from the area immediately in front of us. The end



of the first stage was the 18th, and it was followed by a halt of two days.

On the 21st the Regiment marched at 8.45 a.m., the Burgomaster and the whole of Biesme turning out to bid us good-bye. It was evident that the advanced guard of Britain had impressed them, and that they looked forward with evident pleasure to the advent of the main armies. The day's march took us by St. Gérard, Lesves, and Six Bas to the Meuse, which was crossed by the Regiment at Profondeville.

The Meuse! That most-discussed of rivers, amongst soldiers. As the squadrons wound their way down the steep, wooded hill-side to the river valley, how beautiful it all looked on this day of peace! What if it had been a day of battle! It was obvious, looking over that broad valley, and the steep wooded heights, that, had the enemy gained the Meuse, and turned at bay, the war might conceivably have carried on through another winter; but the three months' dogged British advance had so broken his armies that there was no alternative to the German other than an Armistice upon any terms—and so we rode whistling over the Meuse as we marched to the Rhine.

The night was spent by Headquarters and "A" Squadron in Lustin, "B" in Dave, and "C" in Nannine. One hundred and sixty German guns were taken over in St. Gérard and Six Bas, small guards being left over them to hand them over to the infantry divisions. The people, during the day's march, were practically hysterical with joy and excitement, while bands and deputations met us at St. Gérard and Lesves. The usual patrols and outposts at night. Hard frost.

Next day Headquarters and "A" Squadron marched by Courrière and Maibelle to billets in Schaltin and its château, while "B" and "C" Squadrons went by Wagnes to Gramp-tinne and Maibe. The usual demonstrations were met with everywhere *en route*. Headquarters were billeted in the chateau, the baronial hall of a Belgian baron whose lady was an Irish girl from Galway. In the evening the Baron

held a reception at the château, which the entire village of Schaltin attended, and the usual speeches and compliments were bandied about, the ceremony ending with the singing of "God save the King" and "La Brabançonne." At night the officers were invited to dine with the Baron and his wife. We were asked to produce our own rations, and, as there was not much else to eat, these were shared by our host and hostess. It transpired that the German rear-guard had only left Schaltin that morning—a Guard regiment apparently, and they evidently knew who was behind them, for one of the officers had informed the Baroness that he had once been in the English 3RD Hussars. On enquiring his name, however, it was remembered that he and another Prussian had dined with the 3RD one night in Shorncliffe in 1914.

On the 23rd the Regiment marched in three columns. On the left were Headquarters and "C" Squadron going by Havelange and Maffe to Chardeneux and Bonsin. In the centre was "B" Squadron, marching by Jeneffe and Maffe to Petite-Somme and Septon. On the right "A" Squadron marched by Hamois and Barvaux to Grand Han. The usual excitement throughout the march, church bells ringing, and a band in Havelange playing the British National Anthem and the Marseillaise. The Germans had only left the Regiment's billeting area during the morning.

A halt was ordered on the 24th, when the 4th Cavalry Brigade took up a line of outposts in front of the advancing VI Corps. In the Regimental line "C" Squadron was on the left about Tohogne, "B" in the centre in front of Bomal, and "A" Squadron on the right at Heyd. Regimental Headquarters moved to Barvaux, where a great reception awaited them. A triumphal arch at the entrance of the little town, where a representative gathering was awaiting the arrival of "les Anglais," and a band. Every street profusely decorated even to the planting of young trees. The Burgomaster, the band, and an enormous crowd leading the way down the main street, made almost unrideable by frost, to the *place*, where the compliments to which we

were now getting accustomed were translated into English by the schoolmistress. The Germans had marched away in the morning, but not before the decorations had commenced. There was a house—they called it the “maison Boche”—whose inmates had been too friendly with the Germans, and they were banished from the town, while its contents and furniture, surmounted with the effigy of a German soldier, were publicly burned during the afternoon. That morning, as the “A” Squadron billeting party rode into Heyd, they found a battalion of German infantry parading. The battalion formed up in the main street showed much interest in the officer and his party as they went on with their inspecting and chalking up the billets on doors and walls; but, as the German infantry marched away, they drew not even a casual glance from the English Hussars.

The advance now came to a halt to allow of the main bodies to close up before the German frontier was crossed. The Regiment remained in its positions until the 29th. “The first troops to complete the portion of our advance which lay through Belgium were patrols of the 2nd Cavalry Division, who arrived on the German frontier in the neighbourhood of Beho on the night of the 28th–29th November” (Official Despatch).

For the march into Germany a readjustment of the troops was necessary, as the sector allotted to the British Forces on the Rhine was too narrow to admit of the employment of more than one army. The Army selected was the Second, and the 1st Cavalry Division, both of whom now took over the whole of the British front of advance; while the Fourth Army and the other two divisions of the Cavalry Corps remained west of the frontier. On the 1st December the German frontier was crossed, and on the 12th December the British occupation of the Cologne bridgehead commenced.

Meanwhile, the 4th Cavalry Brigade was now ordered to the neighbourhood of Laroche, and on the 29th the Regiment, marching by Hotton and the valley of the river Ourthe to Laroche, went into billets about Beausaint. A very pretty country, with its wooded hills, but very in-

different billets. The troops of "A" Squadron were located in the hamlets of Gênes and Halleux, those of "B" in Halleux and Petit-Halleux, while "C" went into Ronchampay, Vecmont, and Longchamps, with Headquarters in Beausaint and its château.

The Regiment remained in Beausaint and its vicinity until the 17th December. The chief recollection one has of this time was the shortage of food. At one time rations were delayed so many days that the Regiment had to buy meat, bread, and other necessities for the squadrons—had to try and buy would be more correct, for there was not much to be got for love or money in the way of food. A serious problem was the matter of supplying the troops in Belgium.

"Until roads and railways could be got through to the areas which the enemy had not damaged the progress of our troops was necessarily limited by our ability to supply them. Only by the greatest effort on the part of the departments concerned with reconstruction and supply, and at the expense of a considerable hardship on the leading troops of the Fourth and Second Armies, and in particular the cavalry, could the programme of our advance be maintained. Nothing beyond bare necessities could be got forward to them. Even these were at times short in some units." (Official Despatch). "The fulfilment of our programme would have been impossible without the exercise of great patience and whole-hearted co-operation on the part of the troops" (Official Despatch).

There was not much to do during these days, and the time was passed in football, with an occasional hunt of the wild boar which lived in the wooded hills of the Ardennes. The ground did not admit of riding them, and we had to fall back upon the service rifles, and amongst the men there were always keen volunteers to act as beaters. It was a hunt organized by "B" Squadron, which got the record boar. Those billeted in the château will ever carry a happy remembrance of their kindly host, Monsieur Halleux. An elderly gentleman, he had had a bad time from the Germans.

In the early days, before even the declaration of war, German Uhlans had swept over the adjacent frontier to his village. For some reason a body of German cavalry had ordered the burning of Beausaint. The squire, as we would call him in England, remonstrated with the Commanding Officer. He saved his village, but, for the four days and nights that that party of Germans remained, he was kept a close prisoner in the cellars of his house, always with two Uhlans and two revolvers at his head, and his family upstairs frightened out of their wits.

On the 13th the French 3rd Cuirassier Brigade arrived at Beausaint, and doubled up with our men, while the Colonel in Command and his staff officers joined us in the château. It was quaint to see on either side of the dining-room door of this Belgian château the pennon of the 3RD Hussars, with its White Horse, and the brigade flag of the French cavalry. The two regiments of the brigade were the 3rd and 6th Cuirassiers. The 3RD Hussars' Headquarters played the French at football, the result a draw—one goal each.

The 4th Cavalry Brigade marched to the Bonal area on the 17th, the 3RD going back to Barvaux, with "C" Squadron in the ancient and decayed town of Durbuy, with its mediæval bridge.

On the 20th the brigade marched to an area south of Liège. The Regiment took up its quarters around the picturesque little town of Esneux on the Ourthe, Headquarters and the signal troop and "C" Squadron being in Esneux, "A" Squadron in Fontin, and "B" in Hony.

The Regiment remained at Esneux until the middle of March. The squadrons had excellent Christmas dinners, that of the officers taking place in a large room in the leading hotel, in which twelve of the principal inhabitants of the town had been shot by the Germans in 1914, so the local people said. Football and concerts relieved the monotony of the time, while demobilization set in, followed by the getting rid of horses past their work.

Early in March the Regiment was warned to join the

1st Cavalry Division in Germany. In the demobilization of the Army, the cavalry division to remain with the Army of the Rhine was to consist of those regiments which were not due for ordinary foreign service in the near future. All other regiments, or what remained of them after demobilization and transfers to those staying behind—"cadres" was the official term for them—were sent home to England.

On the 17th March the Regiment marched via Theux to Palleur with a strength of 22 officers, 191 other ranks, 273 horses, and 3 mules, a number of men and horses being transferred to regiments on the Rhine from cadre regiments marched with the 3RD. The next day's march took us by Hevremont and Goé, and across the German frontier to Eupen and billets about Eynatton. Very heavy snowstorms on these two days added to the difficulties of the large number of led horses. Marching by Kornelimunster and Eschweiler on the 19th, the Regiment billeted in and about Kirchberg, where it came under the orders of the 9th Cavalry Brigade of the 1st Cavalry Division. On the 20th the Regiment marched by Mersch, Spiel, Ameln, and Kalrath to quarters in Grottenherten, "A" Squadron being in Pütz and "B" and "C" together in Kirchherten. These quarters were taken over from the 8th Hussars, who had left for England on cadre strength. By the end of the month the Regiment had been made up to 358 other ranks and 564 horses, men and horses coming from the 8th, 18th, and Oxford Hussars. The Band, too, arrived from the Reserve Regiment at home.

The 2nd Cavalry Division was now dispersed, and its late Commander, Major-General Pitman, wrote the following letter to all ranks of the division :

"Now that the division is about to be broken up after a period of four and a half years since its formation, I wish to offer each one of you my heartfelt thanks for your services, both individually and collectively. I do so, not only in my own name, but in the names of the Divisional Commanders before me.

"While some of you enter into civil life, others remain at

the helm ; but, wherever you may go, I would like you to keep with you a remembrance of the great part which has been played by your division in the greatest of all wars. The division has come through four and a half years of war without a stain on its character or a single regrettable incident, and, as you will see by the account of its doings overleaf, it has come to the rescue of the Army at many a critical moment.

“ I hope that each one of you will always remember the good feeling which has kept us together during these years, and carry the same into home life in England. Let us do this in memory of those we have unfortunately been compelled to leave behind ; may their names never be forgotten.”

The Regiment also received the following letter from the Commanding Officer of the Oxford Hussars :

“ As the 4th Cavalry Brigade is now being broken up, and this Regiment will no longer have the honour of belonging to it, I wish, on behalf of the officers, non-commissioned officers and men of the Queen's Own Oxfordshire Hussars, to thank all ranks of the 3RD (King's Own) Hussars for their consistent kindness, good fellowship, and help throughout the whole period during which we have had the privilege of being associated with them. The fact of having been allowed to serve throughout these years in the 4th Cavalry Brigade with the 3RD (King's Own) Hussars and 6th Dragoon Guards will always be the most happy memory and the source of the greatest pride to the Queen's Own Oxfordshire Hussars, and any 3RD Hussar will always be welcomed by the Oxford Hussars.

“ On behalf of my Regiment, I do thank you all most sincerely for the way you welcomed us, supported us, and helped us on all occasions.”

The 1st Cavalry Division was now to be called The Cavalry Division of the Army of the Rhine, and Major-General Sir W. E. Peyton took over its command. The division consisted of three brigades :

The Hussar Brigade, Brigadier-General Pitman (late of 2nd Cavalry Division) :

3RD Hussars	.	.	.	" O " Battery R.H.A.
10th Hussars	.	.	.	9th Machine Gun Squadron.
15th Hussars	.	.	.	

The Lancer Brigade :

9th Lancers.

And R.H.A. and Machine

12th Lancers.

Gun Squadron.

17th Lancers.

The Dragoon Brigade :

6th Dragoon Guards.

ditto

1st Royal Dragoons.

6th Inniskilling Dragoons.

The Regiment being so short of men, a party of 120 men of the 4th Battalion of the Gordon Highlanders were attached for stable work. They arrived in kilts, but were served out with breeches and puttees. The highlanders had no experience of horses, but, by their desperate keenness and good-humour, they soon became useful men in the stables, and, many of them volunteering to learn to ride, they were put through a course of riding school. Among many amusing episodes in these lessons was the desperate occasion when a highlander was being bolted with—his instructor having retrieved him the kiltie plaintively said, " D'ye no ken, sir, that I am no accustomed to these wild beasts," and, after a bit of smoothing down he manfully added, " But I'll do the animal down ! " He got on well, that highlander, and when the time came for him to return to his battalion he, with others of his pals, asked to be allowed to transfer to the 3RD ; but it was not allowed.

Grottenherten was a deadly dull place, and a flat, uninteresting country, and it was with no feeling of regret that the Regiment marched from it on the 26th to Düren, where it took the place of the 9th Lancers, who moved to Cologne. The squadrons were quartered in the Hindenburg barracks, and the officers in billets in the town, the squadron messes being in palatial mansions taken over from some of the evidently very rich German manufacturers. The remainder of the Hussar Brigade were quartered about Kerpen, a few miles to the north.



Soon after the arrival of the Regiment in Düren, there came a rumour that, at a meeting held in unoccupied Germany, the proposal had been accepted to kill on one night all British and French officers in occupied territory.

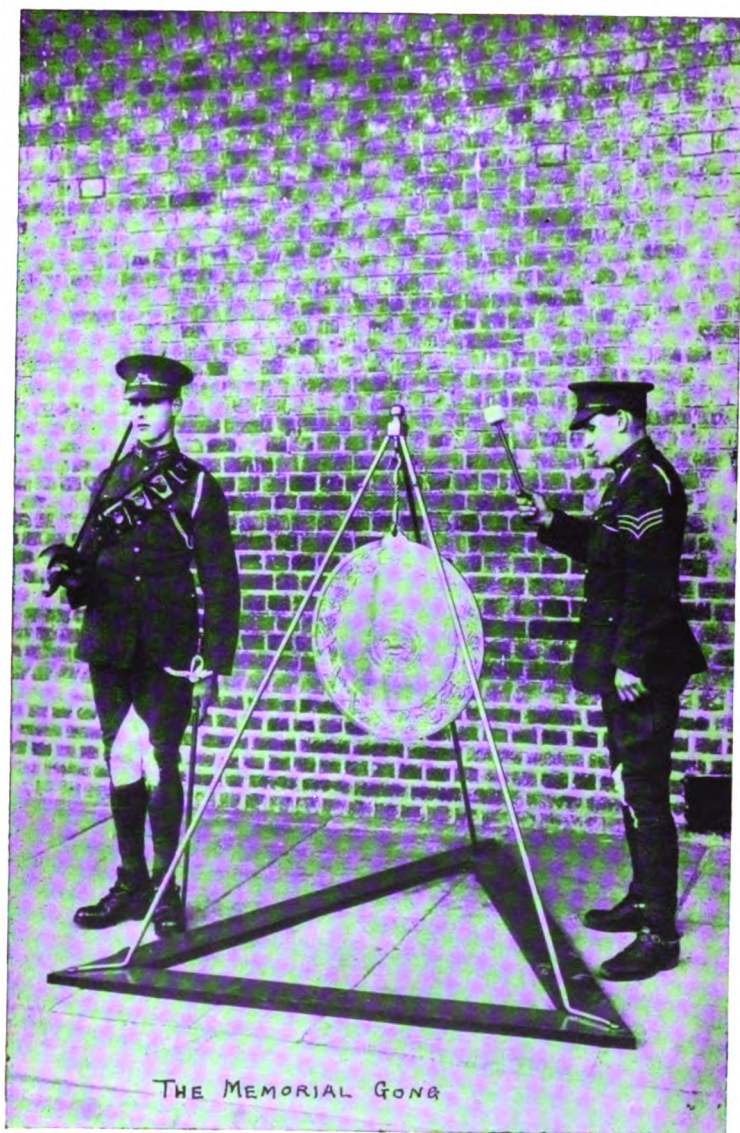
Towards the end of May all leave home was stopped, and the Rhine Army was prepared for the possibility of a forward move to enforce the signing of peace by the Germans. However, to repeat von Brockdorff-Rantzau at Versailles, after the Allied peace terms had been presented to him : "We are under no illusions as to the extent of our defeat and the degree of our want of power. . . . We know that the power of the German Army is broken." Peace was signed.

On the 7th July a party from the Regiment consisting of Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O., Regimental Sergeant-Major H. Smith, D.C.M., Saddler Corporal W. Townsend, Corporal M. Dady, M.M., and Lance-Corporal H. Peers, M.M., together with four batmen and fifteen horses, proceeded to Cologne to join the detachment of the Cavalry Division, which went with a detachment of the Army of the Rhine to represent the British Army in the procession of the Allied Armies in Paris on the 14th July, in celebration of the Peace. Major Du Pre was in command of the British Cavalry Detachment. The party returned on the 17th July.

At last, on the 13th August, the Regiment received orders to prepare to return to England early in September. All leave home was stopped "pending return home"—but no one objected !

Meanwhile, the summer was "put in," to use a soldier expression, with what training that was possible : cricket, polo, trout-fishing, racing in Cologne ; a cavalry division horse show and "week," in the events of which the 3RD did well ; a IV Corps torch-light tattoo, for which the Regiment found an excellent musical ride, and the Band ; and a Rhine Army horse show, in which the 3RD again did well, and, amongst other successes, won the first prize for four-horsed limbered wagons.

During September the Regiment returned to England.



WAR MEMORIAL GONG OF THE 3RD THE KING'S OWN HUSSARS.  
The Memorial, which is a gong of about 2½ feet in diameter, is to stand outside the Guard Room, and will accompany the Regiment wherever it goes. The hours will be sounded upon it by the Guard.



The first Horse Party left Düren on the 17th. It consisted of Captain Bagnell, 2 officers, 186 other ranks, and 334 horses. The Personnel Party left Düren on the 20th, and consisted of Major Du Pre and 4 officers and 89 other ranks, 7 dogs, and all the regimental baggage. The second Horse Party left Düren on the 25th, and consisted of Captain Clarke and one other officer, 72 other ranks, and 128 horses.

The Regiment was destined for Longmoor Camp near Aldershot, which the Personnel Party reached on the 24th, having journeyed to Calais by train and crossed the Channel on board the s.s. *Biarritz* to Dover.

The 1st Horse Party had a day and a half in the train to Dunkerque, but it was not until the 24th that the Party embarked on board the s.s. *Hunslett*, a captured German vessel, and, crossing to Tilbury, disembarked at midday on the 25th. From there they were railed to Swaythling, where they were kept in the Remount Depot until they marched to Longmoor, arriving on the 5th October.

The 2nd Horse Party detrained at Dunkerque on the 27th September, and remained there until the 8th October, when they also embarked in the s.s. *Hunslett*. Disembarking at Southampton, the next day, the party rode to Swaythling Remount Depot, where they remained for some days, and eventually reached Longmoor by march route on the 28th October.

Demobilization went on, and early in November the Regiment marched to Aldershot, and took up its quarters in the West Cavalry Barracks (Willems Barracks), where what was left of it went into the 1st Cavalry Brigade, and began the process of building up a new Regiment of 3RD Hussars.

#### TRUMPET.



THE REGIMENTAL CALL.

## WAR MEMORIAL GONG

When asked to consider the form that the 3RD Hussars' War Memorial should take, the men of the Regiment suggested a guard-room gong, which would accompany the Regiment on all its travels.

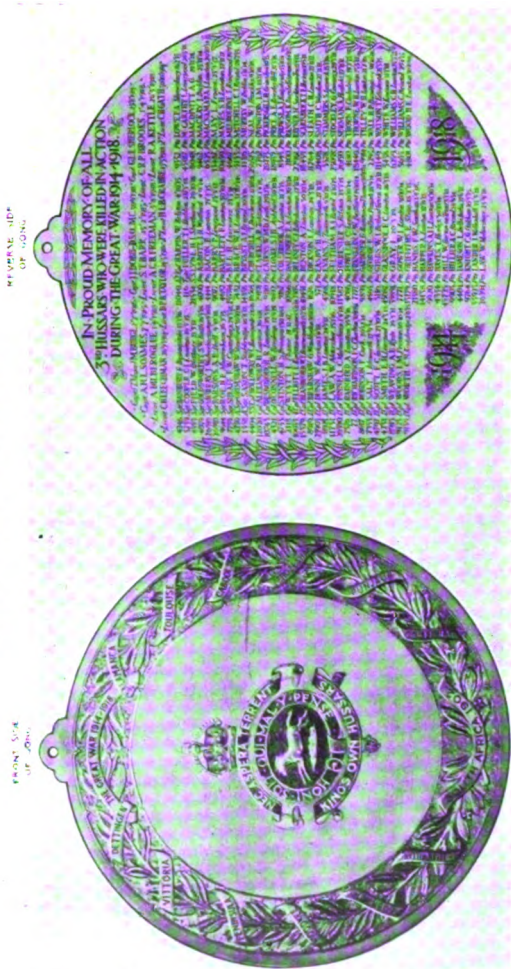
The gong is 2 feet 6 inches in diameter, and hangs on a steel tripod with a triangular wooden base. On one side is the crest of the Regiment and the battle honours, upon the other side are the names of the thirteen officers and one hundred and six non-commissioned officers and men who fell. Above their names are the words, "In proud memory of all 3RD Hussars who were killed in action during the Great War, 1914-18."

The gong was consecrated at a Memorial Service in All Saints' Church, Aldershot, and has since followed the fortunes of the Regiment to the Army of Occupation in Turkey and to Egypt.

# WAR MEMORIAL GONG

OF THE

3RD, THE KING'S OWN HUSSARS



THE MEMORIAL WHEN IN A GONG OF 40 IN DIAMETER IS TO STAND  
THREE FEET HIGH AND WILL ACCOMPANY THE REGIMENT WHEREVER IT  
GOES. THE HORN WILL BE SOUNDED UPON IT BY THE HORN

THE MEMORIAL GONG.



## APPENDIX A

### OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS, AND MEN WHO WERE KILLED IN ACTION AND WHO DIED OF WOUNDS

Rank and Name.	Date of Death.	Remarks.
Capt. G. L. E. Sherlock . .	25/8/14	Attached West African Frontier Force. Killed in the Cameroons
2nd Lieut. C. H. Gath . .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
Lieut. C. B. Leechman . .	26/9/14	Reported "Missing" 23/9/14. Death accepted 26/9/14.
Lieut. S. T. Barr . . .	23/2/15	Killed in Action. Attached 20th Hussars
Capt. A. H. L. Soames, M.C. .	7/7/15	Accidentally killed in England, whilst practising bomb-throwing on aerial flight. Attached Royal Flying Corps
Capt. M. Burge (Temp. Major)	2/7/16	Killed in Action. With Northumberland Fusiliers
Lieut. D. P. B. Taylor, M.C. .	14/3/16	Missing and death accepted 14/3/16. R.F.C.
Lieut. A. Dilberoglue . .	1/4/18	Killed in Action
Lieut. C. R. P. Brooks . .	1/4/18	Killed in Action. 4th Machine Gun Sqdn.
Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman . .	5/8/18	Killed in Action. With Royal Scots Fusiliers
Capt. J. J. Dobie, D.S.O., M.C.	30/9/18	Killed in Action
Lieut. R. A. Kettle . . .	26/3/18	Missing and death accepted 26/3/18
2nd Lieut. H. L. B. Crabbe . .	15/5/18	Killed in Action. R.F.C.

No.	Rank and Name.	Date of Death.	Remarks.
4321	Corp. W. O'Connell .	17/9/14	Killed in Action
4565	Bandsman E. George	18/9/14	Killed in Action
9903	Private A. Hillier .	18/9/14	Killed in Action
4667	Private F. Melbourne	19/9/14	Died of Wounds
4086	Private C. Fowler .	20/10/14	Killed in Action
7777	Private C. Franklin	19/10/14	Killed in Action



## KILLED IN ACTION

No.	Rank and Name.	Date of Death.	Remarks.
4797	L.Corp. F. Scott .	25/10/14	Died of Wounds
9125	L.Corp. J. Woods .	30/10/14	Died of Wounds
9462	Private J. Mackay .	23/11/14	Died of Wounds
10035	A/Corp. E. Elliott .	5/11/14	Died of Wounds
8343	Private A. Prowse .	13/11/14	Died of Wounds
4354	Private T. Hayes .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
7771	Private W. Gower .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
4682	Private F. Bartlett .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
8617	L.Corp. F. Robinson	20/12/14	Died of Wounds in England
9910	Private W. Cairns .	29/12/14	Died of Wounds in England
9352	Private F. Lowe .	16/2/15	Killed in Action
13179	Private E. Griffiths	18/2/15	Killed in Action
9167	Private A. Colebrook	21/2/15	Died of Wounds
5153	Private C. Mitchell .	26/2/15	Died of Wounds
4750	L.Sergt. W. Grimshaw	30/10/14	Killed in Action
10451	Private A. Denton .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
2295	Private H. Wall .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
4801	Private H. Wood .	30/10/14	Killed in Action
10566	Private E. Dallenger	20/11/14	Reported blown to pieces in Ypres and accepted 20/11/14
3655	Private C. Williams .	29/4/15	Died of Wounds
9764	Private C. Knight .	10/5/15	Died of Wounds in England
3739	Sergt. C. Cooper .	15/5/15	Killed in Action
9644	Sergt. H. Roe .	15/5/15	Killed in Action
4444	Private E. Bacon .	21/5/15	Killed in Action
11149	Private T. Watson .	21/5/15	Died of Wounds
11387	Private S. Forrester .	25/5/15	Killed in Action
8915	L.Corp. A. Weaving	29/5/15	Killed in Action
9139	Private C. Worth .	2/6/15	Died of Wounds
10918	Private A. Feltham	2/10/15	Killed in Action
11040	Private W. Harpin .	2/10/15	Killed in Action
26773	Private H. Pickersgill	4/10/15	Killed in Action
9895	Private G. Gardiner .	30/10/14	Missing and death accepted
9892	Private S. Cloake .	30/10/14	Missing and death accepted
77	L.Corp. F. Richardson	30/10/14	Missing and death accepted
8919	L.Corp. G. Bradshaw	30/10/14	Missing and death accepted
7482	Private W. Brace .	31/10/14	Missing and death accepted
9920	Private A. Hawkins .	31/10/14	Missing and death accepted
4246	Sergt. F. Banbury .	13/1/16	Killed in Action
11731	Private A. Law .	13/1/16	Killed in Action
5378	Private S. Stammers	13/1/16	Killed in Action
6523	Private J. McNamara	20/10/14	Missing and death accepted
4090	Private J. Abbott .	4/9/14	Missing and death accepted
7353	L.Corp. J. Salt .	17/9/14	Missing and death accepted
4733	Corp. H. Stinton .	30/10/14	Missing and death accepted
9914	Private W. Tilley .	21/7/16	Died of Wounds
26391	Private W. Law .	25/9/16	Killed in Action
7576	L.Corp. A. Rainbird	29/9/16	Died of Wounds
4404	S.S.Corp. W. Holloway	2/10/16	Died of Wounds
18440	Private W. Thorn .	23/5/17	Killed in Action
15487	Private L. May .	23/5/17	Killed in Action
9077	Private P. Barry .	23/5/17	Killed in Action
6259	Private C. Williams .	23/5/17	Killed in Action
8925	L.Corp. I. James .	24/5/17	Died of Wounds

# KILLED IN ACTION

345

No.	Rank and Name.	Date of Death.	Remarks.
4393	Sergt. W. Field .	21/5/17	Killed in Action. Attached 17th Bde. R.F.A.
4401	Private L. Jameson	27/6/17	Killed in Action
7503	Private C. Delaney .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
571	Private H. Easby .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
3116	Private W. Gibbs .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
11764	Private C. Sleath .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
21408	Private C. Smith .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
26150	Private A. Surman .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
2118	Corp. J. Wyatt .	27/11/17	Killed in Action
45725	Private W. Hill .	5/1/18	Killed in Action
5438	Private W. White .	31/1/18	Died of Wounds
35923	Private J. Lander .	23/3/18	Killed in Action
7759	Sergt. F. Sheaff .	24/3/18	Killed in Action
4039	Sergt. S. Goldsworthy	26/3/18	Killed in Action
18939	Private A. Price .	27/3/18	Died of Wounds
23058	Private G. Stockley .	29/3/18	Died of Wounds
25905	L.Corp. W. Dunn .	1/4/18	Killed in Action
116	Tptr. T. Fuller .	26/3/18	Killed in Action
45087	Private F. Glasspool	26/3/18	Killed in Action
45017	Private L. McCarthy	26/3/18	Killed in Action
26390	L.Corp. C. Pinnell .	1/4/18	Killed in Action
2100	Private K. Ranson .	4/4/18	Died of Wounds
255394	Private H. Bee .	25/3/18	Died of Wounds
14138	Private A. Harper .	27/11/17	Missing and death accepted
15379	L.Corp. W. Blandford	13/7/18	Died
1558	A/Sergt. T. Saxon .	10/8/18	Died of Wounds
14858	Private A. Bryant .	10/8/18	Killed in Action
10459	Private S. Mayes .	27/11/17	Missing and death accepted
4368	Private J. Evans .	9/10/18	Killed in Action
26919	Sergt. J. Murray .	9/10/18	Killed in Action
256523	Private W. Neal .	9/10/18	Killed in Action
26910	Sergt. A. Parsons .	9/10/18	Killed in Action
7726	Private J. Ovington	8/11/18	Died
8048	Private A. Macdivitt	19/11/18	Died
39891	Private J. Gray .	20/3/19	Died

*Nec aspera terrent.*

(The Motto of the Regiment.)

# APPENDIX B

## OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND MEN WHO WERE WOUNDED

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
310.	Private J. Robinson . . .	25/8/14
8734.	Private M. Standing . . .	27/8/14
1967.	Private H. Tugwell . . .	28/8/14
4270.	Tpтр. J. Newman . . .	31/8/14
9092.	Private M. Dunlevy . . .	31/8/14
4810.	Tpтр. P. Attwood . . .	31/8/14
2446.	Private W. Moss . . .	31/8/14
4229.	Private H. Bell . . .	31/8/14
9121.	Private H. Pollard . . .	1/9/14
4616.	Private E. Mullins . . .	2/9/14
8593.	Private C. Elgar . . .	12/9/14
7492.	Private A. Longhurst . . .	12/9/14
4415.	Sqdn. Sergt.-Major H. Smith . . .	12/9/14
4303.	Private W. Jones . . .	14/9/14
8937.	L.Corp. A. Beenor . . .	14/9/14
	Lieut. J. C. Petherick . . .	17/9/14
8073.	Corp. R. Brown . . .	17/9/14
9073.	Private S. Bromley . . .	17/9/14
10489.	Private A. Poole . . .	17/9/14
4092.	Private C. Ridgway . . .	18/9/14
10161.	Private W. Allen . . .	18/9/14
182.	Bandsman C. Anderson . . .	{ 18/9/14 20/10/14
4567.	Kettle-drummer E. Brooks . . .	18/9/14
8935.	Private T. Seage . . .	18/9/14
9468.	Private H. Sales . . .	19/9/14
8740.	Private A. Godfrey . . .	23/9/14
5132.	L.Corp. J. Stayte . . .	13/10/14
2324.	Bandsman H. Webb . . .	17/10/14
855.	Private M. Nicholls . . .	18/10/14
6381.	Private G. Sexton . . .	18/10/14
2609.	Sergt. S. Mainwaring . . .	19/10/14

# WOUNDED

347

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
9471.	Private O. Stride . . . .	19/10/14
4295.	Private W. Short . . . .	19/10/14
8041.	Private T. Johnson . . . .	19/10/14
4216.	Corp. E. Walsh . . . .	19/10/14
Major H. Combe . . . .		20/10/14
Lieut. G. D. Hill . . . .		20/10/14
Lieut. N. W. Eastwood . . . .		20/10/14
Lieut. G. Baynes . . . .		20/10/14
2nd Lieut. C. L. Huggins . . . .		20/10/14
4045.	L.Corp. J. Johnson . . . .	20/10/14
6532.	L.Corp. C. Rodway . . . .	20/10/14
6347.	Private J. Gatland . . . .	20/10/14
6674.	Private C. Bushell . . . .	20/10/14
8323.	Private H. Sweet . . . .	20/10/14
7412.	L.Corp. L. Wiles . . . .	20/10/14
3871.	L.Corp. C. Withey . . . .	20/10/14
9125.	Private W. Sluman . . . .	20/10/14
2598.	Bandsman S. Crossman . . . .	20/10/14
8033.	Private F. Burton . . . .	20/10/14
2646.	Sqdn. Sergt. H. Hayes . . . .	20/10/14
2305.	Private J. Bond . . . .	20/10/14
5565.	Private A. Benn . . . .	20/10/14
8706.	Private H. Plank . . . .	20/10/14
6625.	Private F. Beill . . . .	25/10/14
8349.	L.Corp. C. Ebdon . . . .	26/10/14
2089.	Private E. Johnson . . . .	28/10/14
9917.	L.Corp. C. Luker . . . .	28/10/14
8730.	Private C. Short . . . .	28/10/14
Major H. W. Clinch . . . .		30/10/14
Capt. E. G. K. Cross . . . .		{ 30/10/14 17/2/15
Capt. J. J. Dobie . . . .		30/10/14
2nd Lieut. Hon. D. S. P. Howard . . . .		30/10/14
2nd Lieut. H. H. Eliot . . . .		30/10/14
2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton . . . .		30/10/14
6655.	Private W. Carter . . . .	30/10/14
9668.	Private E. Raybould . . . .	30/10/14
9128.	L.Corp. A. Burgess . . . .	30/10/14
2112.	Private D. Warren . . . .	30/10/14
4790.	Sergt. W. Hooker . . . .	30/10/14

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
10598.	Private T. Emptage . . .	30/10/14
9569.	Sergt. T. Crawford . . .	30/10/14
4039.	Corp. S. Goldsworthy . . .	30/10/14
9075.	Private H. Williams . . .	30/10/14
9074.	Private C. Packman . . .	30/10/14
6422.	Private J. Hill . . .	30/10/14
4742.	Private A. Collins . . .	30/10/14
10220.	Private W. Dunsford . . .	30/10/14
5470.	Bandsman J. Curry . . .	30/10/14
4711.	Staff-Sergt. J. Maltby . . .	30/10/14
3999.	Sergt. N. Smith . . .	30/10/14
4134.	Private W. Upton . . .	30/10/14
1650.	Corp. J. Edwards . . .	30/10/14
4537.	Sergt. F. Watchorn . . .	30/10/14
8238.	L.Corp. W. Wilkinson . . .	30/10/14
4449.	Private W. Dunn . . .	30/10/14
9097.	Private E. Quennell . . .	30/10/14
4180.	Private F. Thorne . . .	30/10/14
294.	Private T. Slade . . .	30/10/14
7492.	Private A. Longhurst . . .	30/10/14
4712.	Corp. G. Peace . . .	31/10/14
4284.	Private T. Frere . . .	6/11/14
2122.	Private J. McConnell . . .	7/11/14
4271.	L.Corp. H. McKinna . . .	8/11/14
9770.	L.Corp. W. O'Mahony . . .	9/11/14
2090.	Sergt. D. Keenan . . .	11/11/14
8944.	Private J. Adams . . .	20/11/14
7929.	Private R. Rider . . .	20/11/14
3407.	L.Corp. C. Bennett . . .	20/11/14
2443.	Private F. Reeves . . .	22/11/14
6587.	Private A. Bettis . . .	22/11/14
7772.	Private W. Beaver . . .	14/2/15
2085.	Private A. Hurst . . .	14/2/15
4040.	Private E. Dobie . . .	14/2/15
2299.	Private E. Beasley . . .	18/2/15
8742.	Private C. Gregory . . .	21/2/15
6315.	Private W. Male . . .	16/3/15
	Capt. J. J. Dobie . . .	27/4/15
8614.	L.Corp. J. Slade . . .	27/4/15
8332.	Private R. Worley . . .	27/4/15

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
8724.	Private J. Caldwell . . . .	28/4/15
8035.	Private W. Capell . . . .	28/4/15
6374.	Private J. Simms . . . .	28/4/15
5182.	Private J. Costello . . . .	28/4/15
9769.	Private A. Mackay . . . .	30/4/15
4401.	Private L. Jamieson . . . .	1/5/15
4147.	Private F. Colwill . . . .	1/5/15
9769.	Private A. Goldie . . . .	2/5/15
8923.	Private H. Smith . . . .	2/5/15
10174.	Private S. Church . . . .	2/5/15
6486.	Private H. Pratt . . . .	2/5/15
1342.	Private F. Pearsall . . . .	3/5/15
4419.	Private W. Garton . . . .	3/5/15
6289.	Private A. Jennings . . . .	13/5/15
2442.	Private A. Reeves . . . .	18/5/15
6463.	Private E. Martin . . . .	20/5/15
9468.	Private H. Sales . . . .	25/5/15
10497.	Private E. Roberts . . . .	25/5/15
2nd Lieut. H. J. Turner	. . . .	26/5/15
56.	L.Corp. G. Blakeman . . . .	26/5/15
3244.	Sergt. W. Taylor . . . .	27/5/15
9889.	Private J. Nailor . . . .	11/7/15
18840.	Private W. Thorn . . . .	4/10/15
14082.	Private B. Huntley . . . .	4/10/15
9645.	Private C. Francis . . . .	4/10/15
Lieut. L. F. H. Whiston .	. . . .	27/10/15
Lieut. W. Mc. Cliff .	. . . .	18/12/15
5938.	Corp. A. Dee . . . .	7/1/16
3912.	L.Corp. F. Raw . . . .	7/1/16
10218.	Private G. Dicks . . . .	7/1/16
10496.	Private W. Bates . . . .	7/1/16
26324.	Sergt. P. Stafford . . . .	7/1/16
11218.	Private N. Smith . . . .	7/1/16
9067.	Private C. Adams . . . .	12/1/16
Capt. R. A. Bagnell .	. . . .	13/1/16
4514.	Corp. G. Shephard . . . .	13/1/16
10603.	Private G. Owen . . . .	13/1/16
2115.	Private T. Wells . . . .	13/1/16
14035.	Private E. Bannister . . . .	28/1/16
11727.	Private H. Morley . . . .	6/2/16

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
2nd Lieut. C. Grantham-Hill . . . .		8/2/16
15848. Corp. R. Cuff . . . .		8/2/16
19922. Private F. Stupples . . . .		11/2/16
3356. Private W. Dowland . . . .		11/2/16
14093. Private C. Stone . . . .		11/2/16
18851. Corp. W. Marshall . . . .		14/2/16
3704. Sdr. Corp. P. Byron . . . .		10/5/16
865. A/Qr.-Mr.-Sergt. H. Green . . . .		13/7/16
11039. Private F. Bolus . . . .		30/7/16
29383. Private R. Damerell . . . .		6/8/16
21853. Private F. Angell . . . .		9/8/16
11051. Private V. Jennings . . . .		25/9/16
18718. Private J. Neath . . . .		25/9/16
9475. Private J. Pether . . . .		25/9/16
8908. Private E. Ward . . . .		25/9/16
11027. Private H. Forknall . . . .		3/10/16
26947. Private T. Linsky . . . .		3/10/16
23149. Private F. Oldham . . . .		3/10/16
5928. Corp. F. Powell . . . .		12/10/16
10491. Private J. Burridge . . . .		12/10/16
21719. Private F. Toomer . . . .		12/10/16
8909. Private C. Miles . . . .		12/10/16
6294. Private W. Whitman . . . .		16/1/17
29572. Private F. Barley . . . .		1/3/17
6186. Private H. Williams . . . .		11/4/17
Captain J. J. Dobie . . . .		18/5/17
15329. Private P. Peers . . . .		19/5/17
4676. Private W. Turner . . . .		23/5/17
4586. Private W. Davies . . . .		17/6/17
8742. Private C. Gregory . . . .		20/6/17
10477. Private J. Clapinson . . . .		22/6/17
29533. Private W. Murphy . . . .		22/6/17
21714. Private R. Monckton . . . .		22/6/17
29649. Private E. Pennie . . . .		22/6/17
29538. Private H. Kaye . . . .		22/6/17
20865. Private J. Norris . . . .		22/6/17
8924. Private S. Prior . . . .		22/6/17
4456. Private A. Doughty . . . .		22/6/17
10192. Private D. Purkiss . . . .		25/6/17
8632. Corp. J. Emes . . . .		26/6/17

# WOUNDED

351

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
2nd Lieut. G. Lancefield	.	27/6/17
8336. Private J. Beckingham	.	27/6/17
7575. Private A. Ray	.	27/6/17
11236. Private K. Hargreaves	.	27/6/17
7046. Private G. Sanders	.	28/6/17
2nd Lieut. H. J. Levander	.	27/11/17
2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie	.	27/11/17
8903. Private R. Annalls	.	27/11/17
45013. Sqdn. Sergt.-Major F. Austin	.	27/11/17
8938. Private R. Banks	.	27/11/17
14035. Private E. Bannister	.	27/11/17
10906. Private R. Berry	.	27/11/17
8600. Private A. Blake	.	27/11/17
8033. Private F. Burton	.	27/11/17
8710. Private D. Cairns	.	27/11/17
9689. Corp. A. Charles	.	27/11/17
9710. Private G. Clarke	.	27/11/17
10468. Private H. Fenner	.	27/11/17
45018. Sergt. G. Gill	.	27/11/17
11236. Private K. Hargreaves	.	27/11/17
14873. Private A. Hill	.	27/11/17
2085. Private A. Hurst	.	27/11/17
4561. Private S. Jameson	.	27/11/17
45112. Private W. Leslie	.	27/11/17
11016. Private J. Low	.	27/11/17
29322. Private C. Montague	.	27/11/17
23872. Private C. Pearce	.	27/11/17
10179. Private A. Proops	.	27/11/17
8024. Private A. Reeve	.	27/11/17
29763. Private C. Sharp	.	27/11/17
8614. Private J. Slade	.	27/11/17
8323. L.Corp. H. Sweet	.	27/11/17
10469. Private E. Timms	.	27/11/17
7376. Private W. Burr ridge	.	27/11/17
45723. Private A. Tarrant	.	28/11/17
11237. Private V. Smith	.	29/11/17
9893. Corp. S. Adams	.	5/12/17
45068. L.Corp. H. Hampton	.	5/12/17
10219. Private W. Stoddart	.	5/12/17
29595. Private A. Drew	.	6/1/18



No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
16856.	Private H. Poore . . . .	6/1/18
256055.	Private L. Smith . . . .	6/1/18
21305.	Private D. O'Donoghue . . . .	11/1/18
8935.	Private T. Seage . . . .	13/1/18
Lieut. H. G. Mitchell . . . .		17/1/18
45062.	Corp. G. Ruberti . . . .	17/1/18
10579.	L.Corp. J. Connolly . . . .	21/3/18
10655.	Private M. Dady . . . .	22/3/18
23340.	L.Corp. Ham . . . .	22/3/18
14815.	Private S. Jones . . . .	22/3/18
45099.	Private W. McCune . . . .	22/3/18
45136.	Private P. McDonnell . . . .	22/3/18
9738.	Private P. Nevin . . . .	22/3/18
568.	Private F. Parsons . . . .	22/3/18
1642.	Private D. Partridge . . . .	22/3/18
2161.	Private E. Pickstone . . . .	22/3/18
4087.	Private H. Ridgway . . . .	22/3/18
29763.	Private C. Sharpe . . . .	22/3/18
521.	L.Corp. C. Shattock . . . .	22/3/18
45145.	Private W. Spong . . . .	22/3/18
8734.	Private M. Standing . . . .	22/3/18
14023.	Private N. Taylor . . . .	22/3/18
1757.	Private G. Trott . . . .	22/3/18
1967.	Private H. Tugwell . . . .	22/3/18
45066.	L.Corp. W. Turner . . . .	22/3/18
11518.	L.Corp. H. Wood . . . .	22/3/18
45124.	Private S. Beagley . . . .	23/3/18
21431.	Private J. Butcher . . . .	23/3/18
46079.	Private W. Dunbobbin . . . .	23/3/18
7518.	Private E. Grainger . . . .	23/3/18
45091.	Private J. Kerby . . . .	23/3/18
10494.	Private H. Mills . . . .	23/3/18
21714.	Private R. Monckton . . . .	23/3/18
14817.	Private W. Morgan . . . .	23/3/18
45059.	Private T. Mullims . . . .	23/3/18
11780.	Private G. Payne . . . .	23/3/18
3511.	Sergt. H. Phillips . . . .	23/3/18
15054.	L.Corp. W. Pyle . . . .	23/3/18
45111.	Private A. Redford . . . .	23/3/18
26984.	Private W. Southam . . . .	23/3/18

# WOUNDED

353

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
16993.	Private W. Thomas . . . .	23/3/18
8238.	Private W. Wilkinson . . . .	23/3/18
14867.	L.Corp. W. Bond . . . .	24/3/18
2066.	Sergt. C. Burton . . . .	24/3/18
15387.	Private E. Matson . . . .	24/3/18
29454.	L.Corp. E. Middleton . . . .	24/3/18
45060.	Corp. H. Pridgeon . . . .	24/3/18
19148.	Private L. Singer . . . .	24/3/18
10583.	L.Corp. J. Swain . . . .	24/3/18
4361.	Private W. Wheeler . . . .	24/3/18
2069.	Private W. Coleman . . . .	24/3/18
14976.	Private G. R. Jennings . . . .	24/3/18
7370.	L.Corp. J. Lee . . . .	24/3/18
208.	Private H. Loveday . . . .	24/3/18
255109.	Private B. Porter . . . .	24/3/18
2101.	Private A. Rose . . . .	24/3/18
14831.	Private E. Steele . . . .	24/3/18
21606.	Private J. Woolridge . . . .	24/3/18
10488.	Private J. Gray . . . .	24/3/18
Lieut. J. H. Eliot, M.C. . . . .		26/3/18
5409.	Tptry. W. Cosgrove . . . .	26/3/18
16565.	Private T. Churchill . . . .	26/3/18
2074.	Private H. Flanders . . . .	26/3/18
45144.	Corp. W. Mansell . . . .	26/3/18
29359.	Private F. Williams . . . .	26/3/18
11475.	Private A. Gilbert . . . .	26/3/18
3727.	L.Corp. W. Hill . . . .	26/3/18
9105.	Private W. Kehoe . . . .	26/3/18
14821.	Private A. Mundy . . . .	26/3/18
Capt. C. F. Clarke . . . .		1/4/18
Lieut. J. K. Harvie . . . .		1/4/18
45024.	Private J. Anderson . . . .	1/4/18
21422.	Private T. Barham . . . .	1/4/18
9091.	Private A. Brown . . . .	1/4/18
21880.	Private F. Burt . . . .	1/4/18
23069.	Private J. Cantwill . . . .	1/4/18
2068.	Private J. Cashmore . . . .	1/4/18
16358.	L.Corp. W. Collier . . . .	1/4/18
2071.	L.Corp. W. Durham . . . .	1/4/18
3.	Sergt. F. Eggleton . . . .	1/4/18

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
23874.	Private F. Ellis . . . .	1/4/18
45082.	Sergt. G. Fife . . . .	1/4/18
8740.	Private A. Godfrey . . . .	1/4/18
14114.	Private F. Green . . . .	1/4/18
8051.	L.Corp. E. Griffin . . . .	1/4/18
2322.	Sergt. A. Kemp . . . .	1/4/18
87.	Corp. L. Knowles . . . .	1/4/18
2092.	Private J. Laing . . . .	1/4/18
45032.	Private C. Loughery . . . .	1/4/18
8040.	Sergt. P. Page . . . .	1/4/18
8618.	Private F. Pink . . . .	1/4/18
10605.	Private W. Pledger . . . .	1/4/18
4440.	Sergt. C. Sankey . . . .	1/4/18
45037.	Regt. Sergt.-Major H. Smith . . . .	1/4/18
13355.	Private W. Stafford . . . .	1/4/18
45007.	Sergt. E. Thornhill . . . .	1/4/18
21719.	Private F. Toomer . . . .	1/4/18
304.	Private G. Truman . . . .	1/4/18
45113.	Corp. A. Walker . . . .	1/4/18
9919.	Corp. F. Watts . . . .	1/4/18
23207.	Private J. Webb . . . .	1/4/18
4303.	Private W. Jones . . . .	1/4/18
45150.	Private A. Baron . . . .	1/4/18
44923.	L.Corp. H. Brown . . . .	7/8/18
2073.	Sh. Smith W. Fisher . . . .	7/8/18
7657.	Private H. French . . . .	7/8/18
6211.	Corp. B. Mills . . . .	7/8/18
3912.	Corp. F. Raw . . . .	7/8/18
101.	Private E. Webb . . . .	7/8/18
14318.	Private H. Reader . . . .	8/8/18
Major F. J. Dupre,	D.S.O. . . . .	10/8/18
Lieut. N. V. Cannon . . . .		10/8/18
45109.	Private M. Arnold . . . .	10/8/18
21438.	Private A. Ball . . . .	10/8/18
45145.	L.Corp. D. Cunningham . . . .	10/8/18
35537.	Private C. Chapman . . . .	10/8/18
24597.	Private J. Davies . . . .	10/8/18
14114.	Private T. Green . . . .	10/8/18
235604.	Private W. Hookins . . . .	10/8/18
320542.	Private W. Huntley . . . .	10/8/18

# WOUNDED

355

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Wounded.
15977.	Sergt. T. Kerr . . . .	10/8/18
45027.	S. Sergt.-Major J. Mole . . . .	10/8/18
287.	Private R. Neal . . . .	10/8/18
163.	L.Corp. J. Norris . . . .	10/8/18
15062.	Private E. Paddison . . . .	10/8/18
14457.	Private A. Robinson . . . .	10/8/18
45037.	Regt. Sergt.-Major H. Smith . . . .	10/8/18
4463.	Private E. Smith . . . .	10/8/18
14023.	Private N. Taylor . . . .	10/8/18
10455.	A/L.Sergt. L. Williams . . . .	10/8/18
4990.	Private R. Winslett . . . .	10/8/18
1966.	Sergt. W. Wistow . . . .	10/8/18
8021.	Private T. Cox . . . .	10/8/18
24835.	Private P. Walsh . . . .	10/8/18
256066.	Private E. Lee . . . .	10/8/18
14976.	Private G. Jennings . . . .	10/8/18
23271.	Private S. Ashford . . . .	24/8/18
35120.	Private G. Harris . . . .	24/8/18
8625.	Corp. V. Lambkin . . . .	24/8/18
23.	Private C. Ollerenshaw . . . .	24/8/18
4330.	Sh. Smith F. Wincott . . . .	24/8/18
35111.	Private W. Bridgman . . . .	4/9/18
Lieut. W. G. Petherick . . . .		30/9/18
45136.	Private P. McDonnell . . . .	30/9/18
Lieut. F. Craig . . . .		9/10/18
35697.	Private G. Hare . . . .	9/10/18
27968.	Private J. Meehan . . . .	9/10/18
295412.	Private G. Pulley . . . .	9/10/18
16109.	Private C. Warren . . . .	9/10/18
27767.	Private W. Woodgate . . . .	9/10/18
T/Lieut. K. E. Dunn . . . .		16/10/18
11476.	Sergt. A. Bloomfield . . . .	18/10/18
25197.	Private L. Darby . . . .	22/10/18
5470.	Corp. J. Curry . . . .	4/11/18
45101.	Private A. Benn . . . .	4/11/18
29037.	Sh. Smith S. Barton . . . .	8/11/18
39382.	Private W. Inman . . . .	8/11/18
73279.	Private R. Shaw . . . .	8/11/18
8039.	Private F. Ward . . . .	8/11/18
35291.	Private G. Handley . . . .	11/11/18

# APPENDIX C

## PRISONERS OF WAR

No.	Rank and Name.	Date Reported.	Particulars.
9084	L.Corp. E. Taylor . . .	25/8/14	Paderborn
4454	Private W. Freeman . . .	25/8/14	Doberitz
10493	Private W. March . . .	25/8/14	Sennelager
10180	Private H. Gyford . . .	27/8/14	Quedlinburg
9759	L.Corp. O. Buckner . . .	28/8/14	Paderborn
10176	Private E. Sayer . . .	25/8/14	Doberitz
3427	Private R. Wood . . .	25/8/14	Sennelager
4193	Sergt. P. Randall . . .	31/8/14	Sennelager
3143	Bandsman H. Browning. . .	31/8/14	Sennelager
10206	Private A. Butler . . .	31/8/14	Padderborn
9326	Private B. Hickson . . .	4/9/14	Gutersloh
9154	Private A. Patterson . . .	4/9/14	Doberitz
6438	Private A. Brent . . .	20/10/14	Göttingen
6450	Private A. Cox . . .	20/10/14	Munster
4456	Private F. Lloyd . . .	20/10/14	Munster
4811	Bandsman F. Hodson . . .	30/10/14	Gustrow
5784	Private J. Greig . . .	31/10/14	Gustrow
10748	L.Corp. W. Swift . . .	20/5/17	Dulmen
23100	Private J. Feleter . . .	20/5/17	Dulmen
45146	Private E. Kettley . . .	30/11/17	Dulmen
14921	Private H. Elderfield . . .	21/3/18	Germany
10744	L.Corp. J. Meakin . . .	23/3/18	Gefig Zwickaw
2185	Corp. W. Baston . . .	10/8/18	Germany

## APPENDIX D

### WAR HONOURS

#### KEY TO ABBREVIATIONS

- C.B.—Companion of the Order of the Bath.  
C.M.G.—Companion of the Order of St. Michael and St. George.  
O.B.E.—Officer of the Order of the British Empire.  
D.S.O.—Companion of the Distinguished Service Order.  
M.C.—Military Cross.  
D.C.M.—Distinguished Conduct Medal.  
M.M.—Military Medal.  
M.S.M.—Meritorious Service Medal.

*Note.*—An instance of a conspicuous act of gallantry by an N.C.O. or private soldier is recorded.

Ainger, E., Lieut.

Croix de Guerre (France), Star of Roumania (4th Class). With  
Staff 2nd Cav. Div. and Brit. Mil. Mission to Roumania.

Archer, A. E., Private, No. 10049.

Croix de Guerre (Belgium). With Regt.

Austin, F. A., Sqdn. Sergt.-Major, No. 3966.

M.M. With Regt.

Bagnell, R. A., Capt.

Croix de Guerre (France). With Regt.

Bailey, C., Shoeing Smith, No. 10453.

Despatches (1). With Regt.

Banbury, F., Sergt., No. 4246.

Despatches (1). With Regt.

Barton, H. R., Lieut.

M.C. With Regt.

Bell, A. H. M., Capt. and Adjt.

M.C., Despatches (1). With Regt.

Bennett, C., Corp., No. 3407.

D.C.M. With Regt. On 30th Oct. 1914, near Zandvoorde, he carried a wounded man a distance of fifty yards into cover under a heavy fire.

Blake, F. W., L.Corp., No. 21745.

M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Rifle Wood, 1st April 1918.

Booth, H., Capt.

M.C., Despatches (1). With Staff Royal Artillery.

Bromley, H. T., Lieut.

Despatches (1). With Regt.

Bunnett, C., L.Corp., No. 6414.

M.M. With Regt.

Burns, A., Sqdn. Sergt.-Major, No. 4013.

D.C.M. With Regt. For gallantry in silencing enemy snipers between 20th-22nd Nov. 1914, near Kemmel.

Burnside, F. R., Lieut.-Colonel.

D.S.O., Brevet-Major, Brevet Lieut.-Colonel, Despatches (5). With Canadian Corps, 8th and 12th Div., and in German S.W. Africa.

Burton, C. H. C., Sergt., No. 2066.

Despatches (1). With Regt.

Bush, E., Private, No. 3835.

D.C.M. With Regt. For gallantry on 30th August 1914, near Longueil, when he ambushed ten German cavalrymen.

Buxton, M., Sqdn. Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 5431.

M.S.M. With G.H.Q.

Chitty, E., Private, No. 45076.

Despatches (1). With 230th Infantry Brigade.

Clarke, C. F., Capt.

Croix de Guerre (France), Despatches (1). With Regt.

Clinch, H. W., Lieut.-Colonel.

Despatches (1), With Staff, XIII Corps.

Combe, H., Lieut.-Colonel.

D.S.O., Bar to D.S.O., Despatches (2). With Regt. And in command of 15th Hussars.

Coombs, F. J., Sergt. (O.R.C.), No. 2055.

M.M. With Regt.

Craig, F., Lieut.

M.C. With Regt.

Cross, E. G. K., Capt. (7th Hussars S.R.)

Despatches (1). With Regt.

- Cunningham, D., L.Corp., No. 45125.  
M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Rifle Wood,  
1st April 1918.
- Dady, M., Private, No. 10655.  
M.M. With Warwickshire Regt.
- Dalrymple, W. G. N. H., Lieut.  
Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Davidson, G., Corp., No. 4469.  
Médaille Militaire (France), Despatches (2). With Regt. Acts  
of conspicuous gallantry between 21st and 30th August 1914.
- Desborough, R., Corp., No. 10745.  
M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry near Terguier,  
22nd-23rd March 1918.
- Dobie, J. J., Capt.  
D.S.O., M.C., Despatches (2). With Regt.
- Du Pre, F. J., Major.  
D.S.O., Despatches (2). With Regt.
- Edgington, E., Sadr.-Corp., No. 45.  
Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Edwards, J., Corp., No. 1650.  
D.C.M. With Regt. For conspicuous gallantry at Klein  
Zillebeke on 30th October 1914, when he went to the assistance  
of a severely wounded officer, under heavy fire, and brought  
him into cover.
- Eggleton, F., Sergt., No. 3.  
M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Rifle Wood,  
1st April 1918.
- Eliot, J. H., Lieut.  
M.C., Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Enticott, J., Corp., No. 9102.  
D.C.M. With Regt. On 30th October 1914, near Klein Zille-  
beke, he remained in an exposed position under heavy fire,  
after his troop had retired, and obtained valuable information.
- Flinders, E., Sergt., No. 3939.  
M.M. With Regt.
- Frere, T., Bandsman, No. 4284.  
D.C.M. With Regt. On 30th October 1914, at Klein Zillebeke,  
he retained his position under a rain of howitzer shells and  
attended the wounded, who were also under fire.
- Fry, W., Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 23330.  
Despatches (1). With H.Q. 12th Div.



**Furnell, J. R., Sqdn. Sergt.-Major (O.R.S.), No. 288.**

Promoted **Qr.-Mr.-Sergt.** for distinguished services. With **G.H.Q. 3rd Echelon.**

**Furrie, B., L.Corp., No. 14792.**

**M.M.** With Regt. **Conspicuous gallantry at Rifle Wood,** 1st April 1918.

**Gilbert, C. J., Regt. Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 3452.**

**D.C.M.** With Regt. For gallant conduct and invaluable services, especially from 13th-18th April 1915, when the Regiment was in the trenches.

**Gilroy, D. C., Capt.**

**Croix de Guerre (France), Mérite Agricole (France), Despatches (2).** With **H.Q. 4th Cav. Div.**

**Goring, H., Capt.**

**Despatches (1).** With **H.Q. 4th Cav. Bde.**

**Goring, W., Colonel.**

Brought to the notice of the Sec. of State for War for distinguished services rendered in connection with the War. **Despatches (1).**

**Grubb, R. R. de C., Major.**

**M.C., Brevet-Major, Despatches (2).** With **R. Flying Corps,** and **H.Q. I. Corps.**

**Harris, A. E., Private, No. 3291.**

**Croix de Guerre (Belgium).** With **H.Q. 4th Cav. Div.**

**Heather, F. W., L.Corp., No. 10210.**

**M.M.** With Regt.

**Hicks, C., Sqdn. Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 45042.**

**Despatches (1).** With Regt.

**Hodgson, F. S., Sqdn. Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 3518.**

**Despatches (1).** With Regt.

**Hodgson, J., Private, No. 21339.**

**M.M.** With **4th M.G. Sqdn.**

**Hodgson, A., Bandsman, No. 4811.**

**D.C.M.** With Regt. On 30th October 1914, at Klein Zillebeke, he retained his position under a rain of howitzer shells and attended the wounded, who were also under fire.

**Howard, D. S. P., Capt. the Hon.**

**Croix de Guerre (Belgium).** With Regt.

**Huggins, C. L., Lieut.**

**M.C.** With Regt.

**James, A. W. H., Major.**

**M.C., Despatches (2).** With **Royal Flying Corps** and **G.H.Q.**

Kelly, P. J. V., Lieut.-Colonel.

C.M.G., D.S.O., Brevet Lieut.-Colonel, 2nd Class Order of the Nile, 3rd Class Order of the Nile, Despatches (2). In command of Darfur Operations Force and with Egyptian Army.

Kennedy, A. A., Major-General.

C.B., C.M.G., Légion d'honneur, Brevet Colonel, Promoted Major-General, Despatches (7). With Regt., and commanding 7th Cav. Bde., 4th Cav. Div., 75th and 230th Inf. Bdes., and appointments with the British Army of the Rhine.

Kettley, E., Private, No. 45146.

M.S.M., Despatches (1). With H.Q. 29th. Div.

Lauder, J., Private, No. 26161.

M.M., Bar to M.M. With Regt. Near Faillouel on 23rd March, 1918, the Regiment was moving to a new position under heavy fire from machine guns and trench mortars. Private Lauder was a stretcher-bearer, and, seeing a wounded man, went back and got him into safety. He did this twice through the same heavy machine-gun fire.

Laverton, H. S., Lieut.-Colonel.

O.B.E. Despatches (2). With East African Forces.

MacCaw, G. H., Capt.

M.C., Russian Order of St. Vladimir (4th Class), Serbian White Eagle (4th Class), with General Staff, Russia and Serbia.

Mainwaring, S., Sergt., No. 2609.

M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Gillemont Farm on 20th May 1917.

Mallet, J., Private, No. 15262.

M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Gillemont Farm on 20th May 1917.

Marshall, W., Corp., No. 18851.

M.M. With 4th M. Gun Sqdn.

Martin, G., Private, No. 1196.

M.M. With Regt.

Mole, J. T., Sadr. Staff Sergt., No. 45027.

M.S.M. With Regt.

Mortlock, C., Sqdn. Sergt.-Major, No 45005.

Croix de Guerre (Belgium). With Regt.

Muzzell, F. B., Sqdn. Sergt.-Major, No. 45009.

M.S.M. With H.Q. Fourth Army.

Olive, T. B., Major.

M.C., Brevet Major, Serbian Order White Eagle (3rd Class),  
3 Greek Orders, American Bronze Medal, Despatches (4).  
With H.Q. Cav. Corps and British Salonica Force.

Peers, P. G., Private, No. 15329.

M.M. With Regt. Near Guivry on 24th March 1918, when  
the Regiment was under very heavy shell and machine-gun  
fire, he went back and brought a badly wounded corporal  
into safety and took him to a French ambulance. During  
the same day he did very gallant work as a despatch runner  
under heavy fire.

Petherick, J. C., Major.

M.C. Italian Silver Medal for Military Valour, Despatches (1).  
With 4th M. Gun Sqn.

Pickstone, E., Private, No. 2161.

D.C.M. With Regt. On night of 31st October 1914 he  
reached the enemy's line on the Messines Ridge under heavy  
fire and brought back valuable information. He had also  
acted with conspicuous gallantry on a previous occasion.

Raison, A., Corp., No. 4304.

Despatches (1). With Regt.

Ralphs, H. E., Lieut.

Brought to the notice of the Sec. of State for War for distin-  
guished services. With 2nd Res. Cav. Regt.

Richardson, W., Private, No. 8089.

M.M. With Regt.

Rose, A., Private, No. 2101.

M.M. With Regt.

Seed, W. E., Sqn. Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 4511.

M.S.M., Despatches (1). With Regt.

Smith, H., Regtl. Sergt.-Major, No. 4415.

D.C.M. With Regt. During the enemy gas attack at Ypres  
on 2nd May 1915, a large number of men of different batta-  
lions were retiring past the Regiment's trenches. Mr. Smith,  
on his own initiative, left the trenches, under heavy shell fire,  
and by force of example was mainly instrumental in stopping  
the retirement.

Soames, A. H. L., Capt.

M.C., Despatches (1). With Royal Flying Corps.

Stow, G. H., Sergt., No. 45151.

M.S.M. With Regt.

- Taylor, D. P. B., 2nd Lieut.  
M.C., Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Taylor, W., Sergt., No. 3244.  
Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Thornhill, E., Sergt., No. 3812.  
Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Town, J., Farrier, Qr.-Mr.-Sergt., No. 5910.  
Despatches (1). With Regt.
- Townsend, W., Sadr. Corp., No. 4402.  
Médaille Militaire (France), Despatches (1). With Regt. Acts  
of conspicuous gallantry between 21st and 30th August 1914.
- Tylden-Wright, W. R., Major.  
D.S.O., Brevet Major, Despatches (2). With Cav. Corps and  
1st Cav. Div. Staffs.
- Walker, E., Sergt., No. 4296.  
M.M., Despatches (1). With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at  
Rifle Wood, 1st April, 1918.
- Ward, F. G., Private, No. 8039.  
M.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Lempire on  
22nd June, 1917.
- Watson, F. C., Major.  
M.C., O.B.E. Despatches (2). With Staff Royal Artillery and  
III Corps.
- Willcox, W. T., Lieut.-Colonel.  
C.M.G., Croix de Guerre (France), Despatches (2). With Regt.
- Wistow, W. R., Sergt., No. 1966.  
D.C.M., M.S.M. With Regt. Conspicuous gallantry at Rifle  
Wood, 1st April 1918.
- Woods, A., Sergt., No. 4532.  
Russian Order of St. George, 1st Class. With Regt.

## APPENDIX E

### OFFICERS' SERVICES

Officers who sailed with the 3rd Hussars, and were present with the Regiment during the Retreat from Mons and the Battles of Mons, Le Cateau, Marne 1914, Aisne 1914, Messines 1914, Arras 1914, Ypres 1914, Gheluvelt, unless killed in action or wounded.

Commanding, Lieut.-Colonel A. A. Kennedy.

Major W. T. Willcox.

Major H. W. Clinch. Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

Major H. Combe. Wounded at Battle of Messines.

Capt. F. J. Du Pre.

Capt. J. J. Dobie. Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

Capt. F. C. Watson (Adjt.)

Capt. T. B. Olive.

Capt. E. G. K. Cross (7th Hrs. S.R.). Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

Lieut. C. F. Cahusac (36th Jacob's Horse, Indian Army).

Lieut. G. R. Turner (Special Reserve).

Lieut. R. A. Bagnell.

Lieut. C. F. Clarke.

Lieut. C. B. Leechman. Killed in Action, Battle of the Aisne.

Lieut. J. C. Petherick. Wounded at Battle of the Aisne.

Lieut. A. H. M. Bell.

Lieut. W. Mac. C. Cliff.

Lieut. L. F. H. Whiston.

Lieut. N. W. Eastwood. Wounded at Battle of Messines.

Lieut. The Hon. D. S. P. Howard. Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

2nd Lieut. J. H. Eliot. Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

2nd Lieut. D. P. B. Taylor.

2nd Lieut. C. L. Huggins. Wounded at Battle of Messines.

Lieut. and Qr.-Mr. F. P. Clark.

Capt. W. C. Smales, R.A.M.C.

Lieut. C. Davenport, A.V.C.

The following were promoted from the ranks of the 3rd Hussars to commissions in the Regiment during this period and were present with it in the above battles :

- 2nd Lieut. A. H. Turner (from Regtl. Sergt.-Major)
- 2nd Lieut. C. H. Gath (from Sergt.) Killed in Action, Battle of Gheluvelt.
- 2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton (from Corp.) Wounded at Battle of Gheluvelt.

The following officer reinforcements from home joined on various dates during this period and served as stated against their names :

- Lieut. G. Baynes (S.R.) Aisne and subsequent battles. Wounded at Messines.
- Lieut. G. D. Hill (7th Hussars.) Messines and Armentières. Wounded at Messines.
- Lieut. D. C. Gilroy (S.R.) Ypres 1914. Gheluvelt.
- Capt. J. Atkinson (S.R.) Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- Lieut. M. Burge (S.R.) Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- Lieut. H. G. Mitchell (S.R.) Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- Lieut. W. T. Bird (30th Lancers, Indian Army). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- 2nd Lieut. R. A. Kettle (on appointment). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- 2nd Lieut. A. W. H. James (on appointment). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- 2nd Lieut. H. M. Naylor (on appointment). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- 2nd Lieut. E. Ainger (on appointment). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.
- 2nd Lieut. C. G. Hill (S.R.) (on appointment). Later operations of Battle of Ypres.

Officers present with the Regiment during the Battles of Ypres, 1915 :

#### *Headquarters*

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Commanding, Major W. T. Willcox.     | 2nd Lieut. A. H. Turner, wounded. |
| Major H. W. Clinch.                  | Lieut. R. D. O'Leary, R.A.M.C.    |
| Capt. and Adj. F. C. Watson.         | Lieut. C. Harding, R.A.V.C.       |
| Capt. J. C. Petherick, Machine Guns. |                                   |

*"A" Squadron*

Capt. F. J. Du Pre.	2nd Lieut. R. A. Kettle.
Capt. M. Burge.	2nd Lieut. H. M. Naylor.
Lieut. A. M. Bell.	2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton.

*"B" Squadron*

Major H. Combe, D.S.O.	2nd Lieut. E. Ainger.
Capt. T. B. Olive.	2nd Lieut. C. H. Hill.
Lieut. G. Baynes.	2nd Lieut. F. R. Hardie.

*"C" Squadron*

Capt. J. J. Dobie.	Lieut. L. F. H. Whiston.
Capt. R. A. Bagnell.	Lieut. the Hon. Donald Howard.
Lieut. W. Cliff.	2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.

Officers of the 3RD Hussars who served with the 4th Battalion (Dismounted Cavalry Division) in the trenches at Vermelles, between 1st January and 15th February 1916 :

<b>As commanding battalion :</b> Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox.	<b>As Quartermaster of battalion :</b> Capt. and Qr.-Mr. F. P. Clark.
<b>As 2nd in command of battalion :</b> Major H. Combe, D.S.O.	<b>As battalion bombing officer :</b> Lieut. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.
<b>As Adjutant of battalion :</b> Lieut. A. H. M. Bell.	<b>As battalion signalling officer :</b> Lieut. N. W. Eastwood.
<b>As company commander :</b> Capt. F. J. Du Pre.	Capt. F. R. Burnside. Capt. J. J. Dobie.
<b>As 2nd in command of a company :</b> Capt. R. A. Bagnell, wounded.	Capt. C. F. Clarke. Lieut. E. Ainger.
<b>As platoon commanders :</b> 2nd Lieut. H. M. Naylor. 2nd Lieut. R. A. Kettle. 2nd Lieut. C. L. Huggins; 2nd Lieut. J. M. Stubbs. 2nd Lieut. W. G. N. H. Dalrymple; 2nd Lieut. H. G. Mitchell.	2nd Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman. 2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie. 2nd Lieut. H. J. Levander. 2nd Lieut. G. Lancefield. 2nd Lieut. C. Grantham-Hill, wounded. 2nd Lieut. R. G. Morrison. 2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.
Capt. J. C. Petherick, Machine Gun Detachment. 2nd Lieut. H. Booth, Machine Gun Detachment. Capt. R. D. O'Leary, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.	

Officers present with the Regiment at the Somme, 1916 :

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox, C.M.G.	Lieut. C. L. Huggins.
Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.	Lieut. R. A. Kettle.
Capt. J. J. Dobie.	Lieut. H. M. Naylor.
Capt. C. F. Clarke.	2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton.
Lieut. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.	2nd Lieut. W. G. N. H. Dalrymple.
Lieut. N. W. Eastwood.	2nd Lieut. R. G. Morrison.

2nd Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman.  
 2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie.  
 2nd Lieut. J. T. M. Tylden-Wright.  
 2nd Lieut. A. Dilberoglue.  
 2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.  
 2nd Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.  
 2nd Lieut. F. Craig.  
 2nd Lieut. H. G. Mitchell.  
 2nd Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.  
 2nd Lieut. N. C. Franklin-Smith.

2nd Lieut. H. Goring.  
 2nd Lieut. C. L. Cunninghame.  
 2nd Lieut. G. Lancefield.  
 2nd Lieut. L. W. Irons.  
 2nd Lieut. H. V. Hart.  
 Lieut. and Adj. A. H. M. Bell.  
 Capt. and Q.-M. F. P. Clarke.  
 Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. R. T. Davis, A.V.C.

Officers present with the Regiment at the Battle of Arras, 1917 :

*Headquarters*

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox,  
 C.M.G.  
 Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.  
 Capt. and Adj. A. M. Bell.  
 Capt. and Qr.-Mr. F. P. Clark.

Lieut. H. Goring.  
 2nd Lieut. H. J. Levander.  
 Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. R. T. Davis, A.V.C.

*" A " Squadron*

Capt. R. A. Bagnell.  
 Lieut. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.  
 Lieut. R. A. Kettle.  
 Lieut. E. Ainger.  
 2nd Lieut. W. G. Dalrymple.

2nd Lieut. F. Craig.  
 2nd Lieut. C. L. Cunninghame.  
 2nd Lieut. L. W. Irons.  
 2nd Lieut. K. Dunn.  
 2nd Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.

*" B " Squadron*

Capt. C. F. Clarke.  
 Lieut. C. L. Huggins.  
 2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton.  
 2nd Lieut. R. G. Morrison.

2nd Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman.  
 2nd Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.  
 2nd Lieut. N. C. Franklin-Smith.  
 2nd Lieut. G. Lancefield.

*" C " Squadron*

Capt. J. J. Dobie.  
 Lieut. H. M. Naylor.  
 2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie.  
 2nd Lieut. A. Dilberoglue.

2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.  
 2nd Lieut. H. G. Mitchell.  
 2nd Lieut. H. V. Hart.

Officers present with the Regiment at the Lempire Trenches,  
 between 16th May and 7th July 1917 :

*Headquarters*

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox,  
 C.M.G.  
 Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.  
 Capt. and Adj. A. M. Bell.

Capt. and Q.-M. F. P. Clarke.  
 2nd Lieut. H. J. Levander.  
 Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.

*" A " Squadron*

Capt. R. A. Bagnell.  
 Lieut. R. A. Kettle.  
 Lieut. E. Ainger.  
 2nd Lieut. W. G. Dalrymple.

2nd Lieut. F. Craig.  
 2nd Lieut. L. W. Irons.  
 2nd Lieut. K. C. Dunn.  
 2nd Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.



*"B" Squadron*

Capt. C. F. Clarke.	2nd Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman.
Lieut. C. L. Huggins.	2nd Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.
2nd Lieut. H. R. Barton.	2nd Lieut. N. C. Franklin-Smith.
2nd Lieut. R. G. Morrison.	2nd Lieut. G. Lancefield, wounded.

*"C" Squadron*

Capt. J. J. Dobie, wounded.	2nd Lieut. A. Dilberoglue.
Lieut. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.	2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.
Lieut. H. M. Taylor.	2nd Lieut. H. G. Mitchell.
2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie.	2nd Lieut. H. V. Hart.

## Officers present with the Regiment at the Battle of Cambrai, 1917 :

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox,	2nd Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.
C.M.G.	2nd Lieut. F. Craig.
Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.	2nd Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.
Capt. J. J. Dobie.	2nd Lieut. H. J. Levander, wounded.
Capt. R. A. Bagnell.	2nd Lieut. W. G. Dalrymple.
Capt. C. F. Clarke.	2nd Lieut. J. E. Blumenfeld.
Lieut. the Hon. Donald Howard.	2nd Lieut. W. G. Petherick.
Lieut. C. L. Huggins.	2nd Lieut. A. J. A. Booth.
Lieut. H. R. Barton.	2nd Lieut. P. H. Du Cros.
Lieut. R. A. Kettle.	2nd Lieut. N. V. Cannon.
Lieut. H. M. Naylor.	2nd Lieut. L. W. Irons.
Lieut. E. Ainger.	2nd Lieut. B. C. Robinson.
2nd Lieut. A. C. B. Freeman.	Capt. and Adj. A. M. Bell.
2nd Lieut. H. T. Bromley.	Capt. and Qr.-Mr. F. P. Clark.
2nd Lieut. H. G. Mitchell.	Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.
2nd Lieut. A. Dilberoglue.	Capt. S. E. Hill, A.V.C.
2nd Lieut. J. K. Harvie, wounded.	

## Officers present with the Regiment during the Battles of the German Offensive in the Spring of 1918 :

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox,	Lieut. H. T. Bromley.
C.M.G.	Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.
Major H. W. Clinch.	Lieut. F. Craig, M.C.
Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.	Lieut. C. R. P. Brooks, killed in
Capt. J. J. Dobie, D.S.O., M.C.	action at Rifle Wood (4th M.G.
Capt. R. A. Bagnell.	Sqdn.)
Capt. C. F. Clarke, wounded at	Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.
Rifle Wood.	Lieut. R. C. Marsh.
Capt. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.	Lieut. H. V. Hart.
Lieut. J. H. Eliot, M.C., wounded	Lieut. K. E. Dunn.
near Noyon (Dive le Franc).	Lieut. N. V. Cannon.
Lieut. C. L. Huggins.	Lieut. L. W. Irons.
Lieut. R. A. Kettle, killed in Action	2nd Lieut. J. E. Blumenfeld.
near Noyon.	2nd Lieut. J. C. Petherick.
Lieut. H. M. Naylor.	2nd Lieut. A. J. A. Booth.
Lieut. H. R. Barton, M.C.	2nd Lieut. P. H. Du Cros.
Lieut. W. G. N. H. Dalrymple.	2nd Lieut. B. C. Robinson.
Lieut. J. K. Harvie, wounded at	2nd Lieut. F. E. Lucas.
Rifle Wood.	Capt. and Adj. A. H. M. Bell, M.C.
Lieut. A. Dilberoglue, killed in	Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.
Action at Rifle Wood.	Capt. L. W. Heelis, A.V.C.

Officers present with the Regiment at the Battle of Amiens, 1918 :

*Headquarters*

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox, C.M.G.	Lieut. H. V. Hart. Capt. L. W. Heelis, A.V.C.
Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O., wounded.	Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C., wounded.
Capt. and Adj. A. H. M. Bell, M.C.	

*" A " Squadron*

Capt. R. A. Bagnell.	Lieut. L. W. Irons.
Lieut. W. G. N. H. Dalrymple.	2nd Lieut. E. P. Macdonald.
Lieut. H. T. Bromley.	Lieut. D. K. Ninnis.
Lieut. N. V. Cannon, wounded.	2nd Lieut. D. F. Powell.

*" B " Squadron*

Capt. C. F. Clarke.	2nd Lieut. J. W. Sutherland.
Lieut. H. R. Barton, M.C.	2nd Lieut. P. Kirkus.
Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.	2nd Lieut. E. E. Lloyd.

*" C " Squadron*

Capt. J. J. Dobie, D.S.O., M.C.	2nd Lieut. W. G. Petherick.
Capt. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.	2nd Lieut. C. P. Lungley.
Lieut. F. Craig, M.C.	2nd Lieut. H. E. A. Cossentine.

Officers present with the Regiment in the Battles of the Advance to Victory, 1918 :

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox, C.M.G.	Lieut. H. V. Hart.
Major F. J. Du Pre, D.S.O.	Capt. H. J. Keane, R.A.M.C.
Capt. and Adj. A. H. M. Bell, M.C.	Capt. A. Moon, R.A.M.C.
Lieut. and Qr.-Mr. J. R. Furnell.	Capt. L. W. Heelis, A.V.C.

*" A " Squadron*

Capt. R. A. Bagnell.	Lieut. N. V. Cannon.
Lieut. J. H. Eliot, M.C.	Lieut. L. W. Irons.
Lieut. G. H. Eastwood.	Lieut. K. E. Dunn, wounded.
Lieut. W. G. N. H. Dalrymple.	Lieut. R. D. K. Ninnis.
Lieut. H. T. Bromley.	2nd Lieut. E. P. Macdonald.

*" B " Squadron*

Capt. C. F. Clarke.	Lieut. J. E. Blumenfeld.
Lieut. C. L. Huggins.	2nd Lieut. J. W. Sutherland.
Lieut. H. R. Barton, M.C.	2nd Lieut. P. Kirkus.
Lieut. P. A. Waterlow.	2nd Lieut. E. E. Lloyd.
Lieut. B. C. Robinson.	

*" C " Squadron*

Capt. J. J. Dobie, D.S.O., M.C., killed in Action, Canal du Nord.	Lieut. F. Craig, M.C., wounded.
Capt. the Hon. D. S. P. Howard.	Lieut. R. C. Marsh.
Lieut. E. Ainger.	Lieut. J. B. F. Austin.
Lieut. H. M. Naylor.	2nd Lieut. A. J. Booth.
Lieut. W. G. Petherick, wounded.	2nd Lieut. C. P. Lungley.
	2nd Lieut. H. E. A. Cossentine

## APPENDIX F

### LISTS OF OFFICERS, ATTACHED OFFICERS, AND INTERPRETERS

**S.R. = Special Reserve.**

**T.C. = Temporary Commission.**

Ainger, Lieut. E.  
 Atkinson, Capt. J. E. (S.R.)  
 Austin, Lieut. J. B. F.  
 Bagnell, Capt. R. A.  
 Barton, Lieut. H. R., M.C.  
 Baynes, Capt. G. S. (S.R.).  
 Bell, Capt. and Adj. A. H. M., M.C.  
 Bingham Crabbe, 2nd Lieut. H. L.  
 Bird, Lieut. W. T. (30th Lancers,  
 I.A.)  
 Blumenfeld, Lieut. J. E.  
 Booth, 2nd Lieut. H., M.C. (S.R.)  
 Booth, 2nd Lieut. A. J. A.  
 Bromley, Lieut. H. T.  
 Brooks, Lieut. C. R. P. (S.R.)  
 Burge, Major M. (S.R.)  
 Burnside, Lieut.-Colonel F. R.,  
 D.S.O.  
 Cahusac, Capt. C. F. (36th Jacobs  
 Horse.)  
 Cannon, Lieut. N. V. (T.C.)  
 Clarke, Capt. C. F.  
 Clark, Capt. and Qr.-Mr. F. P. (Died).  
 Cliff, Capt. W. McC.  
 Clinch, Lieut.-Colonel H. W.  
 Combe, Lieut.-Colonel H., D.S.O.  
 Cossentine, 2nd Lieut. H. E. (S.R.)  
 Crabbe, 2nd Lieut. F. C.  
 Craig, Lieut. F. C., M.C.  
 Craig, 2nd Lieut. H. E. (T.C.)  
 Cross, Capt. E. G. K., 7th Hussars  
 (S.R.)  
 Cunninghame, Capt. C. L. (S.R.)  
 Dalrymple, Lieut. W. G. N. H.  
 Dilberoglue, 2nd Lieut. A.  
 Dobie, Capt. J. J., D.S.O., M.C.  
 Dunn, Lieut. K. E. (T.C.)  
 Du Cros, 2nd Lieut. P. H. (S.R.)  
 Du Pre, Major F. J., D.S.O.  
 Eastwood, 2nd Lieut. G. H. (S.R.)  
 Eastwood, Lieut. N. W.  
 Eliot, Lieut. J. H., M.C.  
 Franklin Smith, 2nd Lieut. N. C.  
 (T.C.)

Freeman, 2nd Lieut. A. C. B.  
 Furnell, Lieut. and Qr.-Mr. J. K.  
 Gath, 2nd Lieut. C. H.  
 Giles, 2nd Lieut. J. C.  
 Gilroy, Capt. D. C. (S.R.)  
 Goring, Capt. H. (S.R.)  
 Grantham Hill, 2nd Lieut. C. (S.R.)  
 Hardie, Capt. F. R. (S.R.)  
 Hart, Lieut. H. V. (T.C.)  
 Harvie, Lieut. J. K.  
 Herman, 2nd Lieut. B. E. (T.C.)  
 Hill, Major G. D. (7th Hussars).  
 Howard, Capt. the Hon. D. S. P.  
 Huggins, Lieut. C. L., M.C.  
 Irons, Lieut. L. W. (T.C.)  
 James, Major A. W. H., M.C.  
 Kennedy, Maj.-Gen. A. A., C.B.,  
 C.M.G.  
 Kettle, Lieut. R. A.  
 Kirkus, 2nd Lieut. P. (N. Som.  
 Yeo.)  
 Lancefield, 2nd Lieut. G. (T.C.)  
 Leechman, Lieut. C. B.  
 Leney, 2nd Lieut. A. M. (S.R.)  
 Levander, Lieut. H. J. (T.C.)  
 Lloyd, 2nd Lieut. E. E. (3rd County  
 of London Yeo.)  
 Lloyd, 2nd Lieut. L. F. (3rd County  
 of London Yeo.)  
 Lucas, 2nd Lieut. F. E. (T.C.)  
 Lungley, 2nd Lieut. C. P. (T.C.)  
 MacDonald, 2nd Lieut. E. P.  
 (Dorset Yeo.)  
 Marsh, Lieut. R. C. (S.R.)  
 Mitchell, 2nd Lieut. H. G. (S.R.)  
 Morrison, 2nd Lieut. R. G. (S.R.)  
 Naylor, Lieut. H. M.  
 Ninnis, Lieut. D. K. (Essex Yeo.)  
 Olive, Major T. B., M.C.  
 Petherick, Major J. C., M.C.  
 Petherick, Lieut. W. G.  
 Pollard, 2nd Lieut. R. C. (T.C.)  
 Powell, 2nd Lieut. D. F. (N. Som.  
 Yeo.)

Ralphs, Lieut. H. E. (T.C.)	Turner, Lieut. G. R. (S.R.)
Robinson, Lieut. N. C. (T.C.)	Turner, Capt. A. H.
Rose, 2nd Lieut. W. R.	Tylden-Wright, 2nd Lieut. J. T. M.
Stewart, Lieut. C. T. (South Irish Horse).	Waterlow, Lieut. P. A.
Stone, Lieut. F. G. S. (S.R.)	Watson, 2nd Lieut. E. de V. (T.C.)
Stubbs, 2nd Lieut. J. M.	Watson, Capt. and Adj. F. C., M.C., O.B.E.
Sutherland, 2nd Lieut. J. W. R. (Dorset Yeo.)	Whiston, Lieut. L. F. H.
Taylor, 2nd Lieut. D. P. B., M.C.	Willcox, Lieut.-Colonel W. T., C.M.G.

Officers of the 3rd Hussars who served in other appointments during the war and were not with the Regiment :

Lieut.-Colonel P. J. V. Kelly, C.M.G., D.S.O. In Egypt, and commanded the Darfur Expedition, and later the 13th Cav. Bde. in Palestine.

Major W. R. Tylden-Wright, D.S.O. With 9th Lancers and on Staffs of Cavalry Corps and 1st Cav. Div.

Major R. R. de C. Grubb, M.C. Royal Flying Corps and Staff I Corps.

Captain G. L. E. Sherlock. West African Frontier Force. Killed in Action in the Cameroons.

Capt. G. H. MacCaw, M.C. With the Russian Army (Gen. Staff).

Nearly 2,000 Non-Commissioned Officers and Men passed through the ranks of the Regiment during the war.

Medical Officers attached to the Regiment :

Capt. C. Bond, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. G. S. Douglas, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. H. J. Keane, R.A.M.C.

Capt. A. Moon, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. R. D. O'Leary, R.A.M.C.  
 Capt. W. C. Smales, R.A.M.C.

Veterinary Officers attached to the Regiment :

Lieut. C. Davenport, R.A.V.C.  
 Capt. R. T. Davis, R.A.V.C.  
 Capt. A. Glover, R.A.V.C.  
 Lieut. C. Harding, R.A.V.C.

Capt. L. W. Heelis, R.A.V.C.  
 Capt. S. E. Hill, R.A.V.C.  
 Capt. G. E. Oxspring, R.A.V.C.

Interpreters from the French Army attached to the Regiment :

Major M. Claude, D.S.O., 59th Regiment of Artillery.

Capt. Prot, 1st Dragoons.

Messieurs Barroil, Frank Carter, Étienne Dennis, Jean Dennis, Gallet, Paloumé, Pesle, Marchaud.

There were others in the early part of the war who remained but a short time. It is regretted that their names are lost. To all these gentlemen the squadrons owe a debt of gratitude for their help in billets. Unfailing in their duty, they worthily upheld the honour of their great Army.

## APPENDIX G

### OFFICERS, NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND MEN WHO SERVED WITH THE REGIMENT THROUGHOUT THE WAR

Officers, N.C.O.'s and Men and Horses of the 3rd Hussars who landed in France on 17th August 1914, and were present with the Regiment on the day of the Armistice, having served with it throughout the war:

#### *Regimental Headquarters*

Lieut.-Colonel W. T. Willcox, C.M.G.	H/45012. Sergt. E. Flinders, M.M.
Major J. F. Du Pre, D.S.O.	H/45442. Corp. (S.T.M.) J. Moody.
Capt. and Adj. A. M. Bell, M.C.	H/10587. Corp. G. Davey.
No. 1/865 Armourer Sergt.-Major H. Green.	H/8920. Private W. Fisher.
H/45049. R.Q.M.S. W. E. Seed, M.S.M.	H/10457. Private A. May.
H/45027. Sadr. S.-Sergt. J. T. Mole, M.S.M.	H/3892. Private F. Weaver.
H/5910. F.Qr.-Mr. Sergt. J. Town.	H/8089. Private W. Richardson, M.M.
	H/833. Private J. Meadows.
	H/1852. Private A. Hinton.

#### *" A " Squadron*

H/45052. Sergt. A. Woods.	H/9128. Private A. Burgess.
H/45. Sadr. Corp. E. Edgington.	H/45088. Private T. Dix.
H/10211. L.Corp. T. Bissell.	H/2076. Private E. Fowler.
H/4412. L.Corp. A. Gilbert.	H/3992. Private E. Goodwin.
H/46. Private A. Benham.	H/4085. Private G. Hazlewood.
H/10453. S.S. W. Bailey.	H/45077. Private S. Hooper.
H/4061. Private H. Belcher.	H/43. Private H. Stevens.

#### *" B " Squadron*

H/9085. Private W. Cannon.	H/8610. Private H. Kingwell.
H/2070. Private F. Cook.	H/3358. Private D. Mason.
H/1894. Private L. Everson.	H/8933. Private A. Mill.
H/8043. Private W. Escott.	H/4362. Private W. Stoneman.
H/2080. Private W. Hall.	H/2108. Private W. Taylor.
H/2082. Private J. Hayes	H/8017. Private W. Trevorton.

*"C" Squadron*

Capt. the Hon. Donald Howard.	H/45153. Private H. Jolly.
H/4296. Sergt. E. Walker, M.M.	H/7352. Private H. Jones.
H/9137. L.Corp. A. Dalgleish.	H/10209. Private H. Taylor.
H/9062. L.Corp. F. Doran.	H/4037. Private J. Timbers.
H/7578. Private J. Fowler.	H/3010. Private A. Williams.

HORSES

*Regimental Headquarters*

Br. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	} C.O.
Ch. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	
Ch. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	
Br. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	} 2nd in command.
Br. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
Br. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	} Adjutant.
B. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
B. Geld. (B.89)	.	.	.	.	.	.	Regtl. Sergt.-Major.
B. Mare (A.115)	.	.	.	.	.	.	Sergt.-Tpnr.
B. Mare (B.139)	.	.	.	.	.	.	R.Q.M.S.
Ch. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	Transport Sergt.
B. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	Maltese Cart
Bl. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	} B Echelon.
Ch. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	
B. Mare	.	.	.	.	.	.	
Bl. Geld.	.	.	.	.	.	.	

*Signal Troop*

C.23 C.27

*"A" Squadron*

Bl. Mare (Capt. Bagnell)	A.137
Ch. Geld (Capt. Bagnell)	A.138
B. Mare (Lieut. Eliot, M.C.)	A.148
A.24	A.166
A.96	1.A
A.112	6.A
A.121	} Light Draught

*"B" Squadron*

Ch. Geld. }	B.115
B. Geld. } (Capt. Clarke)	B.116
B.9	B.120
B.20	B.135
B.34	B.141
B.42	B.157
B.43	B.161
B.59	B.162
B.63	B.163
B.90	B.166
B.102	B.170
B.114	B.171

*"C" Squadron*

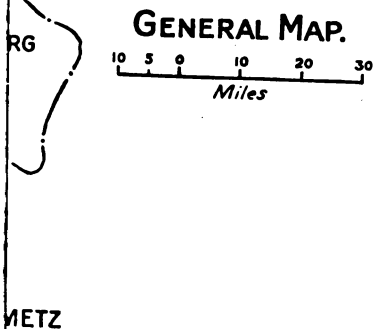
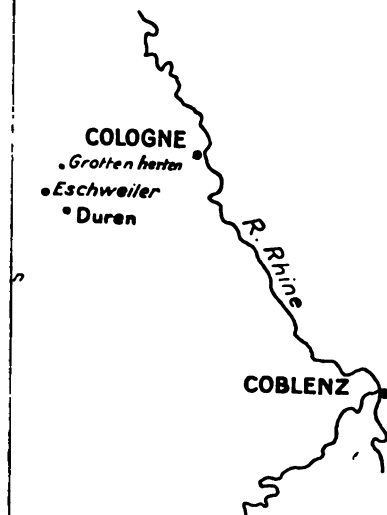
C.25	} Chargers	C.174	} Light Draught
C.136		C.66	
C.137		C.201	
C.138		C.206	
C.139		C.210	
C.100		C.212	Heavy Draught
C.155			

			Officers.	Other Ranks.	Horses.
Regtl. Headquarters	.	.	3	13	16
Signal Troop	.	.	—	—	2
"A" Squadron	.	.	—	14	13
"B" Squadron	.	.	—	12	24
"C" Squadron	.	.	1	9	13
Total	.	.	4	48	68

Officers, Non-Commissioned Officers and Men of the 3rd Hussars who landed in France on 17th August 1914, and were present with the Regiment on the day of the Armistice, but who had been away for varying periods owing to wounds :

		Officers.	Other Ranks.
Regtl. Headquarters	.	—	22
Signal Troop	.	—	5
"A" Squadron	{ Capt. R. A. Bagnell Lieut. J. H. Eliot, M.C. }	2	38
"B" Squadron	{ Capt. C. F. Clarke Lieut. C. L. Huggins, M.C. }	3	32
"C" Squadron	{ Lieut. H. R. Barton, M.C. }	—	18
Total	.	5	115

It is greatly regretted that the names of the Non-Commissioned Officers and Men have been lost, but they all appear in the Lists of Wounded in Appendix B.







## INDEX

- Abbeville, 52, 56, 163  
 Achicourt, 169  
 Adinfer, 287  
 Affringues, 131, 135, 136  
 Aibes, 318, 319, 320  
 Ailles, recapture of, 45  
 Ailly-le-Haut Clocher, 261  
 Ailly-sur-Noye, 55  
 Ainger, Lieut. E., 145, 168, 211, 213  
 Ainval, 54  
 Aire, 60, 100, 131  
 Aisne, battle of the, xi, 42-49  
 Aitken, Lieut., 202; awarded the Military Cross, 204  
 Albert, 157; capture of, 234, 285, 322  
 Aldershot, 341  
 Alincthun, 151  
 Allenby, General, commanding Cavalry Division, 33, 62; advance on Ypres, 57; falls back on Messines, 58; at Klein Zillebeke, 80; tribute from Sir J. French, 86; tribute to the troops, 90  
 Allonville, 157  
 Ambleteuse, 151  
 Ambrines, 266  
 American Army, 291; number of German prisoners, 324  
 Amiens, 55, 193, 248; battle of, xv, 268, 271-283, 322  
 Ancre River, 157, 234, 285  
 Anneux Chapel, 202  
 Ansanvillers, 244  
 Antwerp, fall of, 56, 61  
 Anvin, 157  
 Appilly, 221, 233, 234  
 Ardennes, the, 291, 335  
 Argenvillers, 163  
 Argonne, 294, 304  
 Armentières, battle of, 56, 261  
 Armistice, signed, 319  
 Armoured car, 80  
 Army, British, retreat from Mons, 29; battle of the Marne, 30; tributes to, 30, 47; battle of the Aisne, 42-47; of Loos, 130; attack on Morval, 158, 159; plan of operations at Arras, 167; attack on the Hindenburg Line, 167, 293-299; length of front, 223; defensive measures, 223-225; in the German offensive, 227-265; counter-offensive, 266, 300-318; battle of Amiens, 271-283; number of German prisoners, 283, 324; battle of Bapaume, 285-288; of the Sambre, 310; march to the Rhine, 324, 329-334; demobilized, 337; procession in Paris, 340  
 Arques, 152  
 Arras, battle of, 167, 322  
 Arret, 107  
 Athies, 197, 222  
 Attin, 266  
 Aubencheul, 196  
 Aubencheul-au-Bac, 295  
 Aubercourt, 246  
 Audencourt, 303  
 Audresselles, 151  
 Australian Army, at Aubercourt, 246; reinforcements, 262; at Papote, 263; battle of Amiens, 271, 297; tribute to, 275  
 Austria, collapse of, 309  
 Authie River, 157  
 Auxi-le-Château, 157, 285  
 Avelghem, 304  
 Avesnes, 315  
 Avre River, 193, 245; valley, 234, 245  
 Ayette, 287  
 Ayencourt, 243  
 Babœuf, 237  
 Bac du Nord, 175  
 Bagnell, Capt. R. A., 204, 234, 244, 294; awarded the Croix de Guerre, 260; return to England, 341  
 Bailey, shoeing-smith, wounded, 22  
 Bailloul, 56, 91, 92, 95, 100, 289; capture of, 63, 264

- Bailleulmont, 286  
 Bailleulval, 286, 287  
 Bailly, 238  
 Baisieux, 9  
 Banteux, 298  
 Bapaume, 158; battle of, 285-288, 322; evacuated by the Germans, 288  
 Barastre, 159  
 Barisis, 222  
 Barton, Lieut. H. R., 201, 210, 257; wounded, 81; report on attacking Boulton Wood, 202-204; awarded the Military Cross, 204  
 Barton, Corporal, promoted 2nd Lieutenant, 54  
 Barvaux, 333, 336  
 Bassée, la, battle of, 55  
 Basse Flaque, 267  
 Basseux, 286, 287  
 Basseville, 37  
 Bavai, 313; capture of, 315  
 Bayenghem, 131, 135, 136, 152  
 Baynes, Lieut., wounded, 72  
 Bayonvillers, 177, 222  
 Bazoches, 41  
 Bealcourt, 157  
 Beauchamp, 294  
 Beaucourt-en-Santerre, 273  
 Beaudignies, 308  
 Beaurain, 307, 308  
 Beausaint, 334  
 Beauvois, 231, 305  
 Beauvois-en-Cambrésis, 302  
 Becquigny, 54  
 Behagnies, 286  
 Beko, 334  
 Belgian Army, 300; number of German prisoners, 324  
 Belgians, H.M. King of the, commanding the forces, 304  
 Bell, Capt. A. M., Adjutant, 152, 213; attack on Warneton, 65; patrol duty, 109  
 Bell-Smythe, Brig.-General, 239  
 Bellacourt, 287  
 Belle Hôtesse, la, 261, 262  
 Bellebrune, 151  
 Bellevue, la, 175  
 Bellewaarde Lake, 121  
 Belloy, 163  
 Benay, 230  
 Bennett, Corporal, awarded the D.C.M., 81  
 Benzie, Colonel, 203  
 Berlaimont, 313  
 Bermicourt, 157  
 Bernaville, 157, 285  
 Berneuill, 157  
 Bernot, 303  
 Bertangles, 55, 157  
 Berteaucourt, 193  
 Bethencourt, 18, 306  
 Béthune, 55, 56, 136, 146  
 Beugnatre, 159  
 Beussent, 265, 266  
 Biesme, 330  
 Billeting parties, tribute to, 24  
 Binche, 8  
 Bingham, Brig.-General the Hon. Cecil E., commanding 4th Cavalry Brigade, 5; 1st Cavalry Division, 125; farewell from the troops, 149  
 Birr Cross Roads, 122  
 "Black Marias," 44; 80, 84, 91  
 Blake, Lance-Corporal F. W., awarded the Military Medal, 259  
 Blécourt, 299  
 Blessy, 131  
 Bleu, 104  
 Blumenfeld, 2nd Lieut., 298  
 Boeschepe, 63  
 Boesinghe, attack on, 105  
 Bohain, capture of, 302  
 Bois l'Abbé, 247, 248  
 Bois de Blangy, 244, 245, 246  
 Bois de Carlepont, 238  
 Bois des Essarts, 240, 242  
 Bois de Gentelles, 245  
 Bois de Léglantiers, 243  
 Bois de Sencat, 248  
 Bois de Vaire, 177  
 Bois de Verger, 235  
 Bois Vivier, 235  
 Bonham, Major, 237  
 Bonnay, 158  
 Bonneil, 38  
 Bonnes, 39  
 Bonningues-les-Ardres, 151  
 Bony, 184  
 Booth, 2nd Lieut. A. S., 219  
 Borre, 62, 154  
 Bossierre, la, 26  
 Boubers-sur-Canche, 191, 193  
 Bouchoir, 54, 289  
 Boucly, 189, 190, 218  
 Boufflers, 157  
 Boulogne, 151  
 Bouquemaison, 285  
 Bouret, 55  
 Bourg, 42  
 Boulton Wood, 194; attack on, 201, 205, 206  
 Bourre River, 262  
 Boussières, 315, 317  
 Boves, 55, 194, 222, 272  
 Braches, 270

- Bradbury, Capt., killed, 26  
 Brade, R. H., 153  
 Braisne, 40  
 Bray, 8, 197; explosions at, 163  
 Bray-sur-Somme, 158, 287  
 Brény, 40  
 Brisatre, 306  
 Brie, 222  
 Brockdorff-Rantzau, von, 321, 340  
 Bromley, 2nd Lieut., H. T., 187, 200, 204, 210  
 Broodseinde, 107  
 Brooke, Lieut.-Colonel, 239  
 Brooke, Victor, killed, 21  
 Brooks, Lieut. C. R. P., killed, 254, 257  
 Brookwood trench, 139, 140, 141, 144  
 Broyes, 244  
 Bruyères, rest camp at, 4  
 Buchoire, 237  
 Bulgaria, capitulation of, 309  
 Bunnett, Corporal, 191  
 Burbure, 156  
 Burge, Capt., 109, 131  
 Burns, Sergeant-Major, 22, 24  
 Busigny, 4  
 Busnes, 60, 156  
 Bussy, 163, 218  
 Byng, General Lord, x 78; at Klein Zillebeke, 80; tribute to the troops, 217  
  
 Cachy, 19, 222, 272  
 Caestre, 100  
 Caix, 273, 276  
 Cambrai, 167; plan of attack, 194-199; battle of, 199, 204; casualties, 217  
 Campagne, 19  
 Canadian Army, attack on Bois des Essarts, 240; battle of Amiens, 272; tribute to, 275; enter Valenciennes, 310  
 Canal-du-Nord, 289, 295; battle of, 322  
 Canche River, 193  
 Cannon, 2nd Lieut. N. V., 210  
 Cantereme, 166  
 Cap badges, 10  
 Cappy, 190, 194  
 Cardonnais, le, 243  
 Carey, Private, 167  
 Carnoy, 158  
 Cartigny, 194  
 Castendyk, Major, 119  
 Cateau, Le, battle of, 14, 29, 303; retreat from, 15-17  
 Catigny, 19  
 Catillon, 305  
 Caudry, 14, 302, 305  
 Caulaincourt, 197, 198  
 Cayeux, 277  
 Cérisy Valley, 272  
 Cernyl, 44  
 Cerseuil, 40  
 Chamigny, 38  
 Changeux, J., letter from, 162  
 Channel Ports, proposed capture by the Germans, 52, 56  
 Chapel Crossing, 214  
 Chapelle-Iger, la, 33, 34  
 Charlesworth, Lieut., 209  
 Chartranges, 36  
 Château Thierry, 38  
 Chauny, 233, 234  
 Chaussée, la, 268, 270, 284  
 Chavette, la, 278  
 Chelles, 27  
 Cheluvelt, 86  
 Chemin des Dames, 44  
 Chepoix, 243  
 Chetwode, Sir Philip, inspects the 3rd Hussars, 149; farewell to his troops, 164  
 Chevance, 38  
 Chevru, 35  
 Chézy, attack on, 38  
 Chézy Charly-sur-Marne, 38  
 Chilly, 280  
 Chipilly, 275  
 Chiry, 239, 242  
 Choisy, 24, 36  
 Chingnolles, 190  
 Citry, 37  
*City of Lucknow*, 3  
 Clairoux, 20  
 Clark, Capt. F. P., 204  
 Clarke, Capt. C. F., 13, 152, 166, 219, 221; at Lesges, 41; attack on Bois des Essarts, 240; report, 241; wounded, 253, 257; return to England, 341  
 Claude, Capt., 4  
 Clerques, 151  
 Cliff, Lieut., 131  
 Clinch, Major H. W., 19, 238; wounded, 81  
 Cloyes, les, 238  
 Clytte, la, 64, 85, 93, 95  
 Cojeul River, 168  
 Colleret, 317, 318  
 Cologne bridgehead, British occupation of, 334  
 Cologne River, 177  
 Combe, Major H., 129; wounded, 72  
 Combles, attack on, 158

- Commines, 58, 65, 300  
 Compiègne, 20, 24, 242  
 Compton, Capt. F. H., 208  
 Condé Canal, 9  
 Conneau, General, Cavalry Corps, 57, 58  
 Consolre, 318, 329  
 Contay, 287  
 Cooper, Sergeant, killed, 117  
 Coq de Pailles, 63  
 Corbier, 34  
 Cote Wood, 219  
 Couarcy, 239  
 Coudun, 20; attack on, 21  
 Coulemont, 285, 287  
 Coulomby, 131, 135  
 Couprou, 38  
 Courcelles, 41, 287  
 Couronne, la, 103  
 Courtrai, 60; battle of, 323  
 Couvrelles, 40  
 Coyecque, 131  
 Craig, Lieut. F., 191, 219, 257, 302; awarded the Military Cross, 258  
 Crapaud, the dog, 242; appearance, 243  
 Crèche, la, 153  
 Crécy, 168, 267  
 Crépigny, 233  
 Crepy-en-Valois, 54  
 Cressy, 18  
 Crèvecœur, 297, 299; attack on, 298; capture of, 299  
 Crichton, Lord, commanding the Composite Regiment, 83  
 Croix Marraisse, 156  
 Croix-Molignaux, 227  
 Cross, Capt., wounded, 81  
 Crozat Canal, 230, 232, 238, 289  
 Cugny, 232  
 Cuhem, 129  
 Cunningham, Private D., awarded the Military Medal, 259  
 Curgies, 11  
 Curly Crescent trench, 139, 141-145  
  
 Dady, Corporal M., 340  
 Dagny, 34, 35  
 Dalrymple, 2nd Lieut. W. G., 192, 213, 219, 306  
 Damery, 278, 280  
 Damousies, 316  
 Davidson, Lance-Corporal G., awarded the Médaille Militaire, 50, 92  
 Delette, 131  
 Delville Wood, 159  
 Démuin, 245, 282  
*Der Tag*, extract from, 114  
  
 Dernaucourt, 158 shelled, 162  
 Desborough, Corporal Reginald, awarded the Military Medal, 258  
 Dessart Wood, 200, 202, 204, 208; shelled, 207  
 Devise, 222, 225  
 Dickebusch, 127  
 Dilberoglu 2nd Lieut. A., 210, 213; killed, 253, 257  
 Dismounted Cavalry Division, 135; tribute to, 146  
 Dives, 19, 22  
 Dives le Franc, 239; attack on, 240  
 Divette, the, 243  
 Dixmude, 300  
 Dobie, Capt. J. J., 213, 257, 296; wounded, 81, 107, 182, 189; commanding 4th Dismounted Bn., 226; awarded the Military Cross, 258; killed, 298  
 Doignt, 190  
 Domart, 248, 251  
 Dominois, 168  
 Domleger, 261  
 Dommartin, 193, 222  
 Dompnin, 38  
 Domvast, 163  
 Dorrel, Sergeant-Major, 26  
 Douai, 304  
 Douchy, 287  
 Douglas, Capt. G. S., 213  
 Douliou, 100, 102, 103, 153  
 Doullens, 55, 168  
 Douve, the, 91  
 Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan, *The British Campaign in France and Flanders*, extracts from, 43, 60  
 Dragoon Guards (Carabiniers), 5; casualties, 146  
 Dranoûtre, 92  
 Dreslincourt, 22  
 Dugdale, Lieut.-Col. F., 234  
 Dunkirk, 341; bombarded, 228  
 Dunn, Lieut., 313  
 Du Pre, Major F. J., x, 187, 204, 340; on the work of the "A" Squadron, 22-24; report, 66; return to England, 341  
 Durbuy, 336  
 Düren, 339  
  
 Eastwood, Lieut., 131; wounded, 72  
 Eaucourt, 261  
 Ebbingham, 131, 152  
 Ecoust, 287  
 Ecque, 100; memorial service in the Church, 102  
 Eecke, 63

- Eggleton, Sergeant F., awarded the Military Medal, 259  
 Eliot, Lieut., 21, 23, 50, 65; wounded, 81  
 Englefontaine, 308  
 Enguinegatte, 131  
 Ennemain, 226  
 Enquin-les-Mines, 128, 261  
 Epéhy, 212, 234; battle of, 291, 322  
 Epinoy, 242  
 Eppeville, 18  
 Eps, 157  
 Equaucourt, 200  
 Ermenonville, 26  
 Ervillers, 286  
 Escaut canal, 194, 196  
 Escœuilles, 150  
 Esnes, 297, 301  
 Esneux, 336  
 Esquelbecq, 113  
 Essigny, 227, 230  
 Estaires, 261  
 Estrée Blanche, 131  
 Estrées, 222; ruins of, 218  
 Estrées-sur-Noye, 222, 244  
 Eth, 311  
 Etricourt, 159
- Fabeck, General von, 87  
 Faillœul, 232  
 Famars, 308  
 Fane, Lieut.-Colonel, commanding 12th Lancers, 239  
 Fargnier, 229  
 Ferrière-la-Petite, 317, 318  
 Fiefs, 129  
 Fins, 159, 200  
 Flandre, 166  
 Fleming, Major V., 177; killed, 184  
 Flers, 158, 161  
 Flesquières, 201, 204  
 Flesselles, 157  
 Flêtre, 63, 100, 104, 264  
 Flinders, Sergeant, 164  
 Flixecourt, 163  
 Foch, Marshal, 52; counter-offensive, 266; tribute to the Allied Armies, 326  
 Fontaine, 26  
 Fontaine, l'Étalon, 157  
 Fontaine Fuavel, 38  
 Fontaine-au-Pire, 302  
 Fortuin, 110  
 Fouilloy, 177  
 Fouilly, 218  
 Fouquescourt, 280, 281  
 Fowler, Lance-Corporal, 145  
 Framerville, 273
- France, agreement with England and Russia, 31  
 Fransart, 278  
 Freeman, 2nd Lieut. A. C. B., 192, 204, 210  
 French Army, at Solre le Château, 5; retreat from Mons, 29; battle of Ourcq, 34, 37; crosses the Marne, 38; battle of the Aisne, 42; at La Bassée, 56; battle of Loos, 130; attack on Comblès, 158; ammunition dump blown up, 163; in the German offensive, 232-234, 236, 242; counter-offensive, 291, 303; number of German prisoners, 324  
 French, Field-Marshal Viscount, "1914," 17, 18, 30, 39, 57, 58, 59, 86; orders to his troops, 31, 32; tributes to the army, 47, 74, 86, 89, 126; reply to the King's message, 90; message to General Joffre, 99; farewell to the Army, 133  
 Freniches, 18  
 Fresnoy, 218  
 Fresnoy-au-Val, 221  
 Fretoy, 19  
 Frévent, 55, 191  
 Frières-Faillouel, 236  
 Fricourt, 160  
 Frohen-le-Grand, 285  
 Frohen-le-Petit, 168  
 Fugger, Lieut., 98  
 Furrie, Private B., awarded the Military Medal, 259
- Gannes, 243  
 Gapaard, 64; shelled, 68  
 Garde Dieu, 64; shelled, 70, 75, 76  
 Gases, asphyxiating, use of, 104, 111, 112, 121  
 Gastins, 34  
 Gath, Sergeant, promoted 2nd Lieutenant, 45; killed, 81  
 Gauche Wood, attack on, 210; defence of, 214-216  
 Gaudiempré, 176  
 Genne-Ivergny, 163  
 Geny, 44, 45, 46  
 George, V., H.M. King, tributes to the Army, 90, 96, 132, 155, 328; reviews it, 95; on the loss of Lord Kitchener, 153; good wishes to the troops, 165  
 German aeroplanes 19, 50, 160, 161  
 German Army, battle of Mons, 6, 11, 29; at Curgies, 11; attack on Le Cateau, 14, 15, 29; on

- Coudun, 21; on Néry, 25; order to, 30, 32; battle of Ourcq, 34, 37; looting, 36; casualties, 38, 255; retreat, 38, 289, 304, 316, 320; battle of the Aisne, 42-49; at Warneton, 65, 67; bombard Garde Dieu, 70, 75, 76; battle of Ypres, 76-89; occupy Zandvoorde, 78; bombard Klein Zillebeke, 80; use of gases, 104, 111, 112, 121; shell Vlamertinghe, 107; Vermelles trenches, 139-146; vandalism, 177; shell Gillemont Farm, 182-186; Bourlon Wood, 205; number of divisions, 223, 265; offensive of 1918, 227-265; battle of Amiens, 271-283; number taken prisoners, 283, 324; battle of Bapaume, 286-288; offensive against, 300-318; signs an Armistice, 319
- German General Staff, account of the battle of Ypres, 78; of the Wyttschaete-Messines ridge, 87
- Germans, wounded, letters found on, 48
- Geudecourt, 158
- Ghent, 291
- Gheluvelt, 77; battle of, 56
- Ghissignies, 311, 312
- Gillard, Mme, 9
- Gillemont Farm, 16; shelled, 182-186, 188
- Gilroy, Lieutenant D. C., 76
- Giraumont, 20
- Givenchy, 264
- Glisy, 272
- Godewaersvelde, 63
- Gommegnies, 311
- Gong, War Memorial, 342
- Gonnelleu, 210, 298
- Gordon Highlanders, action of Klein Zillebeke, 81; lessons in riding, 339
- Gough, General Sir Hubert, de la P., commanding 2nd Cavalry Division, 34, 62; captures Mont des Cats, 57; tribute to, 86; tribute to the troops, 89, 146; commanding 5th Army, 222; on the German offensive, 222
- Gournay, 27
- Gouzeaucourt, 200, 207, 294; attack on, 209
- Goyencourt, 54
- Graincourt, 202, 204
- Grand Morin, 36
- Grandru, 227, 234
- Great Britain, agreement with France and Russia, 31
- Greenly, Major-General W. H., commanding 2nd Cavalry Division, 164; tribute to the troops, 175, 189, 217; at Flesquières, 207; commanding 14th Division, 239; invalided, 261
- Grenfell, Francis, awarded the V.C., 11
- Gricourt, 293
- Grottenhertin, 339
- Guarbecque, 60
- Guémappe, 172
- Guémy, 161
- Guillemont, 161
- Guiscard, 233
- Guivry, 236
- Guyencourt, 193, 222
- Haig, Field-Marshal Earl, tributes to the troops, 51, 175, 190, 256, 265, 275, 326-328; at Ypres, 79; Commander-in-Chief of the Army, 134; tribute to the French Army, 150; Special Order to the Army, 154; good wishes to, 165; despatch on the battle of the Somme, 228; decision to attack the Hindenburg Line, 292; on the result of breaking it, 299; the position of the German Army, 309; on the victories won by the British forces, 321; the march to the Rhine, 325
- Hailles, 193
- Hairpin trench, 139, 140-145
- Halleux, M., 335; treatment by the Germans, 336
- Halloy, 193
- Ham, 232
- Hamelincourt, 286
- Hangard Wood, 247; capture of, 272
- Harbonnières, 273
- Harmignies, 6
- Harper, Lieutenant-General Sir G. M., commanding IV Corps, 289
- Harpies River, 305
- Hart, Lieutenant H. V., 257
- Harveng, 6
- Harvie, 2nd Lieutenant, J. K., 187, 193, 204; wounded, 257
- Haspres, 304, 305
- Haut-Rieux, 60
- Hautmont, 4, 314, 317; capture of, 315
- Haverskerque, 61, 100
- Havre, 3

- Havrincourt, 194, 290; battle of, 291, 322  
 Hawkins, Lance-Corporal T. H., 291  
 Hazebrouck, 56, 57  
 Héninel, 168  
 Henneveux, 150  
 Herbignies, capture of, 312  
 Herlie, la, 286  
 Herzele, 113  
 Hesdin, 176, 266  
 Heese, Prince Max of, killed, 63  
 Heudicourt, 218  
 Heuzecourt, 157  
 Hezettes, les, 236  
 Hill, Lieutenant, 55; wounded, 71, 72  
 Hill 75, sniping from, 94  
 Hindenburg Line, attack on the, 292-299; broken through, 322  
 Hohenzollern Redoubt, 137, 144  
 Honnelle River, 313  
*Honourous*, the, 4  
 Hontigny, 40  
 Hooge, 121, 122; shelled, 124  
 Hordain, 197  
 Horses, number killed, 284  
 Hotchkiss rifles, 149, 158, 253  
 Hotton, 334  
 Hourges, 248, 251, 254  
 Household Cavalry (Composite Regiment), 5, 91; advance on Warneton, 68; at Messines, 71  
 Houthem, 85  
 Houtkerque, 113  
 Howard, Capt. the Hon. Donald, 19, 192, 221, 298; retires from Zandvoorde, 81  
 Huggins, Lieutenant C. L., 222, 238, 298; wounded, 72; patrol report, 173  
 Hulluch, 131  
 Humbercourt, 285, 287  
*Hunslett*, s.s., 341  
 Hussars, The 3rd (King's Own), history in the war, x-xvi; mobilization, 2; at Rouen, 4; Wattignies, 5; Baisieux, 9; retreat from Mons, 11; battle of Le Cateau, 14; retreat from, 15-17; at Ramecourt, 18; Dives, 20; Coudun, 21; attack on Nery, 25; march to Lognes, 27; strength, 34, 40, 95, 110, 130, 150, 160, 226; at Gastins, 34; Moncel, 35; pursuit of the Germans, 40, 317-319; battle of the Aisne, 43-49; war honours, 50, 157, 357-363; tributes to, 51, 74, 86, 338; march to Magincourt, 52-55, 60; to Gapaard, 64; advance on Warneton, 64-70; retirement, 70; at Messines, 71; casualties, 72, 81, 146, 160, 188, 189, 217, 255; at Wytschaete, 73, 82; measures of relief in the trenches, 75; battle of Ypres, 77-89; attack on Zandvoorde, 78, 80; on Messines, 83; at Neuve Église, 91; take over the French trenches, 93; reviewed by the King, 95; at Ecques, 100, 102; attack on Boesinghe, 105; gassed, 111; at Esquelbecq, 113; march to Potijze, 116; in the Wieltje trenches, 117-120; operations at Hooge, 122; relieved, 125; at Wallon Cappel, 126; fête at Nieuwlet, 127; battle of Loos, 130; at Lumbres, 135; in the Vermelles trenches, 137, 139-146; inspected by Sir P. Chetwode, 149; at Douliu, 153; march to the Somme, 157; working parties, 161; sports, 167, 191; march to Arras, 169, 172; Lempire, 177, 187; at Boubers-sur-Canche, 191, 193; battle of Cambrai, 199, 204; officers of the company, 204, 219; attack on Bourlon Wood, 205; Gouzeaucourt, 209; in the trenches at Villeret, 220; at Devise, 222, 228; in the German offensive, 234-265; the battle of Amiens, 270-283; of Bapaume, 287; attack on the Hindenburg Line, 293-299; at Caudry, 305; battle of the Sambre, 311-313; march to the Rhine, 329-334; at Beausaint, 335; return to England, 340; at Aldershot, 341; War Memorial Gong, 341; officers and men, killed in the war, 343-345; wounded, 346-355; services, 364-369; lists of, 370-374  
 Hussars, 3rd German, 21  
 Ignaucourt, 273  
 Inchy, 13, 303  
 Indian Corps, Lahore Division at Bailleul, 59; failure of the attack on St. Julien, 106; reorganized, 108  
*Intelligence Summary*, extract from, 114, 119  
 Irish Guards, at Klein Zillebeke, 79, 81



Irons, Lieutenant L. W., 219, 257  
 Itancourt, 227  
 Iwuy-Awoingt, 197

"Jack Johnsons," 44, 92, 111;  
 casualties from, 50

Janville, 21

Jellicoe, Admiral of the Fleet,  
 Viscount, tribute to the troops,  
 147

Jenlain, 10

Jeumont, 6

Jeune, 166

Joffre, General, orders to his  
 troops, 31; message to Sir J.  
 French, 99; reply to Sir D.  
 Haig, 150

Johnson, Lieut.-Col. Bulkely, 78

Jolimetz, 311, 312

Jones, Capt. Adrian, x

Jonquières, 243

Jussy, 231, 232

*Karnak, the, 3*

Kavanagh, Lieut.-General Sir C.,  
 commanding Cavalry Corps, 159;  
 inspection of the horses, 162;  
 congratulations to the troops, 284

"Keep smiling," legend of, 97

Kemmel Hill, 64, 85, 86, 152, 289;  
 capture of, 58, 264

Kennedy, Major-General A. A., x;  
 C.S.O. to General Gough, 104

Kerpen, 339

Kettle, Lieutenant R. A., 193, 210;  
 killed, 237

King's Own Scottish Borderers,  
 6th, at Gauche Wood, 216

Kirby, Lieut.-Colonel, 178

Kitchener, Field-Marshal Earl,  
 death, 153

Klein Zillebeke, 77, 78, 79; shelled,  
 80

Kluck, General von, 34; flight to  
 the Aisne, 40

Kortekeer Beek, 66

Kotzsch, Lieutenant, "A Song of  
 War," 98

Kruisstraat, 113

Labourse, 137

Lagny, 242

Lamotte, 194

Lamotte Brebière, 260

Lancefield, 2nd Lieutenant,  
 wounded, 188

Landrecies, 311

Langemarck, 104; battle of, 56

Laon, capture of, 304; evacu-  
 ated, 323

Laroche, 334

Larronville, 166

Lessigny, 20, 238

Lauder, Private J., awarded the  
 Military Medal, 206; awarded a  
 bar, 258

Law, Private W., killed, 160

Leechman, Lieutenant, killed, 49

Lempire, 14, 16, 177; defence, 178-  
 182; shelled, 185; trenches, 187

Lens, 228, 289; bombarded, 261

Lesdain, 297, 302

Leeges, 41

Lesigny, 28

Leuze Wood, 159

Libermont, 19, 233

Liège, 336

Liéramount, 200

Lières, 130

Liez, Fort of, 234

Ligescourt, 166

Lignières, 54

Ligny, 14, 303

Ligny-lez-Aire, 136

Ligny-Thillois, 160

Lihons, 277, 285

Lillers, 136, 156

Lincolnshires, the 1st, 89

Lisle, General de, commanding 1st  
 Cavalry Division, 57, 62; re-  
 treat from Mons, 11; at Merris,  
 57; tribute to, 86

Lizerne, 106; capture of, 108

Lizy, 34

Locquignol, 311

Loire, 85, 153

Lognes, 27

London Regiment, 15th, at Bourlon  
 Wood, 206

London Scottish, 53; joins I  
 Corps, 77; attack on Messines, 83

Longavesnes, 218

Longmoor Camp, 341

Longneau, 271

Longueil, 23

Longueval, 158, 159

Lookout Crescent trench, 139-145

Loos, battle of, 129, 130

Loupeigne, 41

Louvignies, 312

Lumbres, 135, 146

Luce River, 273; valley, 234, 245,  
 250

Lys, the, 58, 64, 228, 261, 264,  
 265, 300, 304; evacuated, 289,  
 322

- Machine Gun Squadron, 4th, 148  
 Machy, 267  
 Magnicourt, 55, 60  
 Maignelay, 54  
 Maing, capture of, 308  
 Maintenay, 168  
 Mainwaring, Sergeant Samuel,  
     awarded the Military Medal, 186  
 Malassine, 39  
 Mallet, Private John, awarded the  
     Military Medal, 187  
 Mametz, 157, 158, 159  
 Manancourt, 212  
 Marcelcave, 222  
 Marcoing, 194, 199, 295  
 Maresches, 11  
 Margny, 20  
 Marles les Mines, 129  
 Marne, the, 27; battle of, 30, 31;  
     passage of, 37  
 Marquaix, 218  
 Marsh, 2nd Lieutenant, 247  
 Marthes, 128  
 Martin, Private, 139, 145  
 Martinpuich, 287  
 Marwitz, General von der, 35  
 Mary, 34  
 Masnières, 194, 200, 207  
 Maubeuge, 291; siege of, 42;  
     capture of, 300, 316  
 Maucourt, 280  
 Mazure, la, 39  
 Méharicourt, 278, 280  
 Mennessis, 232  
 Mercatel, 167, 285  
 Méricourt-l'Abbé, 190  
 Merris, 57, 103, 262, 264  
 Merville, 57, 61, 100; fall of,  
     262  
 Mesnières, capture of, 297  
 Mesnil, 18, 27  
 Messines, 71; battle of, 56, 82;  
     shelled, 58  
 Meteren, 63, 100  
 Mettet, 331  
 Metz, 201  
 Metz-en-Couture, 200  
 Meuse, the, 300, 310, 332  
 Meux, le, 22  
 Mezières, 245, 291  
 Miraumont, 285  
 Mitchell, 2nd Lieutenant H. G., 201,  
     204  
 Moncel, 35  
 Monchy-Cayeux, 193  
 Monchy-le-Preux, 168, 172  
 Mons, retreat from, xi, 29; battle  
     of, 7  
 Montauban, 157  
 Mont des Cats, 63, 104; capture of,  
     57  
 Mont Ganelon, 21, 243  
 Mont Noir, 57  
 Mont Notre-Dame, 40, 52  
 Mont de Porquericourt, 239  
 Mont Renaud, 239  
 Montdidier, 54, 243, 246  
 Montenois, 218  
 Montgivrault, 38  
 Montrécourt, 13  
 Montreuil, 168  
 Morbecque, 62, 100, 154  
 Morchain, 232  
 Morcourt-sur-Somme, 270  
 Mordacq, General, commanding  
     35th French Brigade, 109  
 Moreuil, 245, 246, 270  
 Morlancourt, 163  
 Mormal Forest, 308, 310, 311  
 Mormant, 28, 34  
 Morval, attack on, 158, 159  
 Motte, la, 100  
 Mouffers, 163  
 Moyeuneville, 285  
 Murancourt, 19  
 Murray, Lieut.-Colonel John, x  
 Nampont, 267  
 Native Infantry, 57th, 84  
 Naylor, Lieutenant H. M., 176,  
     257; Intelligence Officer, 213  
 Nelson, Gunner, 26  
 Néry, 54; attack on, 25  
 Nesle, 18, 279, 288  
 Neup Berquin, 104, 115, 153  
 Neuve Chapelle, battle of, 103  
 Neuve Église, 91, 262  
 Neuville, la, 157, 158  
 Neuville-en-Beine, 236  
 Neuville-Vitasse, 172  
 New Zealand Division, at Bapaume,  
     289; attack on the Hindenburg  
     Line, 296; on Eanes, 301  
 Nielles, 131, 136  
 Nielles-lez-Bléquin, 135  
 Nieppe, forest, 62, 100, 104, 153  
 Nieurlet, Fête Nautique at, 127  
 Nièvre River, 157  
 Nœux, 157  
 Nogent-l'Artaud, 38  
 Nonne Bosschen, battle of, 56  
 Noordpeene, 128  
 Norrent Fontes, 131  
 North Midland Division (Territorial),  
     103  
 North Staffordshire Regiment, 1st,  
     219  
 Northumberland Fusiliers, 1st, 89

- Nouredil, 232  
 Noyan, 227, 233  
 Noye River, 55  
 Noyelles, 137, 140, 146  
 Noyon, 288  
 Nuncq, 193  
 Nurlu, 200
- Obrechies, 316  
 Official Despatches, extracts from,  
     15, 304, 312, 321, 329, 335  
*Official War Diary*, ix, 94, 95  
 Oise, the, 20, 24, 54, 222, 228, 233,  
     288, 310  
 Olive, Captain, 109  
 Omignon, l', river, 226  
 Oostaverne, 70, 82  
 Orly, 37  
 Ostend, fall of, 304  
 Ouderdom, 113  
 Oulchy le Château, 40  
 Ourcq, the, 40; battle of, 34, 37  
 Ourscamp, 239  
 Ourthe River, 334  
 Outrebois, 168  
 Oxford Hussars, 92; in the Ver-  
     melles trenches, 140; casualties,  
     146
- Paillencourt, 196, 198  
 Paissy, 44, 46, 48  
 Palluel, 196  
 Papote, 263  
 Pargny, 232  
 Parvillers, 278, 279, 280  
 Pas, 168, 175, 177  
 Passchendaele Ridge, 264; battles  
     of, 192  
 Pavant, 37  
 Peers, Lance-Corporal N., 340  
 Peers, Private P. G., awarded the  
     Military Medal, 258  
 Pelle, General, commanding V  
     Corps, gratitude to the troops,  
     244  
 Pernes, 129, 157  
 Pernois, 157, 193  
 Péronne, 177, 197; capture of, 288  
 Péronne, Sous-Préfet of, letter from,  
     162  
 Petherick, Captain J. C., wounded,  
     46, 298; commanding 4th  
     Machine Gun Squadron, 148  
 Petit Morin, 34; attack on, 36  
 Peyton, Major-General Sir W. E.,  
     Military Secretary, 190; com-  
     manding the Cavalry Division of  
     the Army of the Rhine, 338  
 Pilkem, 104
- Pioneer Battalion, 4th Cavalry,  
     ordered to Savy, 166  
 Pitman, Major-General T. T., ix,  
     207, 209; commanding 4th  
     Cavalry Brigade, 126; 2nd  
     Cavalry Division, 239, 260; in  
     the Rifle Wood attack, 255;  
     tribute to the troops, 337  
 Ploegsteert, 153  
 Plumer, General Sir Herbert, tribute  
     to the Cavalry Division, 132;  
     farewell to the troops, 157  
 Pommera, 168  
 Ponchel, le, 261  
 Ponsonby, Major-General J., 259  
 Pont-à-Pierres, 308  
 Pont-sur-Sambre, 314, 315  
 Pontoise, 237, 239  
 Poperinghe, 100  
 Potijze, 107, 115, 116  
 Pradilles, 62  
 Prayelle, 303  
 Priseau, 10  
 Prisoners of war, 356  
 Prot, Lieutenant, 4  
 Proyard, 222  
 Putz, General, 105
- Quarries, the, 137, 139  
 Quarry Bay, 139, 140, 143  
 Quéant, 287  
 Queen's Cross, 208  
 Queen's Regiment, 92  
 Quend, 166  
 Querrieu, 157  
 Quesnel, le, 270, 274, 276  
 Quesnoy, le, 277, 280, 310; sur-  
     renders, 312  
 Quessy, capture of, 229  
 Queuchettes Wood, 178  
 Quietede, 128  
 Quievrain, 8, 9
- Rabbitts, Private, story of, 98  
 Raimbert, 157  
 Rainbird, Private A., killed, 160  
 Ramecourt, 18, 19  
 Ramillies, capture of, 301  
 Randall, Sergeant, missing, 24  
 Rankin, Brig.-General C., com-  
     manding 4th Cavalry Brigade,  
     260, 280  
 Ransart, 287  
 Rapchy, 285  
 Rary, 26  
 Ravenal, 54  
 Rawlinson, General Sir Henry, con-  
     gratulations to the troops, 256,  
     283

- Reau, 28  
 Rebais, 36  
 Reims, 46, 50  
 Remiencourt, 193, 222  
 Reninghelst, 63, 105, 152  
 Respirators, use of, 112, 119  
 Revelon Farm, 208, 213  
 Revillon, 42  
 Rexer rifle, 149  
 Rhine, march to the, 324, 329-334  
 Ribécourt, 22, 201, 204, 296  
 Richemont, valley of the, 305  
 Rifle Wood, recapture of, 246, 249-255; casualties, 255  
 Robecq, 60, 100  
 Robinson, 2nd Lieutenant B. C., 219, 315  
 Rocquigny, 159  
 Roe, Sergeant, killed, 117  
 Roiglise, 18, 19  
 Roisel, 16, 177, 197, 219  
 Rollot, 243  
 Ronsoy, 178  
 Ronville, 169  
 Roozebeck, 82  
 Roquetoire, 100  
 Rose, Private, 139, 145  
 Rose, Sergeant W., promoted 2nd Lieutenant, 260  
 Rouveroy, 6  
 Rouvroy, 278, 279  
 Rouy, 16  
 Royal Engineers, bridges on the Aisne, 42  
 Royal Field Artillery, 119th Battery, at Mons, 11  
 Royal Irish Fusiliers, 1st Bn., capture Bailleul, 63  
 Royal West Kent Regiment, 91  
 Royaucourt, 54  
 Roye, 270  
 Rozoy, 34  
 Ruesnes, capture of, 308  
 Rully, 26  
 Rumilly, capture of, 299  
 Russell, Major-General Sir A. H., commanding the New Zealand Division, 289  
 Russia, agreement with England and France, 31; result of defeat, 222  
 Ruyaulcourt, 296  
 Sablonnières, 36  
 Saddler, Major, 240  
 Saily, 62  
 Saily-Saillisel, 158, 288  
 St. Amand, 169  
 St. Aubert Farm, 302  
 St. Denis, 54  
 St. Eloï, 82  
 St. Emilie, 187  
 St. Floris, 61  
 St. Georges, 266  
 St. Gérard, 332  
 St. Josse, 266  
 St. Julien, attack on, 106  
 St. Marie Cappel, 162  
 St. Omer, 52, 100, 102  
 St. Pol, 193, 228  
 St. Quentin, 220, 227, 229; battle of, 322  
 St. Remy, 52  
 St. Riquier, 268  
 St. Venant, 61, 156  
 St. Waast, 11  
 Saleux, 219  
 Sambre the, 305, 306; battle of 310-313, 324; crossings over, 314  
 Sancourt, 297  
 Sanctuary Wood, 122, 124  
 Sapignies, 286  
 Sart Farm, shelled, 185  
 Sauchy-Lestree, 294  
 Saulchéry, 38  
 Saulchoy, 168  
 Saultain, 9  
 Savy, 166  
 Saxon officer, extract from his diary, 126  
 Scarpe, the, 168, 228; battle of, 170, 289, 322  
 Schaltin, 332  
 Scheldt Canal, 295, 298  
 Scherpenberg, 64  
 Scots Greys, attack on Zandvoorde, 79; in Hairpin trench, 140  
 Scottish Rifles, 9th, at Gauche Wood, 216  
 Sebourg, 10  
 Seely, Brig.-General, 251  
 Seine, the, 3  
 Selency, 293  
 Selle River, 303; battle of, 305, 323  
 Selvigny, 14  
 Seninghem, 131, 135  
 Sensée River, 194, 196, 228  
 Sercus, 262, 263  
 Serny, 131  
 Shorncliffe Barracks, 2  
 Silvertop, 2nd Lieutenant F. S., killed, 184  
 Smith, Sergeant-Major H., 340; awarded the D.C.M., 111  
 Smith-Dorrien, General Sir H., at the battle of Le Cateau, 14, 15; tribute to the Cavalry Corps, 114  
 Soissons, 40, 42

- Solesmes, 13, 303, 308  
 Solly-Flood, Major-General A., 289  
 Solre le Château, 5  
 Solre River, 317  
 Somme, the, 157, 288; battle of the, 153, 322; withdrawal to, 231  
 Somzée, 330  
 Sordet, General, commanding French Cavalry Corps, 16  
 Spahis, regiment of, 41  
 Spies, number of, 46  
 Steenbecque, 100  
 Steenebeek Valley, bombarded, 84  
 Steenwerck, 261  
 Strazeele, 103  
 Streestraate, 104, 108  
 Stubbs, 2nd Lieutenant, 139  
 Subaltern, extract from the diary of, 94  
 Suffolk Regiment, 93  
 Sutherland, 2nd Lieutenant, J. W., 290  
 Suzanne, 194  
 Suzoy Valley, 239  
 Swaythling, 341  
 Swinburne, Capt., 143  
 Swinburne Loop trench, 141  
  
 Talmas, 177  
 Tank Brigade at the battle of Amiens, 277, 281  
 Taylor, Lieutenant, 20, 71; reconnaissances, 83, 84  
 Telegraph Hill, 169  
 Tergnier, 231, 232  
 Tertry, 194, 198  
 Thélus, 167  
 Thennes, 250  
 Théroouanne, 131, 265  
 Thézy, 193, 247  
 Thillois, 160  
 Thorigny, capture of, 298  
 Thourout, 304  
 Thulin, attack on, 9  
 Thure River, 316, 317  
 Tilloy-lez Mofflaines, 169  
 Tir Anglais, 154, 263  
 Townsend, Saddler-Corporal W., 340; awarded the Médaille Militaire, 50, 92  
 Tour de Paissy, 44, 46  
 Tournhem forest, 151  
 Transloy, le, 158  
 Trenches, condition of, 116-120; at Vermelles, 139-145  
 Trescault, 201, 291, 295  
 Trétoire, la, 36  
 Trônes Wood, 161  
 Turkey, capitulation of, 309  
  
 Turner, Sergeant-Major A. H., promoted 2nd Lieutenant, 54; wounded, 124  
  
 Ugny-le-Gay, 236  
 United States, entry into the war, xiii  
  
 Vacquerie, la, 210  
 Vadencourt, 226  
 Valenciennes, 10, 304; battle of, 310, 324  
 Vallée-Foulon, la, 45  
 Vaucelles, 297  
 Vaucellette Farm, 211  
 Vaudoy, 34  
 Vaughan, Brig.-General J., commanding 3rd Cavalry Brigade, 122  
 Vaulx, 287  
 Vaux, 231  
 Vauxéré, 47, 52  
 Vauxtin, 41, 42  
 Vélu, 159  
 Vendelles, 219  
 Vendhuile, 207, 297  
 Verberie, 21, 24  
 Vercourt, 166  
 Verdun, battle of, 150  
 Vermand, 226  
 Vermelles, 130, 137; ruins of, 137; trenches, 138-146; shelled, 140  
 Vert Rue, 62  
 Vertigneul, 307, 312; battle of, 308  
 Vesle, the, 40, 41  
 Vierhouick, 62  
 Viesly, 13, 303, 308  
 Vieux Berquin, 62, 100, 104; capture of, 262  
 Vignacourt, 157  
 Villeneuve, 33  
 Villersau, 314  
 Villeret, 219; trenches, 220  
 Villeroy-sur-Authie, 163  
 Villers, 43, 55, 266  
 Villers-Bretonneux, 247  
 Villers-Carbonnel, 222; ruins of, 218  
 Villers-Faucon, 199, 200  
 Villers-Ghuislain, 210; shelled, 216  
 Villers-Plouich, 199, 208, 210; shelled, 209  
 Villers-sur-Authie, 166  
 Villiers, Major the Hon. Arthur, 184  
 Vimy Ridge, 167  
 Vitz-Villeroy, 163  
 Vlamertinghe, 105, 106, 115, 121, 125; shelled, 107  
 Voisin, 285

- Voormezeele, 85  
 Vouel, 231  
 Vrély, 274, 276, 279, 281  
 Vron, 166, 267
- Waanebeek, the, 105  
 Wadicourt, 166, 285  
 Wailly, 169, 171, 174  
 Walker, Sergeant G., awarded the Military Medal, 259  
 Wallon-Cappel, 57, 126, 152  
 Wambeke, 64, 70, 78  
 Wancourt, 168, 172  
*War Diary*, extracts from, 72, 73  
 Ward, Private F. G., awarded the Military Medal, 189  
 Wargnies-le-Grand, 311  
 Warneton, 58; advance on, 65, 67; action of, 68  
 Warvillers, 275, 276, 279  
 Wast, le, 151, 152  
 Waterlow, 2nd Lieutenant P. A., 212, 213, 247, 312  
 Watkins, Rev. O., *With French in France and Flanders*, 29 n  
 Wattignies, 5, 316  
 Welles, 243  
 West Gun bomb-thrower, 131  
 Westoutre, 64  
 Westrehem, 131  
 Whiston, Lieutenant, 19, 152; patrol duty, 109  
*White Horse, The*, periodical, 165  
 Whyte-Melville, W., lines from, 6  
 Wiart, Major-General Carton de, head of the British Military Mission to Poland, letter from, 97  
 Wieltje, 107; trenches, 117
- Willcox, Lieut.-Colonel W. T., 104; commanding the Kemmel Hill defences, 152; at Lempire, 177, commanding 4th Cavalry Brigade 207, 213; 3rd Hussars, 239; attack on Rifle Wood, 257  
 William II, Ex-Emperor of Germany, Order to his Army, 30; at Coutrai, 60  
 Williams, Major-General H. B., 289  
 Wimereux, 151  
 Wirth, Captain Alfred, extract from his diary, 14  
 Wisques, 151  
 Wistow, Sergeant W. R. J., awarded the D.C.M., 259  
 Wittes, 100  
 Woesten, 105  
 Wormald, Brig.-General F., killed, 13  
 Wormhoudt, 113, 115  
 Wulverghem, 59, 91, 92  
 Wytschaete, 82; attack on, 60, 73; bombardment, 83
- Ypres, 100, 116; battle of, xii, 52 58, 76-89, 322  
 Yser Canal, 58, 105, 110
- Zandvoorde, 76, 77; occupied, 78; action at, 81  
 Zebhan, von, report from, 49  
 Ziethen, General, commanding 3rd German Hussars, 21  
 Zillebeke, 101, 121  
 Zonnebeke, 58, 106  
 Zuydschoot, 106











3 9015 02399 4455



